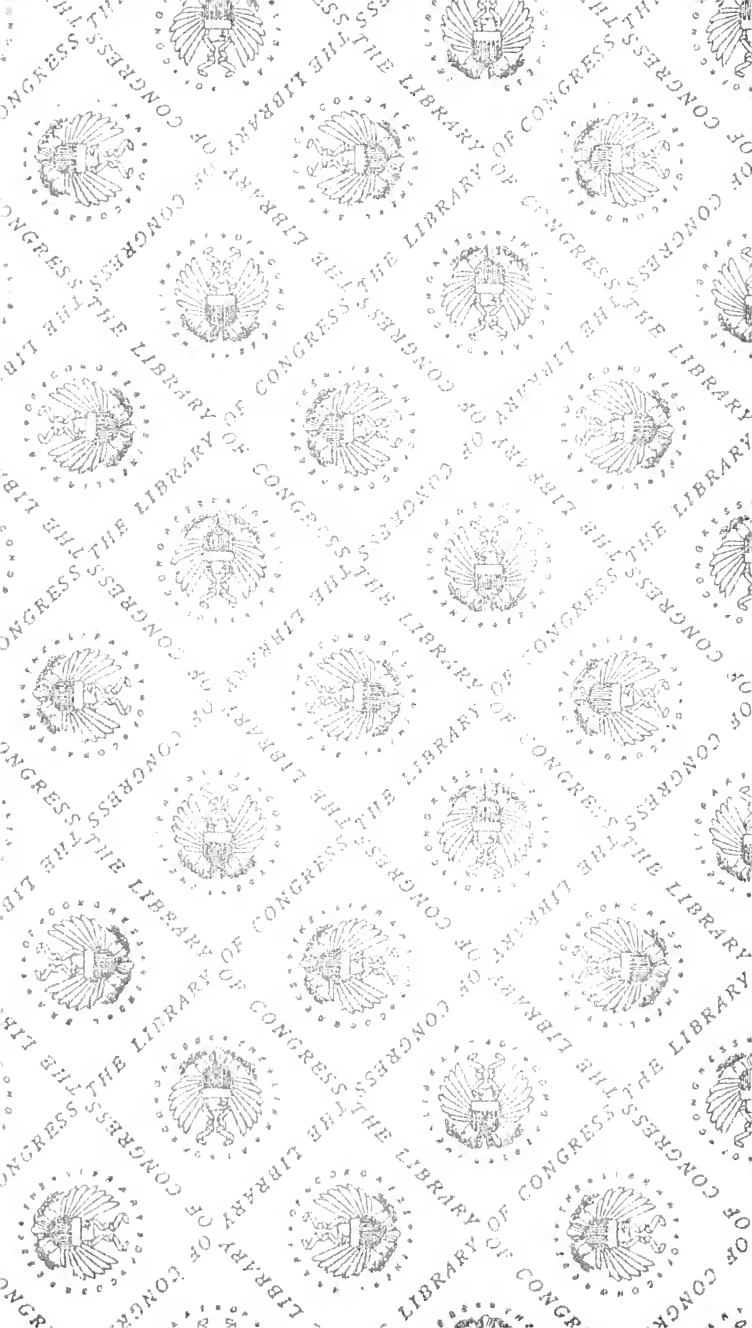
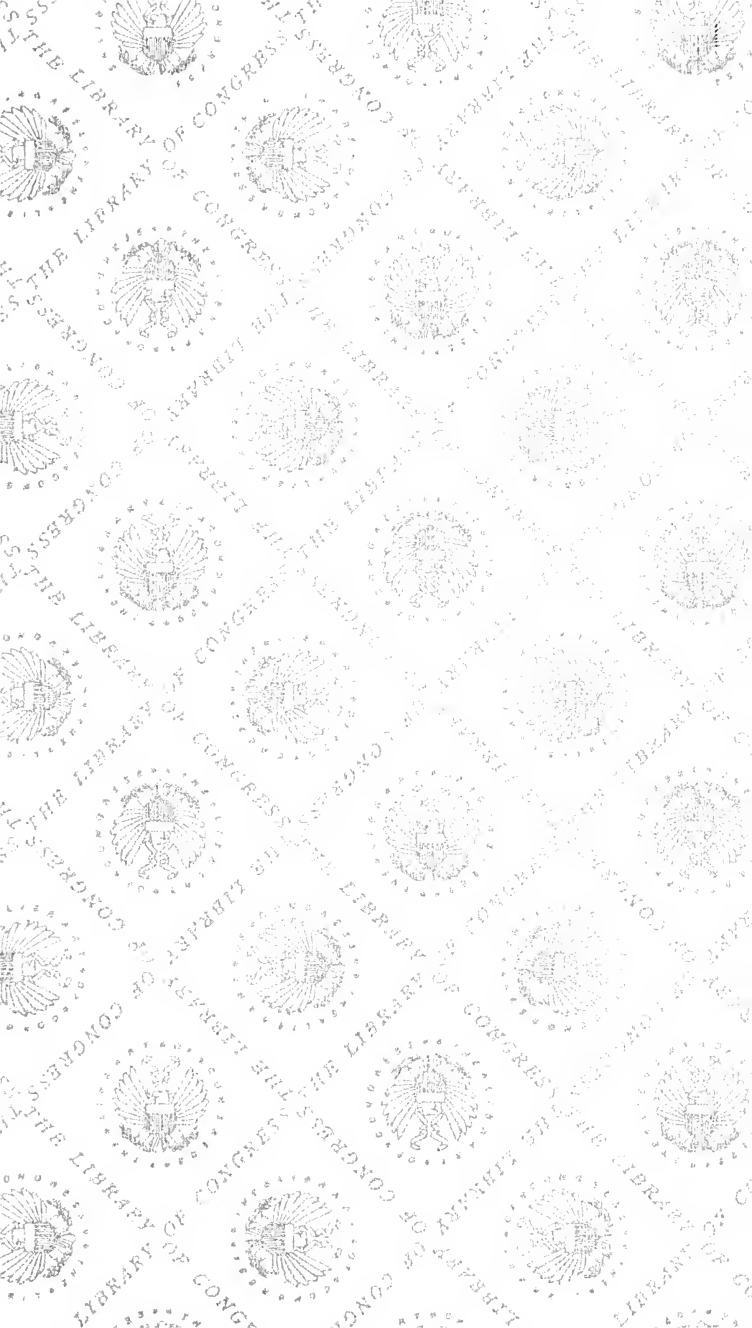


**LIBRARY OF CONGRESS**



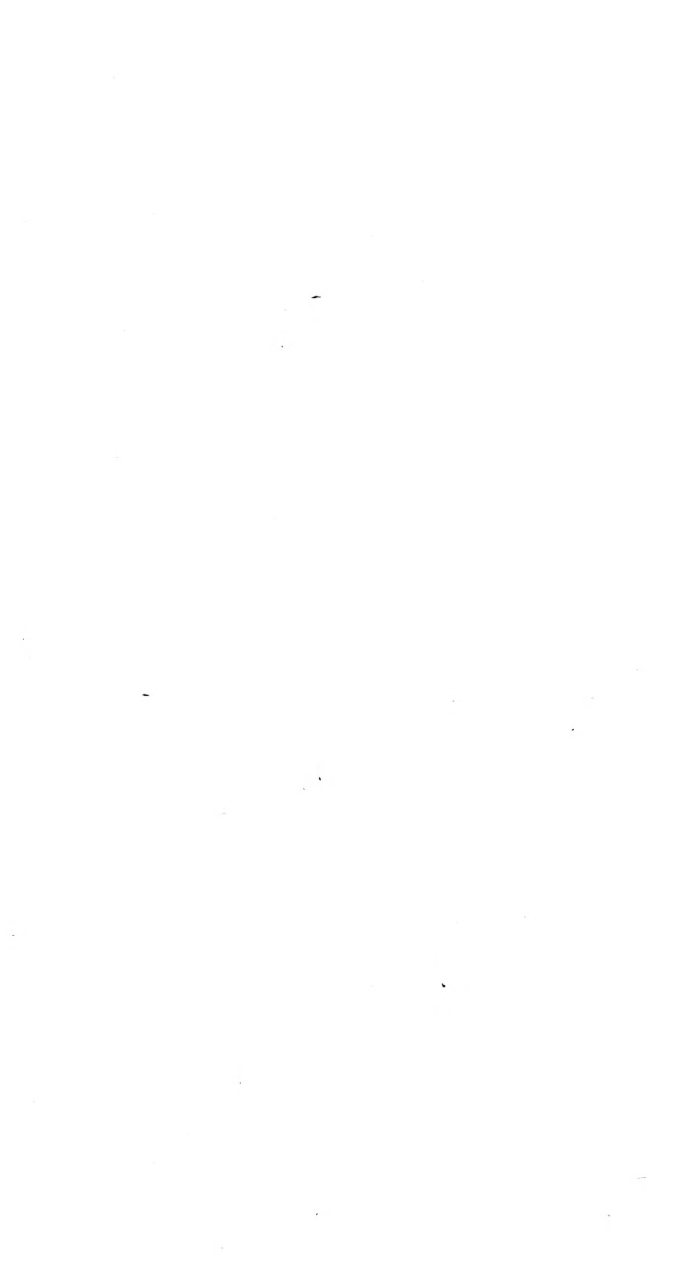
0000579383A













THE  
BOOK OF AMERICA





HISTORY  
OF THE  
UNITED STATES OF AMERICA,  
DESIGNED FOR SCHOOLS.

EXTENDING FROM THE DISCOVERY OF AMERICA BY COLUMBUS TO THE PRESENT TIME; WITH NUMEROUS MAPS AND ENGRAVINGS, TOGETHER WITH A NOTICE OF AMERICAN ANTIQUITIES, AND THE INDIAN TRIBES.

"Our history takes as its guiding star the simple and pregnant truth that God IS IN HISTORY."—*D'Aubigne*.

---

BY EGBERT GUERNSEY, A.M.

---

NEW YORK:  
PUBLISHED BY CADY AND BURGESS,  
60 JOHN STREET.  
1848.

---

Entered according to the act of Congress, in the year 1847,  
BY EGBERT GUERNSEY, A.M.,  
In the Clerk's office of the District Court of the United States for the  
Southern District of New York.

---

**Gilt**  
**Mrs. Hennen Jennings**  
April 26, 1933

---

Stereotyped by C. Davison & Co., 33 Gold st., N. Y.  
C. A. ALVORD, Printer.  
Corner of John and Dutch streets.

## P R E F A C E.

---

To commune with the great and mighty dead—to turn our thoughts backward along the path of time, and call from their silent graves the buried heroes of the past, and people with their living forms those old battle fields where freemen, under the protection of the God of Heaven, fought, not for a crown, but for liberty—is an employment both pleasing and instructive.

All history is instructive, but that of our *own country* is peculiarly interesting. The actors in its earliest periods, and in its revolutionary struggle, were men of patriotism, virtue, and religion. Rising above the selfish feelings of human nature, they planned and acted, not for themselves alone, but for their country, and the unborn millions who were yet to tread its soil. Believing in the overruling providence of God, they were not ashamed to look to Him for direction, nor to lean on his arm for support. Convinced that no people could flourish without a proper training of the mind, they early turned their attention to schools and colleges, believing them to be the nurseries of freedom.

The study of American history not only unites us more closely, and with stronger love to our free institutions, but it ennobles the mind by the lessons of virtue and patriotism which are given in the teachings and examples of our fathers. The whole course of the American Revolution shows but one TRAITOR. The infamy which is forever attached to the name of Arnold, is a sufficient warning to youth not to follow in his footsteps.

There are a few points, which I think have been neglected, or too lightly passed over, in all the histories of our country with which I am acquainted. One of these is, a particular notice of the direct interposition of Providence, so often displayed in our history.

This fault I have endeavored to shun. While it has been my object

to present a correct historical chain of events, in a style pleasing to the young, I have also endeavored to impress on them the important fact, that their fathers were working out the great designs of God, and were aided by him in their glorious consummation.

As undoubted remains of a civilized people, inhabiting America before the Indians, are scattered over the country, I have thought proper to devote an introductory chapter describing their appearance, locality, and the various opinions respecting them.

In another chapter is given an epitome of the different Indian families, with a notice of their languages, manners, and customs.

As this history has been compiled for educational purposes, I have endeavored to make the plan striking and simple, and to adapt my style to the minds and feelings of intelligent youth.

In selecting my plan, three great epochs presented themselves as proper to be noticed particularly. The *first* presenting a picture of our country from its discovery by Columbus, during its colonial history. A clear outline is here given; but much matter of a dry and prolix character, usually introduced in school histories with little effect, has been omitted. A dislike to an entire book has sometimes been produced, by crowding into this epoch a collection of isolated facts, which the young mind has struggled in vain to connect. If we succeed in enlisting their feelings in the commencement, the grand events which follow will surely enchain them, and our point is gained.

The *second epoch* presents the story of the Revolutionary War, from the Declaration of Independence, until the adoption of the Federal Constitution. I have endeavored faithfully to describe the most important of those thrilling events which cluster around this period.

It is strange, that while in many school histories the colonial period is tediously minute, the long struggle of a whole people for liberty, with a mighty nation, is briefly recorded.

In the *third and last epoch*, each administration is separately noticed, from the commencement of the Federal Government until the year 1848. A concise biographical sketch of each President is given, that our American youths may know, who were their rulers, and associate kind and noble thoughts of them, with the story of their public acts while in office. This has never been introduced in any of our school books, and, as a body, our children are strangely ignorant of the character of those great men.

This is evidently a defect which should be remedied; for American children, above others, should early be taught, in connection with the principles of a republican government, the fact, that most of these venerable and beloved men, were once children in *humble life*, and that they,



under Providence, by their own exertions and their virtues, arose to the highest station in the gift of their country.

The eyes of the civilized world are on America. They are narrowly watching all her operations, and scanning her motives of action. From this land of freemen an influence pervades the globe. Much is expected from the American youth, and a deep responsibility rests on their guardians and instructors.

Next to the Bible, no book is better adapted to teach lessons of importance, both to the heart and intellect, than a faithful history of God's dealings with our countrymen. A strange indifference to the study of American history is manifested throughout our land; and it is time that a better state of things existed. It is surprising how many schools of high standing entirely exclude it from their classes. Histories of classic Greece and Rome are mastered, those of England and France are not forgotten, but American history is regarded as a simple elementary subject, unworthy the study of an advanced scholar. This is a fact beyond dispute.

In relating the history of the Americans, our ancestors, I do not wish to throw into the shade the merits of any other nation. I would have all history faithfully studied and remembered. It is worthy the time and talent of every immortal mind. History is a harp whose strings are swept by the hand of Time. It tells us of the birth of creation—the uprising of empires—the passing away of mighty nations—it sounds in our ears the events which lie scattered along the path of life. Its notes tremble mournfully over the graves of greatness and virtue entombed. Its tones are ever varying, and will be heard until Time severs the strings, as they are sounding the requiem of the world, and history is no more!

---

## NOTE TO TEACHERS.

The questions on the margin are only intended as leading ones, to answer which, however, a knowledge of the whole subject is necessary. These questions can be altered and others suggested, at the pleasure of the teacher. Great pains have been taken to make the Chronology as correct as possible. To avoid confusion, all the dates have been given in New Style. This History is not only intended for a recitation book, but to be used in reading classes. The events forming a connected chain, a habit of attention will be elicited, and much historical knowledge gained. A plan similar to this, I have pursued in a long course of teaching, with decided advantage.

# CHART OF

HENRY VII., HENRY VIII., EDWARD VI.,  
MARY, ELIZABETH.

## 1400.

- 1492. *Columbus* discovers America.
- 1497. The Cabots, under Henry VII., discover the Continent of North America.
- 1499. The Portugese send out Ojeda with Americus Vesputius.

## 1500.

- 1502. Columbus makes his fourth and last voyage.
- 1506. He dies at Valladolid, in Spain.
- 1512. Ponce de Leon discovers Florida.
- 1523. Verrazani, under the French, explores the American Coast.
- 1525. Narvaez attempts the conquest of Florida.
- 1534. Cartier discovers the Gulf of St. Lawrence, and possesses it in the name of the King of France.
- 1535. Cartier, in a second voyage, in which he ascends the St. Lawrence, names the country New France.
- 1541. De Soto discovers the Mississippi.
- 1562. Ribault leaves a French Colony on the Coast of Florida.
- 1564. Laudonniere begins a French settlement on the river May.
- 1565. Laudonniere's Colony destroyed by the Spaniards, who possess the country.—St. Augustine founded by Pedro Melendez.
- 1568. The Spanish Colony on the May, destroyed by De Gorze.
- 1576. Frobisher's Expedition.
- 1578. Queen Elizabeth grants the first English Patent to lands in North America, to Sir Walter Raleigh.
- 1583. Sir H. Gilbert takes possession of Newfoundland.
- 1589. Raleigh sells his Patent to the London Company.

## MISCELLANEOUS FACTS.

- By the Census of 1840, the population of the United States was 17,063,666.
- The number of Universities and Colleges, 173; Students, 16,233; Academies and Grammar Schools, 3,242; Scholars, 164,159; Primary and Common Schools, 47,209; Scholars, 1,845,244.
- Number of persons engaged in Agriculture, 3,717,756; in Commerce, 117,575; in Manufactures, 791,545.
- Number of Baptist Churches, 6,000; of Methodist Churches, unknown; of Methodist Ministers, 3,000; of Presbyterian Churches, 3,000; of Congregationalist Churches, 1,300; of Episcopalian Churches, 950.
- The population of the United States doubles every 25 years, that of England every 30.

## MEXICO.

- 1519. Cortez lands in Mexico
- 1521. He conquers the City.—From this time until 1821, Mexico was governed by Viceroy from Spain.—Revolution in Mexico. 1810—1821.

JAMES I., CHARLES I., CROMWELL,  
CHARLES II., JAMES II.

## 1600.

- 1602. Gosnold discovers Cape Cod.
- 1603. Henry IV., of France, grants Acadia to De Monts.
- 1605. First permanent French settlement in North America made at Port Royal.
- 1606. First Charter of Virginia issued.—Virginia divided between the London and Plymouth Companies.
- 1607. Jamestown, in Virginia, founded—the earliest permanent English settlement in North America.
- 1608. Quebec settled by Champlain.
- 1609. Henry Hudson discovers the Hudson river.
- 1610. Starving time in Virginia.
- 1611. Sir Thomas Dale arrives in Virginia.
- 1613. New York settled by the Dutch.
- 1619. First General Assembly in Virginia.
- 1620. Landing of the Puritans.—Young women sent to Virginia, as wives for the planters, and sold for tobacco.—Negroes introduced by the Dutch, and Slavery commenced.
- 1621. Charter granted to the Dutch West India Company, for settling the country between the Connecticut and Delaware rivers.
- 1623. The Dutch erect Fort Nassau, on the Delaware.—Albany settled by the Dutch.
- 1624. London Company dissolved.
- 1627. Swedes and Fins settle on the Delaware.
- 1628. Patent of *Massachusetts* obtained.—Settlement of Salem commenced.
- 1629. *New Hampshire* granted to John Mason.
- 1630. Heath's Patent to *S. Carolina* granted.
- 1631. First General Court in Massachusetts.—Patent of *Connecticut* granted.
- 1632. *Maryland* granted to Lord Baltimore.
- 1633. First house erected in Connecticut.
- 1634. Commissioners appointed in England to govern the Colonies.—Roger Williams banished.
- 1636. Hartford settled.—Roger Williams settles *Rhode Island*.
- 1637. Harvard College established.—Pequod War.
- 1638. New Haven settled.
- 1639. First Printing Office in America, at Cambridge.
- 1643. Confederation of the New England Colonies.
- 1653. Disputes between the United Colonies and the Dutch.
- 1671. Charleston founded.
- 1673. *War between England and H. land*.—The Dutch take New York.
- 1675. } *King Philip's War*.
- 1676. }
- 1681. Penn receives a Charter for Pennsylvania.
- 1682. Philadelphia founded.
- 1694. Culture of Rice introduced in South Carolina, from Africa.
- 1697. Peace of Ryswick terminates King William's War.

# AMERICAN HISTORY.

WILLIAM AND MARY, ANNE, GEORGE I.,

GEORGE II., GEORGE III.

## 1700.

- 1702. Queen Anne's War.
- 1703. First American Newspaper.—(Boston News Letter.)
- 1710. First Post Office in America.
- 1719. Aurora Borealis first seen in New Eng.
- 1723. Vermont settled.
- 1729. North and South Carolina separated.
- 1733. Georgia settled.
- 1738. Nassau Hall College founded at Princeton, New Jersey.
- 1744. War between France and England.
- 1748. Peace restored.
- 1754. Commencement of the old French War. Congress of Delegates from seven Colonies meet at Albany.
- 1755. Defeat of Braddock.
- 1757. Fort William Henry taken by Montcalm.
- 1759. Quebec taken—Wolfe killed.
- 1764. Philadelphia Medical School founded.
- 1765. Stamp Act passed.—First Colonial Congress, from nine States, meet at N. York, and publish a Declaration of Rights.
- 1766. Stamp Act repealed.
- 1767. New Taxes imposed.
- 1770. Boston Massacre.
- 1773. Tea thrown into the Harbor at Boston.
- 1774. CONTINENTAL CONGRESS, at Philadelphia.
- 1775. Revolutionary War begins.—Skirmish at Lexington.—Bunker Hill.
- 1776. Independence declared.—Americans defeated on Long Island.—Battle of White Plains.—Trenton.
- 1777. Battle of Princeton—Bennington—Brandywine—Stillwater—Germantown—Saratoga.—Surrender of Burgoyne.
- 1778. Treaty of Alliance between France and America.—Battle of Monmouth.—A French Fleet, under D'Estaing, arrives.—Massacre at Wyoming.—Savannah taken by the British.
- 1779.—Sunbury taken by the British.—Battle at Briar Creek.—Storming of Stoney Point and Paulus Hook.—Battle of the Bon Homme Richard and Serapis.—Siege of Savannah.
- 1780. Battle near Camden, S. C.—Treason of Arnold.
- 1781. Revolt of the Pennsylvania troops.—Battle of Cowpens.—Guilford—Hobkirk's Hill. Eutaw Springs.—Surrender of Cornwallis.
- 1782. Treaty of Peace signed.
- 1783. Army disbanded.—Washington resigns his commission.
- 1784. Shay's Rebellion.
- 1787. Convention for Framing a Constitution.
- 1788. Eleven States adopt the Constitution.
- 1789. Commencement of the Federal Government.—Washington President.
- 1791. Vermont admitted into the Union.
- 1792. Kentucky admitted into the Union.—U. S. Mint established.
- 1793. Washington again elected President.
- 1796. Tennessee admitted into the Union.—Washington's Farewell Address.—John Adams President.
- 1799.—Washington dies.

## 1800.

- 1800. Seat of Government transferred to Washington.
- 1801. Jefferson elected President.
- 1802. Ohio admitted into the Union.
- 1803. Louisiana purchased.—War with Tripoli.
- 1807. Affair with the Chesapeake and Leopard.—Burr's Conspiracy and Trial.
- 1809. Madison's Administration.
- 1811. Affair of the Little Belt.—Louisiana admitted into the Union.—Battle of Tippecanoe.
- 1812. Declaration of War against Great Britain by the United States—Surrender of Hull.—Battle of the Constitution and Guerriere.—Wasp and Frolic—United States and Macedonian—Constitution and Java.
- 1813. Battle of the Hornet and Peacock.—Capture of York—Death of Pike.—Forts George and Erie taken.—Battle of Lake Erie—of the Thames—on Lake Ontario—of Taladega.
- 1814. Battle of Talapoosa—Chippewa—North Point—Bridgewater.
- 1815. Battle of New Orleans.—Treaty of Peace.
- 1816. National Bank established.—Indiana admitted into the Union.—Colonization Society formed.
- 1817. Monroe elected President.—Internal Improvements—Roads and Canals, commenced.—Mississippi admitted.
- 1818. Jackson chastises the Seminoles.—Illinois admitted.
- 1819. First Steam Ship sails for Europe.—Alabama admitted into the Union.
- 1820. Northern Canal completed.—Maine admitted.
- 1821. Missouri admitted.—Florida ceded to the United States.
- 1824. Lafayette visits America.
- 1825. John Q. Adams' Administration.
- 1826. Adams' and Jefferson's death.
- 1828. Tariff Bill amended.
- 1829. Andrew Jackson's Administration.—First appearance of Cholera in America, at Quebec.—Black Hawk's War.
- 1833. Removal of the Deposits from the U. S. Bank to the State Banks.
- 1835. Great Fire in New York.—Michigan admitted.—1835 to 1837, mania for Speculation rages.
- 1836. Arkansas admitted into the Union.
- 1837. Van Buren's Administration.—Great pecuniary distress.—Banks in New York stop Specie Payment.
- 1839. Banks in N. Y. resume Specie Payment.
- 1841. William H. Harrison President.—Dies April 4.—John Tyler President.
- 1842. North-Eastern Boundary Question settled.
- 1845. Iowa and Florida admitted.—James K. Polk, President.—Morse's Telegraph carried into operation.—Texas admitted into the Union.
- 1846. Oregon Boundary Question settled.—Taylor encamps opposite Matamoras.—Battles of Palo Alto, Resaca de la Palma and Monterey.
- 1847. Battle of Buena Vista.—Vera Cruz taken.—Cerro Gordo—Jalapa—Perote—Puebla—Contreras—Churubusco—Molino del Rey—Chapultepec.—Enter Mexico, Sept. 14.

# CONTENTS.

---

	Page.
American Antiquities .....	13—45
Indian History.....	45—68
Division of the Work.....	70

## PART I.

### CHAPTER I.

#### EARLY DISCOVERIES.

Columbus—Sebastian Cabot—Alonzo de Ojeda—Conte- reale—Cartier—Ponce de Leon—Ferdinand de Soto—Coligni— Gilbert—Sir Walter Raleigh—Bartholomew Gosnold—Capt. John Smith—London Company.....	70—84
-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-------

### CHAPTER II.

#### COLONIAL HISTORY

VIRGINIA—Under the first charter—Under the second charter —Under the third charter—From the dissolution of the Lon- don Company until the French and Indian War. ....	84—99
-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-------

### CHAPTER III.

MASSACHUSETTS.—Massachusetts Bay Colony—King Philip's War—King George's and Queen Anne's Wars.....	99—123
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	--------

### CHAPTER IV.

NEW HAMPSHIRE.....	123—125
--------------------	---------

### CHAPTER V.

CONNECTICUT .....	125—133
-------------------	---------

# CONTENTS.

xi

Page

## CHAPTER VI.

RHODE ISLAND..... 133—135

## CHAPTER VII.

NEW YORK.—Dutch West India Company—Swedish Colony  
—Grant to the Duke of York—Leisler and Milborne . . . . 135—149

## CHAPTER VIII.

NEW JERSEY..... 149—152

## CHAPTER IX.

DELAWARE.. . . . . 153

## CHAPTER X.

PENNSYLVANIA..... 154—158

## CHAPTER XI.

MARYLAND.. . . . . 158—162

## CHAPTER XII.

NORTH CAROLINA..... 162—166

## CHAPTER XIII.

SOUTH CAROLINA..... 166—170

## CHAPTER XIV.

GEORGIA . . . . . 170—174

## CHAPTER XV.

French and Indian War..... 174—191

## CHAPTER XVI.

Causes of the Revolution..... 191—208

## CHAPTER XVII.

Revolutionary War—Campaign of 1775. . . . . 208—224

## CHAPTER XVIII.

Campaign of 1776..... 224—235

---

## PART II.

### CHAPTER I.

Conclusion of Campaign of 1776..... 235—266

### CHAPTER II.

Campaign of 1777..... 266—302

### CHAPTER III.

Campaign of 1778. . . . . 302—313

### CHAPTER IV.

Campaign of 1779..... 313—324

## CHAPTER V.

Campaign of 1780.....	324—336
-----------------------	---------

## CHAPTER VI.

Campaign of 1781.....	336—350
-----------------------	---------

## PART III.

## CHAPTER I.

Washington's Administration.....	350—358
----------------------------------	---------

## CHAPTER II.

Adams' Administration.....	358—362
----------------------------	---------

## CHAPTER III.

Jefferson's Administration.....	362—368
---------------------------------	---------

## CHAPTERS IV., V., VI., VII.

Madison's Administration—War with England—Campaigns of 1812, '13, '14.....	368—396
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------	---------

## CHAPTER VIII.

Monroe's Administration.....	396—400
------------------------------	---------

## CHAPTER IX.

J. Q. Adams' Administration.....	400—403
----------------------------------	---------

## CHAPTER X.

Jackson's Administration.....	403—409
-------------------------------	---------

## CHAPTER XI.

Van Buren's Administration.....	409—413
---------------------------------	---------

## CHAPTER XII.

Harrison's Administration.....	413—416
--------------------------------	---------

## CHAPTER XIII.

Tyler's Administration.....	416—419
-----------------------------	---------

## CHAPTER XIV.

Polk's Administration—War with Mexico.....	419—447
--------------------------------------------	---------

# History of the United States.

---

## AMERICAN ANTIQUITIES

AND

## DISCOVERIES IN THE WEST.

---



THE leading incidents in the history of the old world have been recorded by the pen of faithful historians, either sacred or profane. The Bible, the only book that has moved

What is said of the leading incidents in the history of the old world?

Of the Bible?

along upon the great stream of time and not been ingulphed in its eddying whirlpools, has thrown upon the earlier nations the bright light of inspiration. It commenced a clear and historical chain of events, stretching from the birth-day of Creation to the deluge, and from the deluge to the destruction of Jerusalem by Titus.

2. In looking at the old world, we have spread out before us a grand panorama of six thousand years. We can trace its events, witnessing the different nations, which have stepped upon the theatre of life and then passed away, while the

What is said of the old world?

finger of time has written ruin and desolation on the proud temples and monuments of art, which they vainly deemed to be eternal, and scattered dust in the halls and palaces of their kings. The events which cluster so thickly around each point in the career of these ancient nations, make their history full of peculiar interest.

3. As the antiquarian wanders among the broken columns and scattered fragments of their ruined cities, the very small portions of their history with which he is acquainted give double interest to the scene. He stands by the broken gates of Thebes, upon her shattered walls, and gazes upon the stupendous ruins of that now silent and pulseless city. The veil is lifted from the past, his mind glances back through the long, dim vista of buried centuries, and he hears the throbings of her mighty heart, the thundering tramp of her men-at-arms, as they sweep with waving crests, and burnished arms, in battle array through her broad gates. He listens, as the rays of the sun stream over the hills, and light up those shafts and domes. He hears strains of sweetest music, filling the air with its rich melody, pouring out from Memnon's temple, as if its tones were instinct with life.

4. There, by its base, stands the sightless, bald-headed Homer, striking the harp of poesy with so bold a hand, as to fill all Greece with music, and send its immortal strains onward through all time. He stands upon the site of ancient Troy, and there pass before his vision the armed hosts of Greece, Ajax, Agamemnon, and the god-like Achilles, bat-



ting with Trojan Hector and Priam for the beautiful Helen. He enters the ruined cities of the Pharaohs, wanders through the three thousand chambers of her mighty pyramids, descends into the sepulchres of her dead, and drags out from their long rest of thousands of years, the bodies of the kings and great men of Egypt, who sat upon the throne, and moved in splendor in those days when Israel groaned beneath their heavy weight of bondage, slaves to their oppressors. As he stands on the cast-up mounds of what was once Babylon, and looks around him upon the wide scene of desolation—the waters of the Euphrates rolling over a portion of the city—he sees the fulfilment of a prophecy of God, pronounced thousands of years before, when that nation was glorying in its strength and power. “I will also make it a possession for the bittern, and pools of water; and I will sweep it with the besom of destruction, saith the Lord of Hosts.”

What of the antiquarian, as he looks upon the ruins of Babylon?

5. Wander where he will through those ancient cities, and over the graves of those buried nations, scenes constantly start up before his eyes, made sacred by the pen of inspiration, the fulfilment of prophecy, the tongue of the orator, or the harp of poesy and song; and every crumbling city, every hill and mountain, every stream of water has its own peculiar tale to tell. Hence, we have grown more familiar with those ancient nations than with the antiquities and earlier history of our own country. Indeed, travelers seem never to have known, or to have forgotten, in their enthusiastic researches and admiration of the ruins of the old world, that

Why is it that we have grown more familiar with these ancient nations than our own?

What do  
travelers  
seem to  
have for-  
gotten in  
their ad-  
miration  
of the  
ruins of  
the old  
world?

there exists a vast continent, far beyond those lands of poesy and song—beyond the broad bosom of the Atlantic—containing hills and mountains, rivers and lakes, far more stupendous and magnificent than any thing of which either Asia or Europe can boast: that here, on this western continent, we are living—are moving over the tombs of nations, as ancient, and as far advanced in civilization as the Roman, the Persian, Chaldean, or Egyptian—that we are surrounded by the ruins of cities and fortresses, which bear evident marks of having been constructed hundreds of years before the landing of Columbus upon our shores, and by a race of men cotemporary with the Egyptians and Romans.

What is  
here said  
of our  
own  
country?

6. No country in the world presents so broad a field for study as does our own: none so rich in ancient ruins, in mineral wealth, in internal resources, bold, majestic mountains, in vast inland seas, and in rivers, forming channels of communication with the ocean, thousands of miles in every direction into the interior of the country.

Its ex-  
tent?

7. North America stretches from north to south, 5,600 miles, and from east to west, 4,000, covering over an extent of 7,200,000 square miles. The middle portion comprises the United States, to the history of which our attention will be more particularly directed. It contains more than 2,300,000 square miles. The eastern shore is washed throughout the whole extent by the waves of the Atlantic, and its western resounds with the roar of the Pacific.

8. It has Niagara thundering on its northern boundaries, connected with the great Lakes, whose

waters it pours into the river St. Lawrence, through which great artery they are conveyed 750 miles to the ocean. From the western face of the Alleghanies, a range of mountains presenting some of the most sublime scenery in the world, the Ohio takes its rise, and flows for 1,000 miles, until it empties itself into the Mississippi, the great father of waters, whose source is found at the extreme northern frontier of the United States, and winds on its serpentine course through every variety of climate and soil, 3,600 miles, until it discharges its swollen and turbid waters into the Mediterranean of the West, the Gulf of Mexico.

What is said of the great western rivers?

9. Far back, toward the setting sun, on the eastern side of the Rocky Mountains, formed by the trickling streams which flow down its channeled sides, the Missouri, another mighty river, takes its rise, and sweeps on through a country teeming with the most luxuriant vegetation, 4,000 miles, until it pours its dark volume into the Mississippi. These are some of the great streams which, like arteries, pervade every part of the country, causing it to bud and blossom like the rose, and teem with life and vegetation. On our northern shores lie vast internal seas, more than 400 miles in extent.

10. What nation, or what country in the world, can boast of mountains, lakes, and rivers like our own? But we are not to suppose that this country has remained quiet and undisturbed during the terrible commotions of nature which have shaken the eastern world. The same great causes which plowed a channel for the Black Sea to the Mediterranean, opened a passage through the Straits of

Gibraltar for its waters to the ocean, overwhelmed with a flood of fire Pompeii and Herculaneum, hurled up from the bottom of the sea vast islands, and rolled its waves over others, have been at work here.

What is said of the change which has been produced in the country?

11. The whole land, from north to south and from east to west, plainly shows the change which has been produced by these great agents. Many of the vales of our rivers were once the bottoms of immense lakes; and now, where the tops of the tallest forests wave, or where the towering spires of many a Christian temple make glad with their sight the heart of civilized man; and where are the smoking chimneys of his wide-spread habitations; once sported (long, perhaps, before the advent of our Saviour) the monstrous lake-serpent and finny tribe, or birds of bright plumage passed along the horizon.

12. We look to the soil, where grazes the peaceful flock—to the fields, where wave a thousand harvests—to the air above, where play the wings of the low-flighted swallow—and to the roads, where the passing wheels denote the course of men—and say, can this be so? Yes; where the waves once rolled is now fixed the foundation of many a stately mansion, the dwelling of man. Such the mutation of matter and the change of habitation.

What change is evident in the Susquehanna, Potomac, James, and Delaware rivers?

13. The principal ridges of the Alleghany, Blue Ridge, &c., run in a transverse direction to most of the great rivers, so that their mounds must have been broken through, to make a way to the sea from the bosom of the valleys. This is evident in the Potomac, Susquehannah, Delaware, James rivers, and others, where they issue from the confines of the mountains to enter the lower country.

14. The Potomac, three miles below the mouth of the Shenandoah, gives a striking example of this fact. It here dashes and foams along upon its rocky bed, through what is evidently a breach in the Blue Ridge, about twelve hundred yards wide, and three hundred and fifty yards high. This chasm plainly displays traces of an ancient wall, composed of grey quartz, which once dammed up the river, forming immense lakes, that stretched far back over a great extent of territory.

What is farther said of the Potomac?

15. The valley of the Shenandoah and Conigochegue must have been the basin of a single great lake, extending from Staunton to Chambersburg. The upper branches of the James river would have swelled it with their waters, and finding no obstacle below, must have extended not only to the Susquehannah and Schuylkill, but even to the Delaware. The outlets to these vast lakes must have been over the rocky walls of the mountain barriers, which have since broken: thus they would have formed falls of the most magnificent description, which had thundered in their descent from the time of Noah's flood till the rupture of the ridge took place, and the immense lake, drained of its waters, laid open a tract of rich soil to the genial warmth of the sun.

What was the probable extent of a great lake formed by the Shenandoah and Conigochegue?

16. There is every reason to suppose that the Hudson was checked in its passage to the sea, by a chain of rocks stretching across the present channel, at the Highlands, causing the waters to extend over a considerable surface of the country, in the form of a large lake. A strong argument favoring this theory exists in the presence of alluvia, petrified shells, &c., found along the banks, in different

What changes have been made in the Hudson?

What fact favors this theory?

parts of the valley of the Hudson, and in fact, in the valleys of most of our large rivers.

What  
rivers are  
supposed  
once to  
have  
been  
lakes?

17. These ancient lakes, now drained by the breaking away of their mounds, explain very beautifully the appearance observed in the valleys of such rivers as are supposed to have been once lakes, as the Tennessee, the Kentucky, the Mississippi, the Kanhaway, and the Ohio. This appearance is the several stages or flats, observed on the banks of these rivers, and most of the rivers of America, showing that subsequently the waters of the rivers were higher, but as the mounds which dammed up their course became gradually broken away by the weight of the mass above them, the waters being thus drained off, new marks of embankment would be formed, far below the original ones, circumscribing, by a large distance, the channel of the river. This is very perceptible on the Ohio, at Cincinnati, where the original bank is nearly 50 feet above the present level of the river.

What ap-  
pearance  
in these  
rivers is  
explain'd  
by this  
theory?

What of  
the banks  
of the  
Ohio?

What is  
further  
stated of  
this riv-  
er?

18. When we examine the arrangement of these flats, we are furnished with indubitable evidence that the place where the city of Cincinnati now stands was once, not only the seat of waters, but the primitive bed of the river, which appears to have had three different periods of decline, till it has sunk to its present bed or channel. The level of the second flat of the Ohio, which is the general surface of the country, is no more than 70 feet below Lake Erie; consequently, a mound of two hundred feet at Silver Creek, six hundred miles down the Ohio from Pittsburg (where there is every reason to suppose that a chain of hills stretched across the pre-

sent bed of the river), would have been sufficient to keep back its waters, not only as far as Lake Erie, but even to spread them from the last slopes of the Alleghanies to the north of Lake Superior.

18. The existence of ancient lakes explains why, in every part of the basin of the Ohio, the land is always leveled in horizontal beds of different heights, and why we find in various places, remains of trees, of osier, and other plants. It also accounts beautifully for the formation of immense beds of sea-coal found in the western country, in particular districts. From the researches which the inhabitants have made, it appears that the principal seat of coal is above Pittsburgh, in the space between the Laurel Mountain and the Alleghany and Monongahela rivers, where exists almost throughout, a stratum, at the average depth of twelve or sixteen feet. This stratum is supported by the horizontal bed of calcarious stones, and covered with strata of schists and slate.

What is farther explain'd from the existence of these ancient lakes?

Where is the principal seat of sea-coal?

19. On the hypothesis of the great lake of which we have spoken, this part will be found to have been originally the lower extremity of the lake, and the part, where its being kept back would have occasioned still water. Coal is formed of heaps of trees carried away by rivers and floods, and afterward covered with earth. The rivers that flow from the Alleghany and Laurel Mountains into the basin of the Ohio, finding toward Pittsburgh the dead waters and *tail* of the great lake, there deposited the thousands of trees and driftwood which they had washed down in the freshets. These trees were accumulated in strata, level as

the fluid that bore them ; and the mound of the lake sinking gradually, as we have explained, the tail was likewise lowered by degrees, and the place of deposit changed as the lake receded, forming that vast bed, which, in the lapse of ages, has been covered with earth and gravel, and acquired the mineral properties of coal, the state in which we find it. Coal is found in several other parts of the United States, and always in circumstances analogous to those we have just described.

What is said of the existence of a great lake in the valley of the Mississippi?

20. The lower part of the Mississippi river gives us many evidences that the waters were once dammed up, forming above them a lake which filled up a large portion of its valley. The West India islands are supposed by naturalists to have been the Atlantic coast of the continent ; the breaking away of the mound confining the immense body of water, which once covered an almost boundless portion of the West, must, beyond doubt, have raised the Atlantic so as to submerge in its increase many a sunny spot along its coasts, leaving only the more elevated tracts above the surface of the water, in which we now see the numerous islands on our eastern shore, and on the Gulf of Mexico.

What changes have been produced by earthquakes in the North?

21. Though the northern parts of North America have been known to us but about two centuries, yet, during that time, no less than forty-five earthquakes have occurred, many of them so severe as to prostrate houses, dry up wells and streams of water. The shocks of these earthquakes extended north-east, and south-west, particularly affecting the direction of Lake Ontario, and were attended by a fetid smell of sulphur. Volney sup-



poses, from the singular structure of this lake, that it was once the crater of a vast volcano. Another reason for this supposition is the great depth of the lake, being generally upward of three hundred feet, and in many places the bottom cannot be found with a line of forty rods. Volcanic productions are found in vast quantities on its shores. Whether this idea of Volney is correct, or not, the northern part of this country, especially in the vicinity of Lake Ontario, bears strong marks of having been exposed to the action of those two powerful agents, fire and water, which are constantly producing such mighty changes in the universe of matter.

What  
eviden-  
ces of  
volcanic  
action  
around  
Lake On-  
tario?

22. We have now glanced briefly at the general face of the country, the changes which have been produced by the draining of the vast internal lakes, the formation of sea-coal, &c., and shall now touch upon those ancient ruins of cities, mounds, and fortifications, in which this country is so peculiarly rich.

23. Foreign travelers complain that America presents nothing like *ruins* within her boundaries; no ivy-mantled towers, nor moss-covered turrets, as in other quarters of the earth. Old Fort Putnam, on the Hudson, rearing its lofty decayed sides high above West Point; or the venerable remains of two wars at Ticonderoga, upon Lake Champlain, they say, afford something of the kind. But what are mouldering castles, falling turrets, or crumbling abbeys, in comparison with those ancient and artificial aboriginal hills which have outlived genera-

tions, and even all tradition—the workmanship of unknown hands ! Here are skeletons of strange forms, unknown to the Indians ; preserved bodies, fortifications, immense mounds and tumuli, which, from their number, obscurity of origin and magnitude, are to be ranked among the wonders of ancient things. It remains for America to tell the story of her antiquities—to arouse her virtuosi and antiquarians to the search ; for here, beyond a doubt, are traits of nations coeval with ancient, and probably with the oldest works of man, this side the flood.

Where  
are these  
mounds,  
&c., gen-  
erally  
found ?

24. These mounds and fortifications are generally found on fertile bottoms, and near rivers. Several hundreds have been discovered along the valley of the Mississippi ; the largest of which stands not far from Wheeling, on the Ohio. This mound is fifty rods in circumference, and ninety feet in perpendicular height. It is filled with thousands of human skeletons, and was probably situated near some great city, and was a general deposit of the dead for ages—where they were placed in gradation, one layer above another, till they reached the top.

What of  
the  
mound  
near  
Wheel-  
ing ?

25. Judging from the large trees growing on the mound, amid old and decayed timber covered with mould and leaves, showing them to be of the second or third growth, it must have been at least twelve hundred years since it was deserted.

What of  
the forti-  
fications  
at Mari-  
etta ?

26. At Marietta extensive fortifications are found, consisting of walls and mounds of earth, running in straight lines, from six to ten feet high, and nearly forty broad at their base. There is

also at this place a fort of this ancient description, which incloses nearly *fifty* acres of land. There are openings in this fortification, supposed to have been, when thronged with its own busy multitudes, used as gateways, with a passage from one of them, formed by two parallel walls of earth, leading toward the river. This fort gives us something of an idea, not only of the power of the builders, but the strength of their enemy. These fortifications correspond, in almost every respect, with the Roman forts and camps; and it is highly probable, as we shall hereafter show, that they were constructed by that nation.

What reason have we to suppose that these fortifications are of Roman origin?

27. Any one, on looking at the account given by Josephus of the forms of the Roman camps, in his Book 5, chap. 5, page 219, will be surprised at the striking similarity between the two; a similarity which could not have been the result of chance.

Dr. Morse says the forts of the Romans in England were universally *square*; and those of the ancient Danes, Belgæ and Saxons, were distinguished by being round. Here, too, are the parallel walls, the ditch, the elevated squares at its corners, the parapets and gateways, like those of the Romans.

At the time that the Romans held Britain as a province, their character was a martial and a *maritime* one. They possessed a sufficient knowledge of navigation to traverse the ocean, by means of the stars and the sun. Their ships, as early as the year 55 before Christ, were large and heavy; and it was equally in their power to have found America by chance, as well as other nations—the Welsh or the Scandinavians, who made a settlement

at the mouth of the St. Lawrence in the year 1000.

What re-  
lics of an-  
tiquity  
were  
found in  
Brazil?

28. In the month of December, 1827, a planter discovered in a field, a short distance from Monte Video, a sort of tomb-stone, upon which strange, and to him unknown characters were engraved. He caused this stone, which covered a small excavation formed with masonry, to be raised, in which he found two exceedingly ancient *swords*, a *helmet*, and *shield*, which had suffered much from rust; also an earthen vessel of large capacity. Greek words were easily made out upon them, which, when translated, read as follows:

“During the dominion of *Alexander* the son of *Philip*, King of Macedon, in the sixty-third Olympiad; Ptolemais” —it was impossible to decypher the rest, on account of the ravages of time on the engraving of the stone.

To what  
conclu-  
sion are  
we led  
from  
these  
relics?

29. On the handle of one of the swords is the portrait of a man, supposed to be Alexander the Great. On the helmet there is sculptured work, that must have been executed with the most exquisite skill, representing *Achilles* dragging the corpse of *Hector* round the walls of Troy, a scene taken from Homer's *Iliad*. From the discovery of these relics it is quite clear that the soil of Brazil has been dug by some of the old Greeks, who lived near the time of Alexander. It is highly probable that some of the Grecian navigators, in their voyages of discovery, of which they made many, were driven upon the southern coast, and left behind them this monument to preserve the memory of their voyage to so distant a country.

30. Eratosthenes, a Greek philosopher, mathematician and historian, who flourished two hundred years before Christ, mentions the name of Pytheas, who lived in the time of Alexander the Great, as being a Greek philosopher, geographer and astronomer, as well as a *voyager*, if not an admiral, as he made several voyages into the Atlantic Ocean. There was a great liability of these adventurers being driven off in a western direction, not only by the current which sets always toward America, but also by the *trade-winds*, which blow in the same direction for several months in the year.

What is said of Eratosthenes?

31. In 1821, on the bank of the river Desperes, in Missouri, was found by an Indian a *Roman coin*, which was presented to Gov. Clark. A *Persian coin* was also discovered near a spring in the Ohio some feet under ground.

What coins have been discovered?

The remains of former dwellings, *hearths* and *fire-places*, and bones of animals in immense quantities, are found along the banks of the Ohio, many feet under ground; while above these former habitations of men are found growing trees, as large as any in the surrounding forest. Surely, this carries us back into the dark past, and tells us a mournful tale of the overthrow of mighty nations, and the final extinction of their name from the earth.

What of the remains of ancient dwellings?

32. Lexington, in Kentucky, stands nearly on the site of an ancient town, of great extent and magnificence, which is amply evinced by the wide range of its works covering a great quantity of ground.

What ruins have been found near Lexington?

What of  
the cata-  
comb  
discover-  
ed here?

There is connected with the antiquities of this place a catacomb, formed in the bowels of the limestone rock, about fifteen feet below the surface of the earth. This was discovered in 1775 by some of the first settlers, whose curiosity was excited by the singular appearance of the stones which covered the entrance to the cavern. They removed the stones, when was laid open to their view the mouth of a cave, deep, gloomy, and terrific, as they supposed. Providing themselves with lights and companions, they descended and entered without obstruction a spacious apartment. The sides and extreme ends were formed into niches and compartments, and occupied by figures, representing men. When their alarm had sufficiently subsided to permit them to pursue their investigations, they found these figures to be *mummies*, preserved, by the art of embalming, in as great a state of perfection as any that have been dug out of the tombs in Egypt, where they have remained more than three thousand years. Unfortunately for antiquity and science, this inestimable discovery was made by an ignorant class of people, at a period when a bloody and inveterate war was carried on between the Indians and whites.

What be-  
came of  
the  
mum-  
mies?

33. The whites, indignant at the many outrages committed by the Indians, wreaked their hatred and revenge upon every thing connected with them. Supposing this to be a burying-place for their dead, they dragged them out to the open air, tore open their bandages, kicked the bodies into dust, and made a general bonfire of the most ancient remains antiquity could boast. The descent

to this cavern is gradual—the width four feet, the height seven, and the whole length of the catacomb was found to be eighteen rods and a half, and the width six and a half; and calculating from the niches and shelvings on the sides, it was capable of containing at least two thousand subjects.

What of  
the ex-  
tent of  
this cav-  
ern?

34. Here they had lain, perhaps, for thousands of years, embalmed and placed there by the same race of men with those who built the Pyramids of Egypt, and who excavated their tombs in the earth, or in the rocky mountain sides. What changes had passed over the world since they were deposited there in their quiet resting-place by the hands of affection! Over the ruins of their cities a new race flourished. Earth had grown old and hoary, and time had crumbled their monuments into dust.

35. The conviction forces itself irresistibly upon our mind, that the people who made this cavern and filled it with the thousands of their embalmed dead were indeed from Egypt. If they were not, whither shall we turn for a solution of this mystery? The North American Indians were never known to form catacombs for their dead, or to be acquainted with the art of preservation by embalming.

Who are  
supposed  
to have  
been the  
formers  
of this  
cata-  
comb?

Catacombs are numerous all over Egypt—vast excavations, with niches in their sides for their embalmed dead, exactly such as the one we have described. This custom is purely Egyptian, and was practised in the earliest age of their national existence.

36. A trait of national practice, so strong and

Why are we to believe they are of Egyptian origin?

palpable as is this peculiar art, should lead the mind to a belief that wherever the thing is practised, we have found in its authors either a colony from Egypt, or the descendants of some nation in Africa acquainted with the art.

What early voyages did the Egyptians make?

37. But if this be so, the question here arises, how came they to America, since the shortest distance between America and Africa is about 1700 miles? This question is easily answered. The *ancient* Egyptians were a maritime people; and we find that as far back as B. C. 1485 years, one Danaus, with his fifty daughters, sailed into Greece and anchored at Rhodes. 881 years after the landing of this vessel at Rhodes, we find the Egyptians, under the direction of Necho, their king, fitting out some Phenicians with a fleet, with directions to sail from the Red Sea quite around the continent of Africa, and to return by the Mediterranean, which they effected; thus performing a voyage of more than 16,000 miles—two-thirds of the distance around the earth. It is true they were without the use of the compass and magnet; yet they were much more careful in the knowledge of the heavenly bodies than navigators at present.

How could they probably have reached America?

38. From the western coast of Africa there is a constant current of the sea setting toward America: so that if a vessel were lost it would *naturally* reach at last the American coast. Egypt and the West India islands are both between 20 and 30 degrees north. Sailing from Egypt out of the Mediterranean, through the Straits of Gibraltar, would throw a vessel, in case of an easterly storm, aided by the current, as high north as opposite the Baha-



ma islands. The trade-winds sweep westward across the Atlantic, through a space of 50 or 60 degrees of longitude, carrying every thing within their current directly to the American coast. Kentucky is but five degrees north of Egypt ; so that a band of adventurers could easily have been driven near the eastern coast on the Gulf of Mexico, and there found in our majestic Mississippi something like the Nile.

39. On the banks of the Muskingum, and at Circleville, are the ruins of immense walls, forts, mounds and wells, built, many of them, of beautifully hewn stone, and according to the most scientific principles of architecture. At Paint Creek, in Ohio, are works of art more wonderful than any yet described. They are six in number, and are in the immediate neighborhood of each other. In one of those grand inclosures are contained three forts : one embraces 17, another 27, a third 77, amounting in all to 115 acres of land.

What  
ruins are  
found  
near Cir-  
cleville?

At Paint  
Creek?

40. There are fourteen gateways leading out of the works, from one to six rods in width—at the outside of each of these gateways is an ancient well, from four to six rods in width at the top. Within the large inclosure is an elliptical elevation 25 feet in height, 100 feet in circumference, and filled with human bones. The elevation is perfectly smooth and level on the top, and it may have been a place where the priests of their religion sacrificed human beings before the vast throng which congregated around the mound to witness the bloody rites.

Describe  
them.

41. New discoveries are constantly being made

of these ancient ruins. These works are alike in their construction, and contain articles similar to those found in mounds in Europe, Asia and Africa. Some have supposed that all of the great works of the West which we have noticed belong to our present race of Indians; but, from continual wars with each other, they have driven themselves from agricultural pursuits, and thinned their numbers, until they have been reduced to savagism. Have our present race of Indians ever buried their dead in mounds by thousands? Were they acquainted with the use of silver or copper? These metals, most curiously wrought, have been found. Did our ancient Indians burn the bodies of distinguished chiefs on funeral piles, and then raise a lofty tumulus over the urn containing their ashes? Did the Indians erect any thing like the walled towns on Paint Creek? Did they ever dig such wells as are found at Marietta, Portsmouth, and above all, such as those at Paint Creek? Did they ever manufacture vessels from calcarious breccia, equal to any now made in Italy?

42. To this we respond, they never have: no, not even their traditions afford a glimpse of the existence of such things as forts, tumuli, roads, wells, mounds, walls inclosing between one and two hundred—and even five hundred acres of land; some of them of stone, others of earth, twenty feet in thickness and very high, are works requiring too much labor for Indians ever to have performed. The skeletons found in the mounds never belonged to a people like our Indians. The latter are tall and rather slender, straight-limbed people; but

To what race has it been supposed that these great works belong?

What evidences are adduced to the contrary?

Describe the skeletons.

those found in the barrows and tumuli, were rarely over five feet high ; their foreheads were low, their faces were very short and wide, their eyes large, and their chins very broad.

43. Weapons of brass have been found in many parts of America ; as in the Canadas, Florida, &c., with curiously wrought stones ; all of which go to prove that this country was once peopled with civilized and industrious nations.

44. The celebrated Lord Monboddo, philosopher and metaphysician, spent some time on the study of the origin of languages, and was a firm believer in the account of America having been visited by a colony from Wales, long previous to the discovery of Columbus ; and says the fact is well recorded by several Welsh historians, and cannot be contested. There are many circumstances which render this probable. Of late years, accounts have been received of a nation inhabiting a region a great distance up the Missouri, in manners and appearance resembling the other Indians, but speaking Welsh, and retaining some ceremonies of Christian worship. Inlay, in his history of America, says this is universally believed to be a fact.

What was the opinion of Lord Monboddo respecting a Welch colony in America?

45. On the head-waters of the Red river is a tribe calling themselves the McCedas tribe, whose manners, customs, and speech resemble the Welsh. Powel, in his history of Wales, in the 12th century, speaks of a lost colony ; and also of the voyage of Madoc, son of Owen Groynewdk, prince of Wales, who becoming dissatisfied at home, started on a voyage *west*, in quest of some new country, in which to settle. He found

What fact is stated by Powel?

there a pleasant home ; and after a while returned to Wales and persuaded many of his countrymen to join him ; he put to sea again with ten ships, and there the Welsh historian stops, for their story was never known at home.

What of  
a Norwe-  
gian col-  
ony in  
Ameri-  
ca ?

46. Lord Monboddo says that America was visited by Norwegians long before this lost colony left Wales. They came from Greenland, which they discovered in the year 964. He endeavors to prove in his most curious and interesting book, that America was peopled as soon after the flood as any other country as far from Ararat, and perhaps sooner. He supposes the people of the old world to have had a knowledge of this country as early as the siege of Troy, about 1100 years B. C.

What ac-  
count of  
the dis-  
covery of  
the  
North-  
men is  
given by  
Snoro  
Sturle-  
son ?

A very plausible account of the discoveries of these northern islanders is given by Snoro Sturleson, in his chronicle of King Olaus. He says, one Biorn of Iceland, voyaging to Greenland in search of his father, from whom he had been separated by a storm, was driven by tempestuous weather far to the south-west, until he came in sight of a low country covered with woods, with an island in its vicinity. His account of the country he had seen excited the enterprise of Leif, son of Eric Rauder, the first settler of Greenland.

47. A vessel was fitted out, and Leif and Biorn departed together in quest of this unknown land. They found a rocky island, to which they gave the name of Helleland ; also a low, sandy country, to which they gave the name of Markland ; and two days afterward they observed a continuance of the coast, with an island to the north of it. This last

they described as fertile, well wooded, producing agreeable fruits—and particularly grapes, a fruit with which they were not acquainted; but on being informed by one of their companions, a German, of its qualities and name, they called the country Vineland.

48. They ascended a river well stored with fish, particularly salmon, and came to a lake from which the river took its origin, where they passed the winter. It is very probable that this river was the St. Lawrence, and the lake, Ontario. It is said by the same writer that the relatives of Leif made several voyages to Vineland; that they traded with the natives for peltry and furs; and that in 1121, a bishop, named Eric, went from Greenland to Vineland to convert the inhabitants to Christianity.

49. There is every appearance that the tribe which still exists in the interior of Newfoundland, and who are so different from the other savages of North America, both in appearance and mode of living, are descendants of the ancient Norinans, Scandinavians or Danes.

Of whom  
is the  
tribe of  
New-  
found-  
land sup-  
posed to  
be de-  
scended?

50. In the year 1354 a fishing squadron was driven about the sea by a mighty tempest, for many days, until a boat, containing seven persons, was cast upon an island, called Estotiland, about one thousand miles from Friesland. They were taken to a populous city, the inhabitants of which were intelligent and acquainted with the mechanical arts of Europe. They cultivated grain, made beer, and lived in stone houses. In the king's library were Latin manuscript books. They had many towns and castles, and carried on a trade with Greenland for pitch, sulphur, and peltry.

51. Finding the Frieslanders acquainted with the compass (which they had never seen), they held them in great esteem, and the king sent them with twelve barks to visit a country farther south, where they found in their travels a civilized region where the people had a knowledge of gold and silver, lived in cities, and sacrificed human victims in their splendid temples.

A distinguished writer of Copenhagen possesses ancient genuine documents, showing that America was discovered soon after Greenland, and that it was again visited in the 11th, 12th, and 13th centuries.

Why may we suppose these remains to be of European origin?

52. The remains of stone houses, walls and fortifications, iron tools, and various mechanical instruments, which are found in different parts of the country, compare with those in Europe about the 9th, 10th, 11th and 12th centuries; from which we conclude them to be wholly of European origin.

What evidences of a settlement are there in Onondaga Co.?

53. In Onondaga county, N. Y., is the site of an ancient burying-ground, on which timber of the second growth was growing—judging from the old timber reduced to mould lying round—which was a hundred years old, as ascertained by counting the concentric grains. In one of the graves was found a glass bottle, and an iron hatchet edged with steel. The eye, or place for the helve, was round, and projected like the ancient German axe. In the same town were found the remains of a blacksmith's forge, and crucibles, such as mineralogists use in refining metals.

54. In Scipio, a Mr. Halsted has from time to time plowed up on his farm, seven or eight hun-

dred pounds of *brass*, which appeared to have been formed into various implements of husbandry and war. On this field forest timber was growing abundantly, which had attained a great age and size. Mr. Halsted found also sufficient wrought iron to shoe his horses for many years. We cannot resist the conclusion that on this farm was situated a European village of Danes or Welsh, who were exterminated by war hundreds of years before Columbus was born.

What evidences in Scipio of a settlement?

55. On the Black river, a man in digging a well found a quantity of China and delf ware, at the depth of several feet. In Tompkins county, Mr. Lee discovered on his farm the entire works of a wagon reduced to rust. On the flats of the Genesee river, on the land of Mr. Liberty Judd, was found a bit of silver, about the length of a man's finger, hammered to a point at one end, while the other was smooth and square, on which was engraved in Arabic figures, *the year of our Lord 600*.

At what other places have relics been found, and what are they?

56. The traits of a Scandinavian, Welsh and Danish population are clear; and we agree with the remark of Professor Beck, that they certainly form a *class* of antiquities, entirely distinct from the walled towns, barrows or mounds.

What is the remark here of Prof. Beck respecting these antiquities?

57. Did our limits allow, we could go still more minutely into the history and description of these ancient ruins, at which we have but just glanced. Yet we think we have described enough to show that this so called "*New World*" is as rich in ruins as Asia or Africa: that here, long before the discovery of Columbus, have lived and flourished nations possessing a knowledge of the true God, and as far

advanced in civilization as those on the eastern continent. After having glanced at the first settlement of this country since the flood, and its separation from the old world, we shall bring this highly interesting section to a close.

What may we suppose respecting a direct communication by land over the earth after the deluge?

58. It may be reasonably supposed, that, for some length of time after the great deluge and the portioning out of the world by Noah to his three sons, there might have been a direct communication by land between every part of the earth; but by earthquakes and convulsions of nature, the uniting links between the two great continents have been broken away and overflown by water, while in other parts of the earth the same convulsions have thrown up land above the surface of the water. This supposition is not at all improbable, for we are constantly witnessing the disappearance of large tracts of country, the extension of the dry land far into the sea, and the appearance of large islands.

Why is this not improbable?

Recite the 20th verse of 10th ch. of Genesis.

To what do some divines suppose this to refer?

59. The 20th verse of the 10th chapter of Genesis would rather favor the idea of the union of continents, for it says, "*In the days of Peleg the earth was divided.*" This passage is supposed by many eminent commentators to refer to a separation of the two great continents by the breaking up and overthrow of the land intervening.

The birth of Peleg was about 100 years after the flood, the very time when Babel was being built.

What was the opinion of Buffon and other naturalists respecting America and the eastern continent?

60. Buffon and other naturalists believed that America and China were united on the west, and Europe and America on the east. It was contended by the learned Clavigero that the equatorial parts of Africa and America were once united.



Whether this be true or not, the two countries approach each other in a remarkable manner, along the coast of Guinea on the side of Africa, and the coast of Pernambuco on the side of South America.

61. Among the early Egyptian priests was preserved an account of the existence and final destruction of a large island, situated in the Western Ocean, called *Atlantis*. This island is mentioned by Plato, who wrote about 500 B. C., in his dialogue, entitled "*Timeaus*."

62. Solon, the Athenian lawgiver, is supposed to have traveled into Egypt, about 600 years B. C. He arrived at an ancient temple on the Delta, a fertile island formed by the Nile, where he held a conversation with certain learned priests respecting the *antiquities* of remote ages.

63. "This island, Atlantis," said the Egyptian priest, "was situated in the Western Ocean, opposite the straits of Hercules," which would place it exactly between a part of Europe and America. "There was," said the priest, "an easy passage from this to other islands which *lay adjacent* to a *large continent*, exceeding in size *all* Europe and Asia. The Atlantians made irruptions into Europe and Africa, subduing all Lybia, as far as Egypt, Europe and Asia Minor. They were resisted, however, by the Athenians, and driven back to their Atlantic territories." The Athenians settled at Athens, in Greece, 1556 B. C. One hundred years after their establishment at Athens, they had become a powerful nation: so that the time the Atlantians were repulsed must have been about the year 1443 B. C.

What were the remarks of Egyptian priests respecting the island of Atlantis?

What  
account  
is given  
by Plato?

64. "Shortly after this," says Plato, "there was a tremendous earthquake, and an overflowing of the sea, which continued a day and a night; in the course of which the vast island of Atlantis, and all its splendid cities and warlike nations, were swallowed up, and sunk to the bottom of the sea, which spreading its waters over the chasm, added a vast region to the Atlantic Ocean. For a long time, however, the sea was not navigable, on account of rocks and shoals of mud and slime, and the ruins of that drowned country."

What al-  
lusion is  
made to  
this  
island by  
Euclid?

65. An allusion to this same island, Atlantis, is made by Euclid, who flourished about 300 years B. C., in a conversation which he had with Anarcharsis, a Scythian philosopher, who had, in search of knowledge, traveled from the far distant north to Athens, where he became acquainted with Euclid. They conversed on the various convulsions of the globe; and among other changes Euclid spoke of an island, as large as Africa, which existed beyond the shores of Europe, which, with all its wretched inhabitants, was swallowed up by an earthquake. Here, then, is another witness, besides Solon, who lived 300 years before the time of Euclid, who testifies to the past existence of the island Atlantis. These allusions to the vast island, and the *noble continent* beyond it, are exceedingly curious, and not without some foundation of probability.

Mention  
some of  
the evi-  
dences of  
an antediluv-  
ian popu-  
lation  
in Amer-  
ica?

66. There are many undoubted evidences of an *antediluvian* population in America, in a class of antiquities, distinguished entirely from those which we have described in the mounds, fortifications, &c.

These most rare and truly venerable relics of a world before the flood, present themselves in digging far below the surface of the ground. They occur in the forms of fire-brands, *split*-wood, ashes, coal, tools, and utensils of various kinds, brass rings, &c. Immense vessels of pottery of curious workmanship and remarkable size, have been discovered eighty and ninety feet below the surface.

67. On the Susquehannah river, a piece of pottery was found, *twelve* feet across the top, making a circumference of *thirty-six* feet, and of proportionable depth and form. No ray of light dawns upon this strange remnant of by-gone days, to tell us its use.

In digging a well near Cincinnati, in 1826, the *stump* of a tree was found in a sound state, eighty feet below the surface. The blows of the axe were still visible, and the remains of the tree were firmly rooted in its original position, several feet *below* the bed of the Ohio. Another stump was discovered near this place, *ninety-four* feet below the surface, and on its top it appeared as if some iron tool had been consumed by rust.

68. In the section about Fredonia, on the south side of Lake Erie, utensils of various kinds have been found, *split*-wood and ashes, from thirty to fifty feet below the surface, which is much below the bed of Lake Erie.

Near Williamsburg, in Virginia, about sixty miles from the sea, the whole vertebræ of a whale, and several fragments of the ribs, &c., were found imbedded some feet below the surface. In the same region, at depths of from sixty to ninety feet,

What  
was  
found in  
digging  
near  
Cincinnati?

What  
was  
found  
near  
Fredonia?

What  
near  
Williamsburg?

have been discovered the teeth of sharks. From these and various other curious discoveries, from fifty to one hundred feet below the surface, we are led to conclude that the original surface of America was not much disturbed, but was rather suddenly overwhelmed from the west. The vast strata of loam, sand, clay, gravel and stone, which lie over each other, evince, from the unnatural manner of their positions, that they were thrown furiously by water over the continent, from the countries of the west.

69. Discoveries like these, at this vast depth, and scattered over so wide a region of country, cannot belong to any age, or to any of the works of man, this-side the deluge, as time enough has not elapsed since that catastrophe to allow the decomposition of vegetables, nor of convulsions to have buried these articles so deep below the surface. But, if any doubt that these remains are antediluvian, none can be entertained respecting the skeletons of mammoths, and birds whose quills were large enough to admit a man's arm into the calibre, and the claws measuring three feet in length.

Describe  
the skeleton  
of an animal  
found  
in Louisiana.

70. The remains of a monster were discovered in Louisiana, seventeen feet under ground, the largest bone of which weighed twelve hundred pounds, was twenty feet long, and was thought to be the shoulder-blade or jaw-bone. This immense animal is supposed to have been 125 feet in length. Such an animal would indeed be, as it is said in Job, of the Behemoth, "The chief of the ways of God" in the creation.

71. How dreary—how horrible are our emotions,

when we reflect on the immensity of the destruction of living beings in the Deluge. An inexpressible feeling of awe comes over the gayest spirit in meditating on these sublime scenes ; but the emotion is heightened when we think that we are living—we are moving over the crushed and mingled remains of antediluvians.

“ All that tread  
The globe are but a handful to the tribes  
That slumber in its bosom.”

72. *We*, now, are upon the busy stage of life. Around us are many proud works of art, reared by men of the present day. In our full career of progress and of happiness, we can and do rejoice in the beauty which this world puts on. The mind wanders without an effort in the contemplation of present things ; but when thoughts of by-gone days come over us, sadness comes too ; and the mind seems to shrink from a contact with the gay and busy world about us.

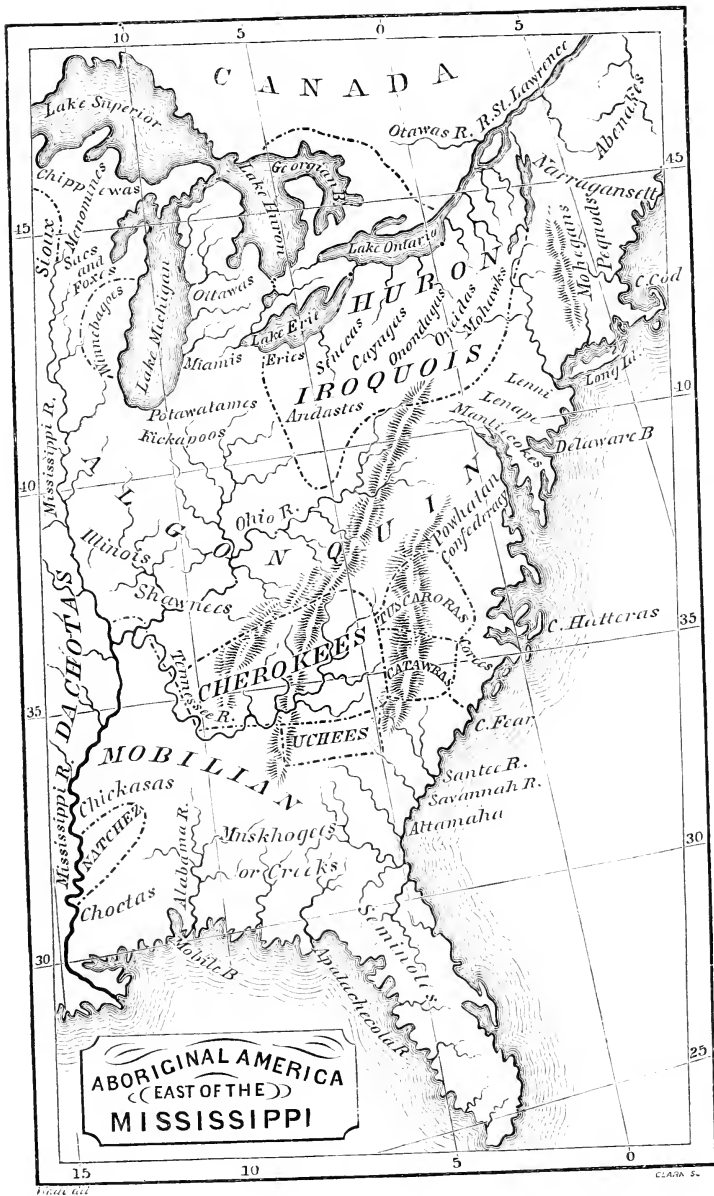
73. The memory of other days has ever been mournful to the soul ; and this sympathy pervades all ages. Speak to childhood of the buried world and its mysteries, and the heart-bubbling laugh is stilled, and childish hopes forgotten. The hopes and aspirations of manhood are for a time relinquished in the overwhelming contemplation. The maiden's cheek is blanched as her woman's heart prompts thoughts of life, and its never-ceasing changes. The aged man, with the accumulated wisdom of years, bows his head as he thinks of those by-gone days ; and feels by every weakened nerve, that he, too, in turn, must go down to his

resting-place in earth's bosom, and sleep with "patriarchs of the infant world."

Here, too, young reader, *thou* shalt rest. The silver cord will be one day loosed, and the golden bowl broken.

"So live, that, when thy summons comes to join  
The innumerable caravan, that moves  
To that mysterious realm, where each shall take  
His chamber in the silent halls of death;  
Thou go not like the quarry slave, at night  
Scourged to his dungeon; but, sustain'd and sooth'd  
By an unfaltering trust, approach thy grave  
Like one that draws the drapery of his couch  
About him, and lies down to pleasant dreams."







# History of the United States.

---

## A GENERAL OUTLINE OF THE INDIAN TRIBES EAST OF THE MISSISSIPPI RIVER, WITH A DESCRIPTION OF THEIR LANGUAGES, MANNERS AND CUSTOMS.

---



THE history of the earliest civilized inhabitants of America is shrouded in the mystery of past ages. Little record is left to us of them, save what is written in the mouldering dust of their wondrous works

What is said of the history of the earliest civilized inhabitants of America?

of art. The toiling, warring laborers of the mounds and forts have passed so far away that even their memory is forgotten, and the thick gloom of by-gone centuries rests on their origin. It may be for years, and it may be forever, before the darkness can at all be dissipated.

2. Not so mysterious is the story of the red man. When our shores were again discovered by Europeans, the fleet-footed Indian roamed over this almost boundless land, a free man. He stood on

What of the red man at the discovery of America by Europeans?

the ground which was all his own, monarch of undiscovered realms. Here for hundreds of winters his ancestors had dwelt, regardless of the whole world except the red man. And when Europeans landed on their coasts, they looked with wonder and amazement on beings fashioned in human form, and still so different in appearance.

Describe the appearance of the Indians.

3. The whites looked with equal wonder at the painted and tattooed chiefs, adorned with many-colored skins and plumes, with the wing of the red bird and the beak and plumage of the raven, with a collar of the claws of the grisly bear ; their pipes glittering with ornaments and adorned with an enemy's scalp. There, too, was the bold Indian girl, with graceful bearing and lustrous eyes, in glittering dress of painted moose and deer skins, ornamented with shining shells and the brightest feathers of the turkey.

What is said of the Indians near the Virginia colony?

4. The Indians earliest known to Europeans were those of Virginia. When the first effectual settlement of that colony was made, in 1607, the surrounding territory for 8,000 square miles was occupied by upward of 30 different tribes, forming one confederacy, of which Powhattan was the sachem or werowance.

What is said of the Indian physiognomy?

5. The first aspect of the original inhabitants of the United States was uniform. The Indians of Florida and Canada had a common physiognomy, and a difference was scarcely perceptible in their manners and institutions, as well as their organization. Before their languages began to be known, there was no safe method of grouping the nations into families ; but when the great variety of dialects

came to be compared, there were found to be not more than eight radically distinct languages east of the Mississippi. Five of these still constitute the speech of powerful communities; but the other three are nearly lost with the disappearance of the tribes from the earth.

How many distinct languages east of the Mississippi?

What is known of them now?

1. 6. The primitive language which was most widely diffused, and the most numerous in dialects, received from the French the name of *Algonquin*. It was the native language of those who greeted the colonists of Raleigh at Roanoke; and its strange tones welcomed the Pilgrims to Plymouth. It was spoken—though not exclusively—in a territory that extended through 60° of longitude, and more than 20° of latitude; so numerous and widely extended were the tribes of the Algonquin family. They were scattered over a moiety, or perhaps more than a moiety, of the territory east of the Mississippi, and south of the St. Lawrence, and constituted about half the original population of that territory. Here were the Micmacs, holding possession of Nova Scotia and the adjacent isles, and who were only known to our fathers as the active allies of the French. They often invaded, but never inhabited New England.

What is said of the Algonquin language and family?

What of the Micmacs?

7. The Sokokis appear to have dwelt on the Saco, and had formed an alliance with the Mohawks; but finally placed themselves under the protection of the French in Canada.

What of the Sokokis?

The Indian often emigrated, so that the clans that disappeared from their ancient hunting-grounds did not always become extinct. They shunned the vicinity of civilization, and often migrated far away.

What is remark'd of the migrations of the red man?

Among the tribes of Texas there are warriors who trace their lineage to the Algonquins, on the Atlantic; and many a proud descendant of the New England tribes now roams over the western prairies.

8. The tribe of the Massachusetts, even before the colonization of the country, had almost disappeared from the shores of the Massachusetts bay.

Where  
were the  
Pokanokets?

The Nar-  
ragansett?  
setts?

The Pokanokets dwelt around Mount Hope, and were sovereigns over Nantucket, Martha's Vineyard, and a portion of Cape Cod. The Narragansetts held dominion over Rhode Island and its vicinity, and a part of Long Island, and were the most civilized of the northern nations.

The Pe-  
quods?

9. The Pequods occupied the eastern part of Connecticut, and ruled a part of Long Island. Their blood was the first shed in the deadly struggles between the whites and Indians. They fought long and bravely, but were not victorious.

The  
Manhat-  
tans?

Where now is seen New York, the proud metropolis of the West, the bold Manhattans roamed, happy and secure in their old forests.

The Mo-  
hawks?

10. The Mohawks first greeted Hudson, as he explored the noble river which bears his name, for their dwelling-place was on its western bank. The rude Mohawk worshiped the Great Spirit at sunset, surrounded by every thing that was beautiful in nature.

Into  
what  
tribes  
were the  
Lenni  
Lenape  
divided,  
and what  
is said of  
them?

11. Farther south were the Lenni Lenape, divided into the Minsi and the Delawares, occupying New Jersey and the valleys of the Delaware and Schuylkill. The Delawares had been dispossessed by the Five Nations, stripped of their rights as warriors, and confined to raising corn, fishing and

hunting, for subsistence. In this way, the Indians reduced their enemies to the state of women, according to their language. Beyond the Delaware were the Nanticokes, who melted imperceptibly into other tribes. Cape Fear was the southern limit of the Algonquin speech.

What was the southern boundary of the Algonquin family?

12. The Shawnees connect the south-eastern Algonquins with the west. The basin of the Cumberland river is marked by Kircheval as the home of this restless nation of wanderers. For many years, they wandered undisturbed from the Cumberland river to the Alabama, from the Santee to the Susquehannah.

What is said of the Shawnees?

13. The Miamis were more quiet in their wishes, and we can go to their own orators for their traditions. "My forefather," said the Miami orator, Little Turtle, at Greenville, "kindled the first fire at Detroit; from thence he extended his lines to the head-waters of the Sciota; from thence to its mouth; from thence down the Ohio to the mouth of the Wabash; and from thence to Chicago, on Lake Michigan. These are the boundaries within which the prints of my ancestors' houses are everywhere to be seen." The early French narratives confirm his words.

How did the Miamis differ from the Shawnees?

14. The Illinois were kindred to the Miamis, and their country lay between the Wabash, the Ohio, and the Mississippi.

Where was the country of the Illinois?

15. In the early part of the 18th century, the Potawatomes had crowded the Miamis from their dwellings at Chicago; the intruders came from the islands near Green Bay, and were a branch of the Chippewas. That nation, or, as some write, the

What of the Potawatomes?

Where  
were the  
Chippewas  
or  
Ojibwas?

Ojibwas,—the Algonquin tribes, of whose dialect, mythology, traditions, and customs we have the fullest accounts,—held the country around Green Bay and Lake Superior.

What of  
the Sacs  
and Foxes?

16. South-west of the Menomonies, the roaming Sacs and Foxes, the enemies of the French, wandered in pursuit of conquest over the whole country between the Wisconsin and the Illinois. These were some of the different tribes speaking the Algonquin language.

Mention  
the  
tribes of  
the Algonquin  
family  
which  
we have  
noticed?

Where  
dwelt  
the  
Sioux?

What is  
said of  
the  
Sioux?

Of the  
Chippewas?

II. 17. The next confederacy or family speaking a different language were the *Sioux* or *Dahcotas*, encamped on the wide prairies east of the Mississippi, wandering between the head-waters of Lake Superior and the Falls of St. Anthony. Their wigwams were discovered by French traders in 1659, and they were visited by Jesuit priests in 1687, and again in 1689. Between the *Dahcotas* and the Chippewas there long existed an hereditary warfare. Like other southern and western tribes, their population appears of late to have very much increased.

What is  
said of  
the Huron-Iroquois?

III. 18. Another of the eight distinct languages is the *Huron-Iroquois*, or, as it is sometimes called, the Wyandot. At the time of the discovery of America, they were powerful in numbers and scattered over a wide territory. The peninsula inclosed between Lakes Huron, Erie, and Ontario had been the dwelling-place of the five confederated tribes of the Hurons.

19. They were defeated by the Five Nations, and a part of their tribe descended the St. Lawrence, and some of their progeny may still be seen

at Quebec ; a part were adopted into the tribes of their victors. The Wyandots fled beyond Lake Superior, having first halted on the shores of the noble Huron lake, and afterward near where Detroit is now situated.

What of the Wyandots ?

20. Thus the Wyandots within our borders are emigrants from Canada. By forming treaties with the Algonquin tribes, they spread along Lake Erie, and gradually acquired a claim to the vast territory from the Miami to the western boundary of New York.

With whom did the Wyandots form treaties ?

21. The Iroquois or Mingoës, or, as they were sometimes called, the Five Nations, were tribes bound together by a league or confederacy. The French called them Iroquois—the English, the Five Nations—and the Connecticut Indians, Mohawks, from the most warlike tribe. Three of the original confederacy consisted of the elder tribes, called the Senecas, Onondagas, and Mohawks, and two were called the younger tribes, viz., the Cayugas and Oneidas.

What were the Iroquois or Mingoës sometimes called ?

Which of the confederacy were called the elder tribes ?

Which the younger ?

22. The number of their warriors, in 1660, is said by the French to have been 2,200. They inhabited the region lying between the borders of Vermont and western New York, from the lakes to the head-waters of the Ohio, the Susquehannah, and the Delaware. Their geographical position made them umpires in the contest of the French for dominion in the West. They acquired a name among the boldest tribes by their conquests, and thus increased their political importance. Not only did they claim supremacy in northern New England between the Kennebec and the southern

Where did they dwell ?

What is farther said of the Iroquois ?

border of Connecticut, and styled themselves lords over the conquered Lenape—they looked upon the peninsula of Upper Canada as their hunting field by right of war; they had exterminated the Eries and the Andastes—had triumphantly invaded the western tribes as far as Illinois; their warriors had chanted their war-songs in Kentucky and western Virginia; and England, to whose alliance they inclined, availed itself of their treaties for the cession of territories, to encroach even on the empire of France in America.

Which tribe afterward joined the confederacy, and what is said of them?

23. The Tuscaroras migrated from North Carolina, and joined the confederacy. Hence they were afterward known as the Six Nations. In 1708, the Tuscaroras were still powerful, and numbered 1,200 warriors, as brave as their Mohawk brothers.

What of the fourth family with distinct language?

IV. 24. The fourth nation with distinct language was the CATAWBAS, dwelling in Carolina. The Catawbias were hated by the warlike Iroquois tribes, and for successive seasons they followed them until they dwindled away and became powerless. Their language is now almost extinct, and the war song is seldom chanted. The Catawbias will soon all be numbered with the departed, for scarce a hundred persons can now be found who speak the native language.

What is said of the Cherokee language?

V. 25. We next notice the wild, mountain-climbing CHEROKEE. Every syllable of his language ends with a vowel, and the combinations with consonants are so few and simple, that the “old beloved speech,” like the Japanese, admits a syllabic alphabet, of which the signs need not exceed 85. Recently, Sequoah, an intelligent Cherokee, com-



pleted an analysis of the syllables of his language, and invented symbols to express them. But, before they were known to Europeans, no red man had ever discriminated the sounds, which he uttered ; in all America there was no alphabet, and knowledge was only conveyed to the eye by rude symbols and imitations.

What has recently been done for the Cherokee language?

26. The Cherokees dwelt chiefly on the headwaters of the Savannah, Chattahoochee, and Alabama rivers, and the branches of the Tennessee and Cumberland, a tract of about 24,000 square miles. Bancroft, in his graphic and beautiful language, speaks of this region as the most picturesque and salubrious east of the Mississippi. He says the homes of the Cherokees were encircled by blue hills rising beyond hills, of which the lofty peaks would kindle with the early light, and the overshadowing ridges envelop the valleys like a mass of clouds. There the rocky cliffs, rising in naked grandeur, defy the lightning, and mock the loudest peals of the thunder storm ; there the gentler slopes are covered with magnolias and flowering forest trees, decorated with roving climbers, and ring with the perpetual note of the whip-poor-will ; there the wholesome water gushes profusely from the earth in transparent springs ; snow-white cascades glitter on the hill-sides ; and the rivers, shallow, but pleasant to the eye, rush through the narrow vales, which the abundant strawberry crimsons, and coppices of rhododendron and flaming azalea adorn.

Where did the Cherokees dwell?

Describe the country of the Cherokees.

27. At the fall of the leaf, the fruit of the hickory and the chestnut is thickly strewn on the

ground. The fertile soil teems with luxuriant herbage, on which the roebuck fattens ; the vivifying breeze is laden with fragrance ; and daybreak is ever welcomed by the shrill cries of the social night-hawk and the liquid carols of the mocking-bird. Here, too, were running waters, inviting to the bath, tempting the angler, alluring wild fowl—for the Cherokee towns were always upon some of their much-loved rivers.

28. The “beloved” people of the Cherokees were a nation by themselves. Who can say for how many centuries, safe in their undiscovered fastnesses, they had decked their war-chiefs with the feathers of the eagle’s tail, and listened to the counsels of their aged warriors ? We must look to the white man for the sad story of the ruin of the Cherokees. In the history of the United States we find a mournful account of pleasant places laid waste, and the mingled bones of brave warriors, with their squaws and young maidens, bleaching together with those of the cunning and usurping white man’s, all over their sunny vales.

What is  
said of  
the  
Uchees ?

VI. 29. South-east of the Cherokees dwelt the UCHEES, boasting to have been the oldest inhabitants of that region. They now constitute an inconsiderable band in the Creek confederacy, and are known as a distinct family only by their singularly harsh and guttural language.

What of  
the Nat-  
chez ?

VII. 30. The NATCHEZ are also now united in the same confederacy ; but they, with the Taensas, were known to history as a distinct nation near the banks of the Mississippi. It has been supposed by travelers, Dumont, Du Pratz, and others, that their

language was a dialect of the Mobilian; but by the persevering curiosity of Gallatin, it is at last known that their language, as far as comparisons have been instituted, has no etymological affinity with any other.

VIII. 31. With the exception of the Uchees and the Natchez, the whole country south-east, south, and west of the Cherokees, to the Atlantic and the Gulf of Mexico, to the Mississippi and the confluence of the Tennessee and the Ohio, was in the possession of one great family of nations, of which the language was named by the French the MOBILIAN, and is described by Gallatin as the MUSK-HOGEE-CHOCTA. It included three large confederacies (Chickasaws, Choctaws, and Creeks), still existing, and perhaps, even with an increase of numbers.

32. The country bounded on the Ohio at the north, on the Mississippi on the west, on the east by a line from the bend in the Cumberland river to the Muscle Shoals of the Tennessee, and extending south into the territory of the State of Mississippi, was the land of the cheerful, brave Chickasaws, long to be remembered as the invincible allies of the English. Around their wigwams the grass was verdant in midwinter; the blue bird and robin are heard in February; the springs of pure water gurgle up through the white sands, to flow through natural bowers of evergreen and holly; and if the earth be but carelessly opened to receive the kernel of maize, the thick corn springs abundantly from the fertile soil. The region is as happy as any beneath the sun; and the love which

of their  
language?

What of  
the ex-  
tent of  
the Mo-  
bilian  
family?

What  
large  
confeder-  
acies  
are in  
this fam-  
ily?

Describe  
the  
country  
of the  
Chicka-  
saws?

it inspired made its occupants, though not numerous, yet the most intrepid warriors of the south.

Of the  
Choctaws?

33. The country of the Choctaws was below the Chickasaws, between the Tombigbee and Mississippi rivers. Dwelling in plains or among gentle hills, they excelled every North American tribe in their agriculture, subsisting chiefly on corn, and placing little dependence on the chase. Their warriors were over 4,000 in number, and their love for their sunny hills was so intense, that in defending their homes they utterly contemned all danger.

What is  
said of  
the  
Choctaws?

What of  
the  
Creeks?

34. In Georgia, extending into Alabama, were the Creeks or Muskogees. They were divided into Upper and Lower Creeks, a part of which are called Seminoles, inhabiting Florida. The term Seminole means "wild man," and was applied to all the vagrants of the nation, who abandoned agriculture for the chase. This country abounded in beautiful creeks and bold rivers, descending with a clear current through a fertile region. They were careful in agriculture, and before going to war, assisted their women to plant

What is  
said of  
the  
Chickasaws,  
Choctaws,  
and  
Cherokees  
in  
point of  
civilization?

35. The Chickasaws, Choctaws, and Cherokees are all considerably advanced in civilization. In this respect, they evidently form an exception to the Indian race, who, generally speaking, flee from civilized society, and relinquish their possessions rather than their wild independence. The earliest European accounts of these people, which are contained in the history of the expedition of Ferdinand de Soto, show them to have been more civilized than any other tribes of the United States. The Cherokees have an impression, that they be-

long to a superior stock; and some of our ablest antiquarians suppose that they migrated from Malacca, Southern Asia.

36. Such is a synopsis of the American nations east of the Mississippi. Very great uncertainty must attend any estimate of the original number of Indians east of the Mississippi and south of the St. Lawrence and the lakes. The diminution of their population is far less than is usually supposed; they have been exiled, but not exterminated. The Cherokee and Mobilian family are more numerous now than ever.

What is remark'd of the number of Indians still existing?

37. Terrible epidemics have raged among them, and thousands have fallen in war; but amid their keenest sufferings, they disdain to manifest their agony by a cry or groan, and even in the death-struggle triumphantly sing their death-song.

38. The study of the structure of the various dialects of the red men sheds light on the inquiry into their condition. *Languages do not lie*, says Horne Tooke. They reveal what time has buried in oblivion.

Of what use is the study of the various Indian dialects?

A late German writer, Prof. Vater, has published, at Leipzig, a book on the population of America. He lays great stress upon the tongues spoken by the aborigines, and dwells considerably on the unity pervading the whole of them, from Chili to the remotest district of North America. The work has been continued by Adelung and Vater in their *Mithridates*, which surpasses all similar performances that have ever been achieved by man. They give an extensive comparison of all the Asiatic, African, and American languages.

What of Prof. Vater's book?

What is  
remark-  
ed of  
each  
Ameri-  
can lan-  
guage?

39. No American language bears marks of being an arbitrary aggregation of separate parts; but each is possessed of an entire organization, having unity of character, and controlled by exact rules. Each appears as a perfect whole, not as a slow formation, springing directly from the powers of man by painful processes of invention; each dialect is not only free from confusion, but is almost absolutely free from irregularities, and is pervaded and governed by undeviating laws. Each American language was competent of itself, without improvement from scholars, to exemplify every rule of the logician, and give utterance to every passion. A tribe has no more been found without an organized language than without eyesight or memory. The savage had, indeed, never attempted the analysis of the primitive sounds; but the analogies are so close, that they may all be expressed by the alphabet of European use.

What is  
said of  
the  
sounds  
of the  
various  
lan-  
guages?

40. The tribes vary in their capacity or their custom of expressing sounds. Of the several dialects of the Iroquois, that of the Oneidas is the softest, being the only one that admits the letter *l* (L); that of the Senecas is the most rude and energetic. The Algonquin dialects, especially those of the Abenakis, heap up consonants with prodigal harshness; the Iroquois abound in a concurrence of vowels. The Algonquins have no *f*; the whole Iroquois family never use the semi-vowel *m*, and want the labials entirely.

How  
was their  
style  
adorned?

41. Their style was adorned with noble metaphors, and glowed with allegory. They spoke of prosperity as a bright sun or a serene and cloudless

sky ; to establish peace is to bury the tomahawk or plant the forest tree ; to offer presents as consolation to mourners, is to cover the grave of the departed.

42. The great peculiarity of the American speech is the absence of all logical analysis of ideas, and the synthetic character pervading them all. The American does not separate the component parts of the proposition which he utters. His thoughts rush forth in a troop, for the picture is presented at once and altogether. This synthetic character is apparent in the attempt to express, in the simplest manner, the name of any thing. The Algonquin and the Iroquois could not say *father* ; they must use a more definite expression. The noun, adjective, and pronoun are blended into one word.

What is a great peculiarity of the Indian language ?

The Indian never kneels ; so, when Eliot translated KNEELING, the word which he was compelled to form filled a line, and numbered eleven syllables.

43. In investigating these and other languages, two momentous conclusions follow. The grammatical forms, which constitute the organization of a language, are not the work of civilization, but of nature. It is not writers, nor arbitrary conventions, that give laws to language ; the forms of grammar, the powers of combinations, the possibility of inversions, spring from within us, and are a consequence of our own organization.

What of the grammatical forms which constitute the organization of a language ?

44. The study of these rudest dialects tends to show, if it does not conclusively prove, that it was not man who made language ; but He who made

What is proved by the study of these rude dialects ?

What is said of the different languages?

man gave him utterance. From the ice-bound regions of the Esquimaux in the north, to the Straits of Magellan on the south, the primitive American languages, entirely differing in their roots, have, with slight exceptions, a similar physiognomy, resembling each other in their internal mechanism.

What coincidence respecting different languages?

45. In the Esquimaux, there is an immense number of forms derived from the regimen of pronouns. The same is true of the Basque language, in Spain, and of the Congo, in Africa. Here is a most wonderful coincidence; and as it pervades languages of different races, dwelling on different continents, it must be the result of law.

What other conclusion is drawn from the study of Indian dialects?

46. Another and more certain conclusion is this, that the ancestors of our tribes were rude like themselves—not yet disenthralled from nature. The character of each Indian language being one universal, all-pervading synthesis, proves them to have been still in the earliest stage of intellectual culture.

How do the Indian men employ themselves?

47. War and hunting are the principal employments of the men. The young Indian travels the war-path frequently, that he may encounter an enemy; and at the great war-dance and feast of his tribe, he will boast of his exploits, and exhibit the shining marks of vermillion on his skin as records of his wounds.

How the Indian women?

48. The Indian woman leads a toilsome life. Patiently she plants the maize, the beans, and running vines, with the rude wooden mattock and shell; her hands draw out the weeds, and in due season gather the harvest. She brings home the



game which her husband has killed—she bears the wood and draws the water; and if the men prepare the poles for the wigwam, it is the woman who builds it, and in their toilsome journeyings she bears it on her shoulders.

49. In the language of our Indians is no word for *year*, and they reckon time by the return of snow or the springing of flowers, and the flight of the birds announces the progress of seasons.

How do the Indians reckon time?

The motion of the sun marks the hour of the day, and these distinctions of time are not noted in numbers, but in words that breathe the grace and poetry of nature.

50. They kept no herds, but depended for food on the chase, fisheries, and agriculture; and, unlike the people of the Old World, they were at once hunters and tillers of the ground. Water was the only drink of the noble red man, until after his acquaintance with Europeans.

How did they procure their food?

51. The government of the Indians is a patriarchal confederacy. Every town or family has a chief, called a *sachem*. Several towns compose a tribe, of which one of their number is the head. The several tribes composing a nation have also a chief, who directs the whole. These rulers are chosen on the opinion which their fellow-warriors have of their wisdom and integrity.

What is said of the government of the Indians?

52. Prohibitory laws were hardly sanctioned by savage opinion, for the wild man hates restraint, and loves to do what is right in his own eyes. Arrests and prisons, lawyers and sheriffs were unknown. Each man was his own protector, and in case of death by violence, the kindred of the

How did the Indian feel when insulted?

deceased would go a thousand miles for the purpose of revenge, over hills and mountains, through large cane swamps full of vines and briars, over broad lakes, rapid rivers, and deep creeks, all the way endangered by poisonous snakes—exposed to the extremities of heat and cold, to hunger and thirst. Peace was restored by atoning presents, if they were enough to cover the grave of the departed.

They hold the bonds of brotherhood so dear, that a brother commonly pays the debt of the deceased, and assumes his revenge and perils.

How did they record their treaties, &c.?

53. The record of their treaties was kept by strings of wampum; and when the envoy of nations met in solemn council, gift replied to gift, and belt to belt.

What of the peace-pipe?

That the words of friendship might be transmitted safely through the wilderness, the red men revered the peace-pipe. With this mysterious pipe, the person of the traveler was safe and welcome to all wigwams.

What did the Indian think of war?

54. War alone was the avenue to glory; all other employments seemed unworthy of human dignity. Any one who, on chanting a war-song, could obtain volunteer followers, became a war-chief. Solemn fasts and religious rites precede the departure of the warriors. A belt painted red, or a bundle of bloody sticks sent to the enemy, is a declaration of defiance.

55. As the war-party leaves the village, a farewell hymn is chanted to the women: "Do not weep for me, loved woman, should I die; weep for yourself alone. I go to revenge our fallen rela-

tions; our foes shall lie like them; I go to lay them low."

56. Captives were sometimes saved and incorporated in the families of the tribes. In such cases they forever left their former hunting-grounds and all that they held dear. Sometimes they were adopted in the place of a slain warrior, and espoused all the interests and retaliated all the wrongs. More commonly it was the captive's lot to suffer torments and death. His fingers were crushed and torn off, the joints of his arms scorched and gashed, while he himself tranquilly sang the songs of his nation, or said to the crowd of guests at the festival, "My brothers, I am going to die. Make merry around me with good heart. I am a man. I neither fear death nor your torments." He then dances around the cabin, chanting his death-song. The most horrid torments last until after sunrise, when the wretched victim, bruised, gashed, half roasted, and scalped, is hacked in pieces!

How  
were  
captives  
some-  
times  
treated?

57. The religion of the Indian was of the rudest kind. They worship both a good and an evil spirit—one to secure favor, the other to deprecate his vengeance.

What is  
said of  
the reli-  
gion of  
the In-  
dians?

Their heaven is in the sweet south-west, where a balmy wind ever blows, and the sky is without a darkening cloud—where the forests are stocked with game and the rivers with fish. There the aged warrior will never experience fatigue, or hunger, or thirst, and care will never come.

58. The Indian saw a divinity in every thing—in the mountain cliff, in the cheering fire, in the blades of grass—the woods, wilds, and running

streams, the stars and the sun—in the blue ocean, in bird, and bee, and blossom; wherever there was motion, being, or action, there, to him, was a spirit; his own beating heart and throbbing pulse spoke to him of a divinity. The Indian was ever firm to his faith; infidelity never clouded his mind—the gloomy shadows of scepticism were unknown to him.

What is  
said of  
their su-  
persti-  
tions?

59. Prayers are daily offered to avert the wrath and to secure the favor of their divinity. That man should deny himself—that sin should be atoned for, are ideas that dwell in human nature. They were so diffused among the savages, that Le Clerc believed some of the apostles must have reached the American continent.

60. The savage puts faith in divination. He casts lots, and believes Nature will be obedient to the decision; he puts his trust in the sagacity of the sorcerer, and believes the *medicine man* can cure all his diseases.

In what  
posture  
were  
they  
buried?

61. While yet alive, the dying chief sometimes arrayed himself in the garments in which he was to be buried, and, giving a farewell festival, calmly chanted his last song, or made a last harangue, glorying in the remembrance of his brave deeds, and commending his surviving loved ones to his friends; and when he had given up the ghost, he was buried in a *sitting* posture, as if to show that, though life was spent, the principle of being was not gone. Everywhere in America this posture was adopted at burials. From Canada to Patagonia, it would seem as though some common sympathy pervaded the continent, and struck a chord which vibrated through the heart of a race.

62. Much has been done by the benevolent to ameliorate the condition of the Indian. Jesuits, Franciscans, Puritans, Moravians, &c., all have sincerely endeavored to convert them, and win them to the regular habits of civilized life. The Jesuit, Stephen de Carheil, revered for his talents and zeal, was for more than sixty years a missionary among the Huron-Iroquois tribes. He spoke their dialects as though they had been his mother-tongue ; yet he saw little to encourage him.

Who have at times endeavored to ameliorate their condition?

63. Elliot, the beloved and self-denying apostle, whose benevolence amounted nearly to the inspiration of genius, often almost despaired. He succeeded, after years of toil, in forming an Indian grammar, and translating the whole Bible into the Massachusetts dialect. He taught the women to spin, the men to dig the ground, and established for them simple forms of government. His zeal never tired, and the simplicity of his life, and invariably amiable temper, won for him many an honest heart.

What is said of the labors of Elliot?

64. There, too, was the heavenly-minded Mahew, devoting his splendid talents to win the untutored savage. With many expressions of gratitude and love he left them, and took passage for England, hoping to awaken some interest there. They never looked upon his much-loved form again, and tidings never reached them of the ship in which he sailed. But such was the force of the god-like example of the son, that his father, bowed down with the weight of seventy years, resolved on assuming the toils and duties of the son, and at the age of fourscore and twelve was still zealously

What is said of Mahew?

engaged. The happiest results followed these labors; but no one could essentially change the manners and habits of the tribes.

65. Within the century and a half during which the Cherokees have been acquainted with Europeans, they have learned the use of the plough and the axe, of herds and flocks, of the printing press and water mills; they have gained a mastery over the fields, and taught the streams to run for their benefit.

What  
improvements  
have the  
Chero-  
kees  
made?

66. Whence came the red man? was the frequent and anxious inquiry that followed the discovery of America.

What  
tradi-  
tions  
have the  
Indians  
respect-  
ing their  
origin?

Several tribes of the present southern Indians have traditions that they came from the *east* or through the Atlantic ocean. Raffinesque says it is important to distinguish the American nations of *eastern* origin from those of the northern, who, he says, were invaders from Tartary, and were as different in their manners as were the Romans and Vandals.

What  
said Dr.  
Mitchell?

67. Dr. Mitchell, after much research, concluded that Asia and America were peopled by similar races of men—that America as well as Asia had its Tartars on the north, and its Malays on the south.

In what  
do the  
Indians  
resemble  
the Mon-  
golian  
race?

The American and Mongolian races of men on the two sides of the Pacific have a near resemblance. The skulls are so nearly alike, that a careful observer could not distinguish one from the other.

68. The dwellers on the Aleutian isles resemble the inhabitants of each continent; and as the

adventurous Ledyard stood in Siberia, with men of the Mongolian race before him, and compared them with the Indians who had been his companions and school-mates at Dartmouth, he writes deliberately that, "universally and circumstantially, they resemble the aborigines of America." On the Connecticut and the Obi, he saw but one race.

What did Ledyard remark on this subject?

69. He that describes the Tungusians of Asia, seems also to describe the North American. That the Tschukchi of North-eastern Asia and the Esquimaux of America are of the same origin, is proved by the affinity of their languages, thus establishing a connection between the continents, previous to the discovery of America by Europeans.

The indigenous population of America offers no new obstacle to faith in the unity of the human race, agreeable to the plain statement of the Bible on that subject, which is a book entitled to the term *antiquity* paramount to all records now in existence.

What is said in regard to the bearing of this affinity on the unity of the human family?

70. A melancholy interest surrounds the fate of the red man. Once, sole lords of a rich and almost boundless country, they have been crowded farther and farther from their sunny hunting-grounds—farther from the noble rivers they so much loved, and the blue Atlantic, upon whose waves they thought many a good spirit dwelt.

What is remark'd in conclusion of the red man?

Some of them, overwhelmed with misfortunes, calmly submitted to their fate, and after the last struggle over the graves of their nation and kindred (a spot venerated by the red man), they departed never to return. Others fought long and

bravely, and chose rather to die within sight of the soil they once owned and upon the graves of their warriors. "By and by," says one who mourns their hapless fate, "they will have passed the Rocky Mountains, and in a few centuries scarcely a remnant will be seen, unless along the beach of the Pacific, the utmost boundary to which they can flee ; where, as they gaze upon the illimitable expanse, and turn back to the country of their ancestors, they will mingle with the resounding surge the death-song of departed nations."



---

H I S T O R Y

OF THE

UNITED STATES OF AMERICA.

---

---

DIVISION OF THE HISTORY,  
BY EPOCHS,  
IN THREE PARTS.

---

PART I.

COMPRISES THE EVENTS WHICH OCCURRED FROM THE  
DISCOVERY OF AMERICA BY COLUMBUS, TO THE DECLARA-  
TION OF INDEPENDENCE, IN 1776,  
EXTENDING 284 YEARS.

---

PART II.

COMPRISES THE EVENTS WHICH OCCURRED FROM THE  
DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE TO THE COMMENCEMENT  
OF THE FEDERAL GOVERNMENT, IN 1789,  
EXTENDING 13 YEARS.

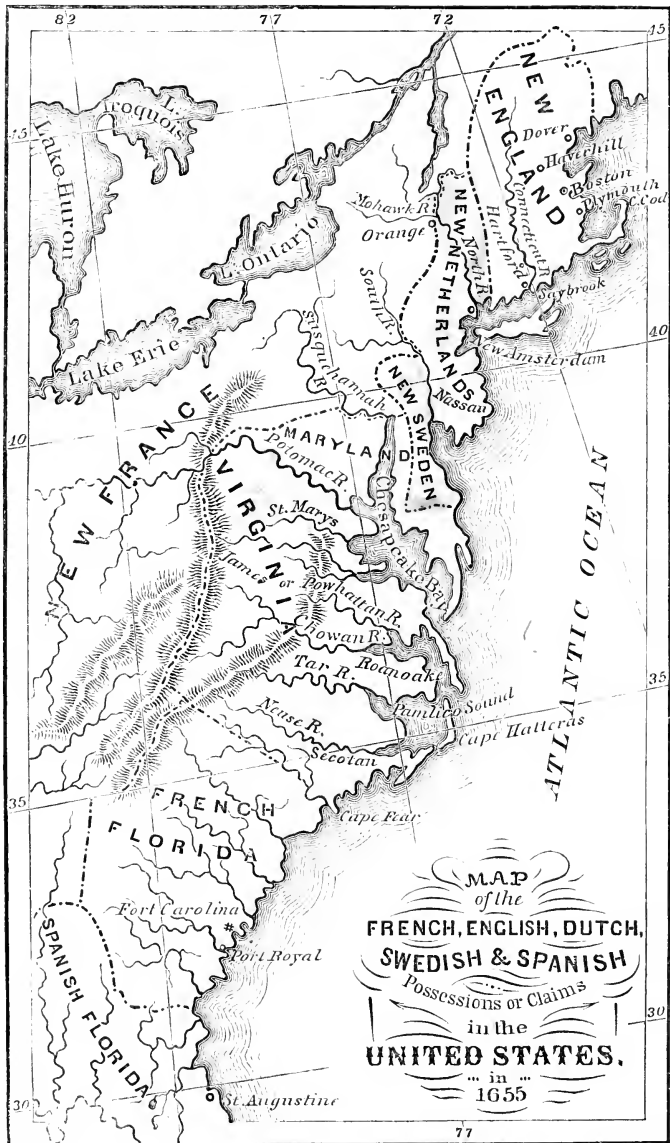
---

PART III.

COMPRISES THE EVENTS WHICH OCCURRED FROM THE  
COMMENCEMENT OF THE FEDERAL GOVERNMENT TO THE  
CLOSE OF THE HISTORY, IN 1848.  
EXTENDING 59 YEARS.

---







DEATH OF KING PHILIP.

## PART I.,

EXTENDING 284 YEARS—FROM THE DISCOVERY  
OF AMERICA IN 1492, TO THE DECLARA-  
TION OF INDEPENDENCE IN 1776.

## CHAPTER I.



HE voyages and discoveries of Christopher Columbus opened a new and brilliant era in the history of the world, and excited the admiration of all the nations of Europe. The monarchs, who had derided his undertaking, when he presented himself before

What spirit did the discovery of Columbus excite in Europe?

**1492** them, in poverty, to beg their assistance, now saw, in the newly-discovered wilds of the Western World, which the genius of Columbus had laid open to their view, a golden prize, a share of which they eagerly attempted to secure.

What did the different nations see in these discoveries?

2. Columbus was born at Genoa, in the year 1447, and early manifested a strong partiality for the different sciences, but more particularly for that of mathematics. Blessed with a vivid imagination, with ardent courage and great piety, of untiring energy and perseverance, he seemed raised up by Providence for the great work in which he engaged, and in which his success excelled even his wildest dreams, or the most gorgeous pictures of his glowing and vivid imagination.

When and where was Columbus born?

What is said of his early history?

3. The mariner's compass had already been discovered, and with this sure guide and trusty companion, the voyager boldly launched out into unknown seas. Columbus early embraced the idea, entertained by few, of the rotundity of the earth; hence he believed that the Indies and a vast amount of undiscovered land might be reached by sailing west. Strongly impressed with the truth of this idea, and knowing that such discoveries would be of incalculable benefit to the nation which made them, he explained his views successively to John II. of Portugal, Henry VII. of England, and to Ferdinand and Isabella, king and queen of Spain, beseeching them to aid him in the prosecution of his great enterprise; but they, ignorant and short-sighted, and believing him to be a wild adventurer, refused their assistance.

What idea had Columbus early embraced?

To whom did he explain his views?

With what success?

4. He had already wasted seven years of his

life in a fruitless struggle to obtain his wish. His suit had been twice rejected by the court of Spain, when he was summoned by Isabella to appear before her. This amiable queen interested herself so strongly in his behalf, that, finding it impossible to take the money from a treasury which had been impoverished by a long war, she offered to pledge her private jewels, to obtain the means to fit out the expedition and defray the expenses of the voyage.

Who at last became his friend?

What did Isabella offer to do?

5. The necessary funds were accordingly advanced, and on the 3d of August, 1492, Columbus, with three small vessels, set sail from Palos, on his voyage of discovery. After having encountered innumerable hardships, controlled his mutinous crew, and sailed thousands of miles over an unknown ocean, on the 11th of October, 1492, the joyful shout of "*land, land,*" rung from ship to ship, and soon after his feet trod the soil of the New World. Throwing himself upon his knees, and kissing the ground, he unfurled the banner of Spain, and taking possession of the soil in the name of his royal mistress, called it "San Salvador."

When did Columbus make his first voyage?

What is said of his first discovery?

6. He subsequently made three other voyages, during the years of 1493, 1498, and 1502, in which he discovered many of the West India and Caribbean isles, and a considerable portion of the shores of the Gulf of Mexico. On returning from his last voyage, finding Isabella, his patroness, dead, and his claims disregarded, he gradually sunk beneath his sufferings, and died on the 20th of May, 1506, in the 59th year of his age. His last

What of his other voyages?

What of his closing history?

**1497** words were, "Into thy hands, O Lord, I commend my spirit." His body was deposited in the convent of St. Francisco, but afterward was conveyed, with the remains of his son Diego, to Hispaniola, and here again disinterred and removed to Havana, in the island of Cuba, where it now reposes.

7. Near the close of his life he was misrepresented and persecuted. The honors due to him when living, have been freely awarded to him by succeeding generations. In his career, we perceive what perseverance and untiring energy, aided by a firmness of purpose, can accomplish. During his whole life he was surrounded with difficulties and dangers; yet, instead of shrinking before their magnitude, he pressed eagerly on, surmounted them all, and placed his name, surrounded with glory, upon the brightest page of history.

What was now thought of the enterprise of Columbus?

8. The magnificent achievement of Columbus, revealing the wonderful truth, of which the germs may have existed in the imagination of every thoughtful mariner, won the admiration which was due to an enterprise that seemed more divine than human, and kindled, in the breast of the emulous, a vehement desire to gain as signal renown in the same career of daring.

Give an account of the discoveries of the Cabots.

9. John Cabot, a Venetian merchant, residing at Bristol, England, with his son, Sebastian Cabot, both men of great learning, obtained a patent from Henry VII., "the most ancient American state paper of England," authorizing them to plant the flag of England upon any soil hitherto unseen by Christian people. They sailed from England in May, 1497, and in June discovered the American



continent in the latitude of fifty-six degrees, among the rude savages and the dismal cliffs of Labrador. This discovery was made fourteen months before Columbus, on his third voyage, came in sight of the main-land, and nearly two years before Amerigo Vespucci sailed west of the Canaries. Shortly after their return, another voyage was planned by Sebastian Cabot. With three hundred men, he sailed for Labrador, by the way of Iceland, which he reached in latitude  $58^{\circ}$ ; but owing to the severity of the weather, he turned his course south, and proceeded along the shores of the United States to the southern boundary of Maryland. 1501

10. In 1499, Alonzo de Ojeda, a companion of Columbus in his first expedition, sailing under the patronage of several Portugese merchants, discovered the continent at Paria. Americus Vesputius, a Florentine gentleman, accompanied him, and on his return published such an account of his voyage, as to lead to the belief that he was the first discoverer. The honor of giving a name to the continent, which should have been given to Columbus, was accordingly bestowed on him. What of the discoveries of Alonzo de Ojeda?

11. In the year 1501, a vessel, under the command of Caspar Contereal, was fitted out by the king of Portugal, and sent on a voyage of discovery to the New World. He proceeded to North America, and sailed along the coast for six or seven hundred miles, admiring the freshness of the verdure and the density of the stately forests. After having freighted his ship with more than fifty Indians, he returned to Portugal and sold them as slaves. Give an account of the voyage of Caspar Contereal.

1539

Of John  
Verazzani?

12. The French king, Francis I., in 1524, sent out John Verazzani, a Florentine, who reached the continent in the latitude of Wilmington, North Carolina. His crew were filled with admiration at the tawny color of the Indians, their ornaments, and garlands of feathers. As they proceeded farther north, the groves, redolent with fragrance, spread their perfumes far from the shore, and gave promise of the spices of the east. They anchored in the harbor of Newport for fifteen days, and from thence sailed along the coast of New England to Nova Scotia, when they returned to France.

What  
discoveries  
did  
James  
Cartier  
make?

13. In 1534, James Cartier, under a commission from the king of France, sailed to America, visited the island of Newfoundland, discovered the Gulf of St. Lawrence and the great river of Canada. On his second voyage, in the following year, he sailed up the river as far as the Isle of Orleans. Here, leaving his ship, he proceeded in an open boat until he reached an Indian village, near the site of which now stands the city of Montreal. At the Isle of Orleans he spent the winter, which was rendered frightful by the intense cold and the ravages of the scurvy. In 1540, Cartier again returned to Canada, for the purpose of planting a settlement, but was unsuccessful. The king of France afterward granted to De Monts the territory from New Jersey to Nova Scotia. In virtue of this grant, in 1604 he commenced the settlement of Port Royal, on the south-eastern side of the Bay of Fundy; and in 1608, his agent, Samuel Champlain, laid the foundation of Quebec.

To  
whom  
was this  
territory  
after-  
ward  
granted?

14. In 1512, Juan Ponce de Leon, a fellow voy-

ager of Columbus in his first expedition, sailed from Porto Rico with three ships, which he had fitted out at his own expense, and in about a month discovered Florida, and landed upon the coast a short distance above St. Augustine. In Spain he had heard a tale, which was there credited by those distinguished for virtue and intelligence, of a fountain which possessed virtues to renovate the life of those who should bathe in its streams, or give a perpetuity of youth to the happy man who should drink of its ever-flowing waters.

1520

What  
discov-  
ery did  
Ponce  
de Leon  
make?

15. This elixir of life was to flow from a perpetual fountain in the New World, in the midst of a country glittering with gems and gold. To discover this fountain, De Leon, whose cheeks had been furrowed by hard service, made this voyage ; but, although he sought for it long and earnestly, he was compelled to return without having drunk of its youth-renewing waters.

For what  
purpose  
did De  
Leon  
come to  
the New  
World?

16. In 1520, a company of seven, at the head of whom was Lucas Vasquez de Allyon, fitted out two slave ships from St. Domingo, in quest of laborers for their plantations. From the Bahama islands they passed to the coast of South Carolina, invited the natives to visit the ships, and when a number had crowded upon the decks, at a given signal they weighed anchor, and set sail for St. Domingo. Husbands were torn from their wives, and children from their parents ; but the crime was finally avenged, for one of the ships foundered at sea, and the guilty and guiltless perished together. Vasquez again sailed to the coast, with the royal permission to conquer the country ; but his men

For what  
object  
did De  
Allyon fit  
out two  
vessels?

What  
success  
had he?

**1539** were slaughtered by the enraged natives, and he returned to his home to die of wounded pride.

What of  
De Nar  
vaez?

What of  
De Soto?

17. Pamphilio de Narvaez attempted, at a later day, to conquer Florida; but of three hundred men who landed with him on the coast, only five returned. Ferdinand de Soto, the favorite companion of Pizarro in his conquest of Peru, believing Florida to be a land full of gold and diamonds, and unimintimidated at the fate of Narvaez, determined to make the conquest at his own expense. No sooner were his intentions known, than hundreds of the nobles of Castile flocked to his standard. Six hundred men, in the prime of life, in the glittering array of polished armor, with brilliant hopes, sailed with him for the land of promise.

What of  
the ad-  
ventures  
and fu-  
ture his-  
tory of  
De Soto?

18. In 1539, he landed in the Bay of Spiritu Santo, in Florida. Fearing that his men might wish to return, he sent his ships back to Cuba, and marched boldly forward into the wilderness. Gold was the object of his search, and for that he penetrated the country hundreds of miles, in every direction, entered Georgia and Carolina, crossed the Alleghaniès, fought a bloody battle with the Indians at Mobile, and another with the Chickasaws, in which all their clothes were destroyed, and they compelled to clothe themselves in the skins of beasts.

19. When, at length, they reached the Mississippi, the spirit of their leader was broken down by their long journey. Attacked by a malignant fever, and feeling himself to be near his end, he called his followers around him, bade them farewell, and died. His body was wrapped in his man-

tle, and, in the stillness of midnight, sunk in the middle of the stream. The discoverer of the Mississippi slept beneath its waters. His men, under the successor which he had appointed, wandered in the wilderness for a few months, and then embarking upon the river in boats, sailed down the stream until they reached the Gulf of Mexico, when they pursued their way along the coast until they arrived at a Spanish settlement in Mexico, nearly four years from the time they first commenced their wanderings in the wilderness. 1564

20. Jasper Coligni, the leader of the Huguenot party in France, determined to establish a settlement in America, to which the Protestants could flee from the persecutions which harassed them in their native land. He accordingly, in 1562, after having secured a commission from the king, sent out two ships under the command of John Ribault. Land was first discovered on the coast of Florida, in the latitude of St. Augustine. Sailing north, he entered a river, which he named Port Royal, and erected upon an island a fort, which he called Fort Charles. Leaving there a colony under Captain Albert, he returned to France. What is said of Coligni?

21. The people soon after mutinied, killed Captain Albert, and in a small ship set sail for France. In 1564, Laudonniere sailed for Florida with three ships. He landed at the river May, and built a fort, which, in honor of the French king, he named Carolina. In the following year, Ribault arrived a second time, and was made governor of the colony at Carolina. Spain had never relinquished her claim to this country, which, she maintained, be- What of Laudonniere and Ribault?

1564 longed to her by right of discovery. Philip II. determined to destroy the nest of heretics who had settled there, and plant in their place a Catholic colony.

What of  
Pedro  
Melen-  
dez?

22. He accordingly sent over Pedro Melendez, a man accustomed to scenes of blood and butchery. Landing upon the coast of Florida, south of the French settlement, he laid the foundation of the city of St. Augustine, the oldest town by forty years of any in the United States. The French had received intimation of the design of the Spaniards, and sent out an expedition by sea to attack them in their harbor; but meeting with a terrific storm, the ships were wrecked, and nearly all on board perished. Melendez, marching with his troops through the forest, attacked the French in their rear, and massacred the whole company excepting Laudonnier and a few others, who escaped to France.

23. Over their corpses he placed the inscription, "*We do not this as unto Frenchmen, but as unto heretics.*" Upon the ground, smoking with the blood of a peaceful colony, a cross was raised and the site of a church selected. Melendez then erected three forts for the defense of the country, and strongly garrisoned them with Spanish soldiers.

What of  
De Gor-  
ges?

24. The French king took no notice of this massacre; but the Chevalier de Gorges, a bold soldier, fitted out an expedition at his own expense, and sailed for Florida, determined to avenge the death of his countrymen. On his arrival, he made a descent upon the Spaniards, razed their forts, hung

two hundred of their garrison, writing over them, 1583  
*"I do not this to Spaniards, but unto traitors, robbers, and murderers!"* France disavowed the expedition, and relinquished all pretension to Florida.

25. In 1583, Sir Humphrey Gilbert, a soldier and a statesman, having received a grant from Queen Elizabeth of such lands as he might discover and occupy, sailed with five ships for the purpose of making a settlement in America. Landing at Newfoundland, he took possession of the country in the name of his sovereign, and then proceeded south; but meeting with a terrific storm, in which one of his ships was wrecked, he altered his course and sailed for England. His ship foundered at sea, and the brave Gilbert, with all his crew, perished.

What of  
Sir H.  
Gilbert?

26. Sir Walter Raleigh, warned by the sad fate of his step-brother, resolved on a settlement in a milder climate. Having obtained from Elizabeth a patent as ample as that conferred on Gilbert, in which he was constituted a lord proprietor with almost unlimited powers, he dispatched two vessels for the New World, under the command of Philip Amidas and Arthur Barlow. Arriving opposite the shores of Carolina, they entered the first convenient harbor, and took possession of the country for their queen. It was in the month of July, and the land seemed like the garden of Eden. The grapes were so abundant on every vine, that the surge of the ocean, as it rolled in upon the shore, dashed its spray upon the clusters. Elizabeth, as she heard their reports of the enchanted regions which they

What  
patent  
did Sir  
W. Ra-  
leigh ob-  
tain from  
Eliza-  
beth?

What is  
said of  
the coun-  
try dis-  
covered?

**1602** had discovered, as a memorial of her unmarried state, named them Virginia.

What expedition was fitted out in 1585?

27. Raleigh, encouraged by these favorable accounts, fitted out, in 1585, seven ships, to convey to his new possessions the emigrants who were eager to settle in so delightful a country. The command of the expedition was given to Sir Richard Greenville, and Ralph Lane accompanied it as governor of the colony. In a short time he reached Virginia, and having left the settlers on the island of Roanoke, returned to England. Lane was cruel and avaricious, and by his imprudence excited the animosity of the Indians. Fortunately, in the following year, when the colonists were reduced almost to starvation, Sir Francis Drake arrived from an expedition against the Spaniards, and carried them back to England. Shortly after their departure, a ship, sent out by Raleigh, arrived with supplies, but found no one to receive them.

What is said of Ralph Lane?

Who came to the aid of the colonists?

Under whom was a third colony sent out, in 1587?

28. In 1587, Raleigh sent out another colony, under the command of Captain White. Soon after their arrival, White returned to England to obtain supplies. Owing to a war in which England was embroiled with Spain, nearly three years elapsed before he could return, and then the colony was completely destroyed, no one being left to tell its fate. Raleigh, discouraged at these repeated failures of his plans, made no farther attempt to colonize the country, which for many years remained in the quiet possession of the natives.

What is said of its fate?

What is said of the voyage of Gosnold?

29. In 1602, Bartholomew Gosnold sailed for America, and reached the coast of Massachusetts in May. Proceeding south, he discovered Cape



Cod, entered Buzzard's Bay, and, after trading a while with the Indians, returned home. In 1603 and 1605, two voyages were made, one by Martin Pring, and the other by George Weymouth, in which many rivers and bays on the coast of Maine and Massachusetts were discovered.

1603

What  
other  
voyages  
were  
made?

30. The accounts of these navigators re-awakened the spirit of emigration which had so long remained dormant, and led to an extensive scheme of colonization. Through the influence of Mr. Richard Hackluyt, an association of influential gentlemen was formed for the purpose of sending colonies to America. Virginia, at that time, extended from the southern boundary of North Carolina to the northern boundary of Maine.

31. Two companies were formed ; one, composed of noblemen and gentlemen in and about London, was called the London company ; the second, of knights and gentlemen in the west, called the Plymouth company. The former had an exclusive right to occupy the regions from thirty-four to thirty-eight degrees of north latitude ; the latter had an exclusive right to the country between forty-one and forty-five degrees. The intermediate district from thirty-eight to forty-one degrees was open to both companies.

What  
two  
compa-  
nies  
were  
formed,  
and what  
territory  
was  
granted  
to each?

32. The superintendence of each district was confided to a council in England, appointed by the king. The local administration of each colony was entrusted to a council residing within its limits, also appointed by the king, and to act in conformity with his instructions. Thus to the corporation nothing was given but a territory, with the right

How  
were the  
districts  
to be  
gov-  
erned?

**1606** of peopling and defending it, while to the monarch was reserved absolute legislative authority, with the control of all appointments.

## CHAPTER II.

### VIRGINIA.

1. ONE hundred and nine years had rolled away since the discovery of the American continent by Cabot, sixty-one years from the settlement of Florida, and yet no permanent colony had been established in Virginia. Repeated attempts had been made, but through want of proper foresight they had proved unsuccessful. In 1606 the London Company, after having matured a plan of settlement, and formed the laws which were to govern it, sent out to South Virginia three ships and 105 men, under the command of Newport.

What was the state of Virginia 109 years after Cabot discovered America?

What expedition was sent out by the London Company, in 1606?

What is said of Captain John Smith?

What route was pursued by Newport, and when did he reach the continent?

2. The names and instructions of the council were handed to Newport in a sealed box, with orders not to open it until twenty-four hours after his arrival in America. During the voyage the genius and energy of Capt. John Smith excited jealousy, and under the frivolous charge of wishing to murder the council and proclaim himself king of Virginia, he was placed in confinement. Newport sailed by the way of the West India islands, intending to land at Roanoke; but a vio-

lent storm drove him north into the Chesapeake bay. Discovering a noble river, they named it James, after their monarch. 1607

3. The rich country and the flowery shrubs which bordered the shore invited them to enter. They sailed up the stream about fifty miles, encountering the hostility of but one small tribe, and selected the peninsula of Jamestown for the site of the colony. Wingfield was elected President of the council; but Smith, although released from confinement, was excluded from his seat in their body, notwithstanding he had been duly appointed by the Company. The attempt at his trial was finally abandoned, and he restored to his station. Although surrounded by Indians, from whom they could expect but little assistance, the colony, which was composed principally of indolent gentlemen, paid no attention to the cultivation of the soil, so that famine soon stared them in the face.

What river did he discover, and what position did he select for a settlement?

What is said of Wingfield and Smith?

What of the character of the emigrants?

4. Newport sailed for England in June, and in a few weeks after his departure scarcely ten of the settlers were able to walk. They fell victims to diseases occasioned by the want of food, the heat of the climate, and the decay of luxuriant vegetation. Often four or five died in a night, and in the morning their bodies were trailed out of the cabin, like dogs, to be buried. Such was the mortality that by autumn fifty men had perished. Gosnold, the projector of the settlement, was among the number.

What of the sufferings of the colony after the departure of Newport?

5. Disunion completed the work of misery. Wingfield, the avaricious President, was deposed from office for dishonesty in appropriating the pub-

What of the treachery of Wingfield?

**1607**

Who  
now  
managed  
the af-  
fairs of  
the colo-  
ny?

lic stores to his own use, and Ratcliffe appointed in his place; but the latter, ignorant and indolent, was glad to leave the management of affairs to Smith, whose cheerful courage alone diffused light amid the general gloom.

What is  
said of  
the ener-  
gy and  
early life  
of Smith?

6. His whole life had been spent in the service of humanity. The trials through which he had passed were evidently intended to fit him for the great part he was to play in the settlement of Virginia. He had visited Egypt, Italy and France, and fought in many battles against the Turks. At length taken prisoner and sent to Constantinople as a slave, he was relieved by a Turkish lady and finally regained his liberty. Returning to England, he shared in the general enthusiasm of planting States in America, and now the infant commonwealth of Virginia depended for its existence upon his firmness. He inspired the natives with awe, and quelled the spirit of anarchy and rebellion among the emigrants.

How was  
he taken  
prisoner  
by the  
Indians?

7. He was accustomed to make frequent excursions into the interior to obtain provisions and explore the country. In one of these expeditions, after having ascended the Chickahominy river nearly to its source, he was attacked by a party of Indians and all of his companions killed. Seizing an Indian youth he held him as a shield between his body and the enemy and fled; but being unacquainted with the country, he sunk to his neck in a swamp and was taken prisoner.

How did  
he pre-  
serve his  
life?

8. Smith now preserved his life by his calmness and self-possession. Displaying a pocket compass he amused the savages by an explanation of its

powers, and increased their admiration of his genius by imparting to them some conception of the form of the earth and the nature of the planetary system. Their wonder, however, soon seemed to abate, and he was led in triumph to Powhattan, their king. Powhattan and his council doomed him to death, as a man whose genius and courage were dangerous to the Indians. He was accordingly led to execution, but just as Powhattan had raised his club to perform its murderous work, Pocahontas, his youthful daughter, rushed through the crowd and with a shriek threw herself upon the prostrate form of Smith, at the same time casting an imploring look toward her father, with eyes swimming with tears besought his life. The heart of the savage king was touched with pity, and dropping the war-club he raised his daughter and the captive from the ground. Smith was now looked upon as a friend, and succeeded in establishing a peaceful intercourse between the English and the tribes of Powhattan. Thus his captivity, on the whole, was a benefit to the colony.

9. Returning to Jamestown he found the colony in a state of great confusion and distress. Only forty of the emigrants were alive, and the stronger part of these had seized the pinnacle to make their escape. This third attempt at desertion he repressed at the hazard of his life. Newport soon arrived with supplies and one hundred and twenty emigrants; but, unhappily, most of them were vagabond gentlemen and goldsmiths, who gave a wrong direction to the industry of the colony. Believing they had found grains of gold in a glitter-

1608

To whom did they carry him, and what was the decision of his fate?

Under what circumstances was his life preserved?

How was his captivity a benefit to the whites?

In what condition did he find the colony on his return?

What is said of the arrival of Newport and the character of the emigrants who came with him?

1609

To what did they devote their time, and with what result?

How far did Smith afterward explore the coast?

What is said of his administration?

What was the condition of the colony two years from its settlement?

What is said of the new charter obtained by the London Company?

What is said of the expedition sent out?

ing sand which abounded near Jamestown, a ship was loaded with it and sent to England, where it was found to be no better than common earth. Finding the people too mad to pursue any useful object, and disgusted at the follies which he had vainly opposed, Smith set off to explore the country, and sailed in an open boat three thousand miles along the coast, discovering many beautiful bays and rivers: thus adding greatly to the geographical knowledge of the country.

10. Three days after his return he was made President of the council. Under his energetic administration order and industry began to prevail, when Newport arrived with a second supply and seventy emigrants. They considered themselves above labor, but Smith insisted that if they would not work they should not eat, so that they were soon willing to drop the gentleman and labor like the rest. Jamestown now began to assume the appearance of a regular place of abode; yet at the expiration of two years not more than thirty or forty acres of land had been cultivated, and the colonists were often compelled to solicit food from the Indians to preserve themselves from starvation.

11. In 1609 the London Company obtained a new charter, enlarging their territory and increasing their privileges. The council in England and the governor, before appointed by the king, were to be chosen by the stockholders, and the governor to reside in Virginia. Lord Delaware was appointed governor for life. Soon after, nine ships, carrying five hundred emigrants and certain officers appointed to supersede the existing government, were sent

out from England. A violent storm arising, the ship in which these officers sailed was wrecked on the island of Bermuda. A small ketch perished, and seven ships only arrived in Virginia. 16:0

12. The new emigrants were most of them rakes and libertines, men more fitted to corrupt than to found a commonwealth. Declaring that the old charter was abrogated, and *that until the arrival of the governor*, no one in the colony had any authority from the new grant, anarchy seemed at hand. But Smith insisted that his office did not expire until the arrival of the new governor, resolutely maintained his authority until, disabled by an accidental discharge of gunpowder, he delegated his authority to Percy and embarked for England.

What was the character of the new emigrants, and what course did Smith pursue?

What induced his return to England?

13. The colonists, no longer controlled by an acknowledged authority, were soon abandoned to idleness. The Indians learning that the only man whom they dreaded had left the colony, not only refused to supply them with food, but murdered a large number, and laid their plans to starve and destroy the whole company. So great was the famine, that the settlers devoured the skins of their horses and the bodies of the Indians whom they had killed. Smith, at his departure, had left more than four hundred and ninety persons in the colony; in six months the number was reduced to sixty, and these were so dejected that if relief had not arrived, in ten days all must have perished.

What took place after his departure?

What is said of the famine?

14. At this frightful period, Sir 'Thomas Gates arrived with the passengers who had been wrecked upon the coast of Bermuda. All immediately determined to sail for Newfoundland. They accord-

What was their determination on the arrival of Gates?

**1612** ingly embarked on board of the newly-arrived ships and dropped down the stream with the tide; but the next morning they fell in near the mouth of the river with the long-boat of Lord Delaware, who had arrived on the coast with emigrants and supplies. The fugitives immediately returned to Jamestown.

What prevented their carrying their plans into execution?

What of the administration of Lord Delaware?

15. The severe trials through which they had passed had learned them their dependence upon God, and they now recommenced their colony with appropriate religious services, acknowledging the hand of Providence so signally displayed in saving them from famine and utter extinction. Under the mild administration of Lord Delaware order and contentment were restored, and the colony soon assumed the appearance of affluence and security. In a short time his health making it necessary for him to return to England he was succeeded by Sir Thomas Dale.

What is said of the administration of Gates?

16. In the same year Sir Thomas Gates was appointed governor and sailed for Virginia with six ships and three hundred emigrants. On his arrival he assumed the government of the colony, which then numbered seven hundred men.

Hitherto all property had been held in common, but now a new plan was adopted, and each man had a few acres assigned to him as his own. This produced a beneficial change, for the love of possession stimulated each one to improve his own to the utmost.

What change took place in the charter in 1612?

17. In 1612 another change in the charter of the Virginia Company took place, granting to them the Bermudas and all islands within three hundred



leagues of the Virginia shore, and giving the control of the colony to the members of the company. 1619  
 These men appointed the officers, and made the laws—the settlers being excluded, as heretofore, from any influence in the government.

18. In the following year the hostility of the Indian tribes was changed into friendship by the marriage of Pocahontas to a young Englishman, by the name of John Rolfe. With the approbation of her father and friends, Opachisco, her uncle, gave the bride away in the little church at Jamestown, and she stammered before the altar her marriage vows according to the rites of the English service. In 1616 she sailed with her husband for England, and was received at court with the distinction due to an American princess. As she was preparing to return to America she fell a victim to the English climate, at the age of twenty-two—saved, as if by the hand of mercy, from beholding the extermination of the tribes from which she sprung, leaving a spotless name, and dwelling in memory under the form of perpetual youth.

How were the hostilities of the Indians changed into friendship?

What of the future history of Pocahontas?

19. In 1619, under the administration of Yearly, the first colonial assembly ever held in Virginia met at Jamestown. The *house of burgesses*, as it was called, could debate and enact laws, but they could not be of force till they were ratified by the company in England. Nearly thirteen years had now passed away since the settlement had been begun. More than eighty thousand pounds had been expended by the company, yet the colony contained only six hundred persons. In 1620, however, through the influence of Sir Edward Sandys,

What occurred under the administration of Yearly?

What was the condition of the colony thirteen years from its formation?

**1621** twelve hundred and sixty-one emigrants came out.

How many settlers came out in 1620?

What plan was adopted to furnish them with wives?

What was the result?

What is said of the introduction of negro slavery?

**1621.** What privileges did the Constitution brought over by Wyatt secure?

20. Most of these settlers were without families. To strengthen their attachment to the land of their adoption, the company prevailed upon ninety young women to embark for the colony, where they were assured of a welcome. On their arrival they had no difficulty in finding agreeable partners. The husbands paid the expenses of emigration, the price of a wife being about one hundred and fifty pounds of tobacco. Domestic ties were formed; new emigrants constantly arrived, and within three years, three thousand five hundred persons found their way to Virginia, which was a refuge even for Puritans.

21. In 1620 a Dutch man-of-war entered James river and landed twenty negroes for sale. This is the sad epoch of the introduction of negro slavery in the English colonies. The system was fastened on the rising institutions of America, not by the consent of the corporation, nor the desire of the emigrants; but, as it was introduced by the mercantile avarice of a foreign nation, so it was subsequently riveted by the policy of England, without regard to the interest or wishes of the colony. The number of slaves increased very slowly in Virginia, so that thirty years after their first importation there was not more than one slave to fifty whites.

22. In 1621 Sir Ralph Wyatt arrived as the successor of Yeardly. He brought with him a written constitution, securing many valuable privileges to the colonists, and among them the trial by jury and local courts founded on English law. The

governor and assembly chosen by the people were to exercise full legislative authority, but no law would be valid unless ratified by the company in England. With singular justice it was also ordained, that no order of the court in London should bind the colony unless ratified by the general assembly.

22. Under these equitable laws and the mild administration of Wyatt, the colony continued in the full tide of prosperity ; but a storm was gathering which was soon to sweep over their settlements in fury, changing their smiling villages to heaps of burning ruins. Powhattan, the father of Pocahontas, remained, after the marriage of his daughter, the firm friend of the English. In 1618 he died, and his younger brother, who was now the heir to his influence, viewed with a jealous eye the gradual encroachments of the English, and determined to destroy them. By his art and eloquence he united all the neighboring tribes in his horrible design.

What is said of the colony under these regulations?

What event followed the death of Powhattan?

Through whose influence were hostilities brought about?

24. The Indians, up to the very hour of the massacre, with the cunning and treachery peculiar to that race, professed a warm friendship for the whites. They entered their houses, sat at their tables, and brought them presents of game and fish. Precisely at mid-day, on a given signal, the terrible war-whoop rang through their villages, and the work of blood commenced. Neither the gray hairs of old age, weeping mothers, nor smiling childhood, could soften the heart of their savage foe, as, with face distorted with passion, and eyes blazing with fury, they crashed with their tomahawks and

What is said of the massacre?

**1624** huge war-clubs through the skulls of their victims. All upon whom they could lay their hands were murdered. In one hour three hundred and forty-seven persons were cut off.

How was the entire destruction of the whites prevented?

25. None would have been saved had not a domesticated Indian, residing in one of the villages, revealed the plot to his master, whom he had been requested to murder. Information was immediately given to some of the nearest settlements, just in time to save them from the calamity which fell upon others. Had not the watchful care of Providence warned the few who were saved through this faithful Indian, the sun of that colony would have set in blood, not one being left to tell the tale.

What followed these hostilities?

How many were living in the colony in 1624?

26. The English, roused to vengeance at this treachery of the Indians, commenced against them a war of extermination. The savages were driven back into the wilderness by their victorious foes; but the number of whites gradually melted away by war and famine, until in 1624 of nine thousand persons who had been sent from England but eighteen hundred existed in the colony.

What step did King James take to obtain the charter of Virginia?

27. King James declared that these continued misfortunes were owing to the bad government of the colony, and sent out three commissioners to Virginia to inquire into the state of the plantation; but, determined to have the government in his own hands, before they returned a judicial trial was instituted, which resulted in the canceling of the charter. Virginia was changed into a royal province and a governor appointed by the king.

28. In 1625 Charles I. ascended the throne of England. One of his first Virginia measures was

to announce his fixed resolution of becoming, through his agents, the sole factor of the planters; but this resolution was never carried into effect. In 1628 Sir John Harvey was appointed governor. From the time of his first appearance in America, in 1623, he had been looked upon with aversion by the colonists. They beheld in him a tyrant, who preferred the interests of himself and patrons to the welfare and quiet of the colony.

29. The colonists at length, indignant at his repeated acts of injustice, deposed him from office and sent him to England for trial; but Charles refused an audience to his accusers, and sent him back to Virginia with a new commission as governor. In 1639, however, he was suspended by the appointment of Sir Francis Wyatt, who, at the expiration of two years, was succeeded by Sir William Berkeley. Immediately after his arrival, he convened the colonial assembly. Religion was promoted, the law of land titles adjusted, and peace with the Indians confirmed.

30. Nearly up to this time the Puritans had enjoyed religious liberty in Virginia, and had been invited to emigrate and settle in the country. But in 1643 they began to harbor the same bitter feelings toward other religious sects which had long existed among the Puritans in New England. A law was accordingly passed forbidding any minister to teach or preach, except in conformity to the Episcopal church, and non-conformists were banished from the colony.

31. In 1644 the Powhattan tribes again fell upon the settlement, and before they were driven back

1625

1625.  
What was the first Virginia measure of Chas. I.?

1628.  
What is said of Governor Harvey?

For what purpose was he sent to England, and what was the result?

1642.

Who succeeded Harvey?

What of the administration of Berkeley?

What sectarian law was passed in 1643?

1646

1644.  
What is  
said of  
the war  
with the  
Powhat-  
tan tribes  
in 1644?

three hundred persons were killed. A war upon them was commenced; Opechancanough, their aged chief, was made prisoner, and died in miserable captivity of wounds inflicted by a brutal soldier. A border-warfare continued until in 1646 the Indians were reduced to submission.

What is  
said of  
the civil  
war in  
England?

32. In England a party had been a long time forming in opposition to the royal government. Civil war at length commenced, the throne was overturned and Charles I. beheaded. Cromwell, under the title of protector, swayed the sceptre of the commonwealth. During the nine years of the protectorship, but little attention was paid to Virginia. Her governors were chosen by herself, and in all but a name she was an independent government. Firm in her loyalty to the king, she was the last to acknowledge the authority of Cromwell, and only did so when a fleet, sent out by parliament to reduce her to submission, appeared off the coast.

What  
was the  
condition  
of Vir-  
ginia  
during  
the Com-  
mon-  
wealth?

33. Their governor, Berkeley, retired to private life, where he remained until just before the Restoration, when he was again elected governor, and was the first to proclaim Charles II. as their lawful sovereign.

What is  
said of  
the  
hopes of  
the colony  
on the  
Restoration?

How  
were  
they dis-  
appointed?

1673.  
To  
whom  
was  
their ter-  
ritory  
granted?

Great was the rejoicing throughout the colony, on the restoration of monarchy in England. They had hoped that the king, out of gratitude for their adherence to his cause, would heap favors on them; but in this they were disappointed, for with characteristic ingratitude, he neglected their interests and imposed additional restrictions upon their commerce. He also granted to Lord Culpepper and Earl Arlington, two royal favor-

ites, the whole territory of Virginia, for the space **1673** of thirty-one years.

34. Outraged and indignant at the repeated injuries which they had received from the hands of those of whom they had a right to expect only kindness, they soon began to manifest their feelings in murmurs of discontent, when gathered together in the gloom of the forest to talk of their hardships. Conscious of their wrongs, half conscious of the rightful remedy, nothing was wanting but an excuse for appearing in arms.

What were the feelings of the colonists respecting these injuries?

35. This soon offered itself; for the Seneca Indians had driven the Susquehannahs from the head of the Chesapeake, and Maryland was involved in war with the latter tribe and their confederates. Murders had been committed on the soil of Virginia, and when six of the hostile chieftains presented themselves to treat for a reconciliation, in the blind fury of the moment they were slain. A border-warfare now commenced, in which the Indians laid waste the plantations and butchered the inhabitants with savage cruelty.

What excuse was soon offered for their appearing in arms?

1675.

36. The avaricious Berkeley, fearing to commence direct hostilities against the Indians, lest it should interfere with his lucrative beaver trade, winked at their atrocities and delayed taking measures to protect the frontier. The people chose Nathaniel Bacon for their leader, and demanded of the governor leave to rise and protect themselves.

What is said of the appointment of Bacon as leader, and the vacillating conduct of Berkeley?

37. Berkeley, jealous of Bacon's popularity, refused his consent; but his authority now was but little revered. In a short time five hundred men

**1676** were under arms, and Bacon, with common voice, proclaimed leader of their enterprise. Hardly had Bacon commenced his march against the Indians, before Berkeley proclaimed him and all his followers rebels, and sent out troops to pursue them; but the troops were compelled to return to check a new insurrection, and he continued his expedition.

What of  
the dis-  
solution  
of the old  
assem-  
bly?

38. The great mass of the people were now thoroughly excited, and demanded the dissolution of the old assembly. Berkeley, finding it impossible to stem the current of popular opinion, was compelled to yield. The old assembly, rendered odious by its tyranny, was dissolved, a new assembly was elected, and among the representatives was Bacon, who had just returned in triumph from his Indian warfare.

What of  
the con-  
duct of  
Berkeley  
on the  
return of  
Bacon?

39. Bacon was appointed commander-in-chief; but Berkeley refused to sign his commission until, shortly after, he entered Jamestown at the head of five hundred men, when the governor, at the urgent solicitation of the council, yielded, and issued the commission. Bacon and his troops then commenced their march against the Indians.

No sooner had they gone, than the proud and vacillating governor repaired to Gloucester county, the most loyal in Virginia, summoned a convention of the inhabitants, and against their advice proclaimed him a traitor.

What  
were the  
events of  
the civil  
war that  
followed?

40. Bacon, enraged at this conduct, returned with his forces to Jamestown. The governor and council fled, and he at once found himself possessed of supreme power. He immediately called together an assembly, who bound themselves to



support his authority. A civil war ensued, which for a long time raged, with all its peculiar horrors, in Virginia. Jamestown was burned, and the country laid waste. At length Bacon died of a fever, and his followers, without a leader, were compelled to yield. 1676

41. Berkeley, with all the meanness and malignity of a tyrant and a coward, now that his enemies were in his power, determined to take fearful vengeance. The property of many was confiscated, and twenty-two executed. His revenge would not have stayed even here, had not his council urged him to stop the work of blood. What of the cruelty of Berkeley?

42. His conduct was strongly condemned in England. The kind-hearted Charles II. with truth said, "The old fool has taken away more lives in that naked country, than I for the murder of my father." Berkeley went to England, and soon died, leaving his name to general execration. In 1684, the grant which was made to Arlington and Culpepper was recalled, and Virginia again became a royal province. When was the royal government restored?

From this time the colony gradually advanced in population and prosperity; but until the breaking out of the French and Indian war, but few incidents of historical interest occurred within her territory. What is said of the remaining history of Virginia?

1620

## CHAPTER III.

## MASSACHUSETTS.

What is  
said of  
the disso-  
lution of  
the Ply-  
mouth  
Compa-  
ny?

1. MENTION has already been made of the earlier discoveries of Massachusetts, and the formation of the Plymouth Company. This company was unsuccessful in forming a colony here, and in 1620 they were superseded by the Council of Plymouth, to whom was granted all the territory between the 40th and 48th degree of north latitude, extending from the Atlantic to the Pacific.

What is  
said of  
the first  
settlers  
of Mas-  
sachu-  
setts?

2. The first settlers of Massachusetts were a band of Puritans, who, exposed to a fierce persecution in their native land, on account of certain religious views, and of refusing to comply with the tyrannical exactions of a bigoted king and corrupt government, chose rather a home in the wilderness, where they could at least worship God according to the dictates of their own consciences, than to give up principles which they believed were founded on the "word of God."

Describe  
their  
leaving  
England  
and their  
removal  
to Hol-  
land.

3. Their eyes were first turned toward Holland, but when they attempted to embark many of them were seized and thrown in prison, by order of a king who could not endure that his prey should thus easily escape from his hands. At length, in 1608, they arrived in Amsterdam, and from thence proceeded to Leyden, where they formed a distinct society, under the care of their pastor, Rev. John Robinson.

4. By their piety and exemplary deportment, they acquired the respect and love of the magistrates and citizens, and but for the fear of offending King James, they would have met with public favor. After having resided eleven years in Leyden, they determined to remove. The language and manners of the Dutch were disagreeable to them ; they were suffering from poverty ; and their children, sharing their parents' burdens, bowed under the weight, and became decrepid in early youth. Conscious of their abilities to act a higher part in the great drama of humanity, they determined to emigrate to the New World.

What induced them to leave Holland ?

5. Mr. John Carver was accordingly sent to England to apply to the London Company for a grant of land in America, and to petition the king for liberty of religion, to be conferred under his broad seal. The grant was obtained, but the most they could derive from the king was an informal promise of neglect. Having obtained two small vessels, the Speedwell, of sixty tons, and the Mayflower, of one hundred and eighty tons, Brewster, with as many as could find room, prepared to embark. Robinson, with a large part of the congregation, remained behind.

What did they obtain from the London Company, and what from the king ?

In what vessels did they sail ?

6. The parting scene was very affecting. They all knelt upon the ground and mingled their voices together in prayer, then arose, and with the tears streaming down their cheeks, waved to each other an adieu, which they could not speak. They immediately proceeded to Southampton, in England, and after tarrying there for a fortnight, set sail for America. They had proceeded but a short dis-

Describe the parting scene and the voyage.

**1620** tance on their voyage, when the Speedwell, owing to the weakness of the vessel, was obliged to return, leaving the Mayflower to continue its course alone.

7. Look for a moment upon that little vessel, careering upon the rough waves of the ocean, and tossing like a feather on its tempestuous bosom; behold a germ which shall yet grow to a mighty tree—a spark, which, at some future day, will kindle a beacon on Bunker Hill, that will shine a pillar of fire to the world. Witness the guiding power of an overruling Providence for those self-denying men, and others who preceded and followed them to different colonies, forging, unconsciously perhaps, the first link of that great chain civil and religious freedom, which is yet to surround the earth.

What is said of an overruling Providence?

8. They expected to land near the Hudson, but were carried so far north that their first sight of land was the bleak shore of Cape Cod. They now drew up a civil compact, signed by the whole body of men, forty-one in number, in which they bound themselves to be obedient to all the ordinances made by the body. John Carver was appointed governor, and Miles Standish captain.

Where did they first discover land?

What compact did they sign, and what officers did they choose before landing?

9. They sailed along the inner coast of the bay, landing at different times to explore the country. At one place they found a number of Indian graves, and a quantity of Indian corn buried in the ground. The weather was so intensely cold that the water froze upon their clothes and made them like coats of ice. On the third morning, they found themselves at the entrance of Plymouth harbor. Here

What did they find in landing at different times?

What is said of the weather?

they determined to land and make their settle- 1620  
ment.

10. The next day was the Sabbath. They rested and kept it holy; and there, for the first time, on those ice-bound shores, were heard the voice of prayer and the song of praise, ascending to heaven. On the following day, the 21st of December, they landed on Plymouth rock, naming it from the last place they left in England. A dreary prospect was before them; on one side lay a vast wilderness covered with a snowy mantle, on the other, rolled the broad Atlantic, separating them from their kindred and their native land; yet their trust in God remained unshaken, for they knew that the same mighty power which watched over them on the stormy deep could still protect them.

How did they spend the Sabbath?

When and where did they land and commence their settlement?

What was the prospect before them?

In whom did they trust?

11. The freezing weather to which they had been exposed sowed the seeds of consumption and inflammatory colds, and the bitterness of mortal disease was their welcome to these inhospitable shores. Their buildings went up slowly, for it was a difficult matter to erect them when one-half of their number was wasting away with consumption and fever. Week after week, during the whole of that dreary winter, they carried out one after another of their friends to their long homes; and ere spring again smiled upon the earth, more than one-half their number, including the governor and his wife, lay buried on the shore.

What is said of their suffering during the first winter?

12. Until they could cultivate their ground and gather in their crops, they suffered much from want of food. At one time, they were reduced to a pint of corn, which, being divided, gave only five ker-

**1620** nels to each individual. The living were hardly able to take care of the sick and bury the dead. Yet, during all this season of suffering, the cheerful confidence of the pilgrims in the mercies of Providence remained unshaken. After their first desolating sickness, and the gathering in of their crops, prosperity seemed to attend them.

How were their afflictions borne by the settlers?

What contrast do we draw between the settlers of Massachusetts and Virginia?

13. And here we cannot refrain from pausing to draw a contrast between the pilgrims and the settlers of Virginia. The latter were made up of a class of wild adventurers, destitute of piety and thirsting for gold. The former came, that they might worship God in peace; and on first pressing the soil of the New World, their knees were bent in humble supplication and thanksgiving to their Maker. The foundations of their settlement were laid in prayer, and after their first severe trials had passed away, the smiles of that Being in whom they had trusted attended them. The latter, rent by internal dissensions, and their number constantly thinned by famine and the knife of the Indian, planted their colony in suffering and blood.

14. When the pilgrims landed there were traces of a previous population, but no living inhabitants. A fearful disease had, a short time before, swept them all away or driven them farther back into the wilderness. Indians from abroad were occasionally discovered hovering around the settlement, but disappearing when pursued.

Give an account of the first Indian visit to the settlement?

15. At length, after several months, Samaset, an Indian who had learned a little English of the fishermen at Penobscot, boldly entered the town, exclaiming—"Welcome, Englishmen." With the aid

of this Indian they entered into a treaty of peace <sup>1621</sup> with Massasoit, the great Sachem of the Wampanoags, in which they promised to abstain from mutual injuries, and to aid each other when attacked unjustly. This treaty remained unbroken for more than half a century.

What treaty was formed with Massasoit?

16. Canonicus, the chief of the Narragansetts, disliking this intimacy between the English and Massasoit, sent to Plymouth a bunch of arrows wrapped in a rattlesnake's skin, as a token of his hostility. The governor, after having filled the skin with powder and ball, returned it; the courage of the Indian quailed, and he desired to be at peace with a race whose weapons of war were so terrible.

How was the hostility of Canonicus subdued?

17. In 1628 a settlement was made at Salem by a company under the charge of John Endicott. In the following spring he was joined by Mr. White, a non-conformist minister of Devonshire, and about one hundred emigrants. Through the influence of Lord Dorchester and the Earl of Warwick they obtained a charter from Charles I., and were constituted a body politic under the name of the "Governor and Company of the Massachusetts Bay Colony."

What is said of the formation of the Massachusetts Bay Colony?

1629.

18. The new colonists immediately began the formation of their church. They elected a pastor, teacher, and elder; disencumbered their public worship of superfluous ceremony, and reduced it to the lowest standard of Calvinistic simplicity. Forgetting, in their religious zeal, that others had a right to the enjoyment of the same Christian liberty as themselves, those who refused to worship according

What were the first steps taken by the colonists?

What is said of their religious zeal?

**1631** to the ritual of their church were expelled from the colony.

19. In the mean time, men of greater opulence and higher rank, weary of the religious persecution which harassed them in England, determined to join the Massachusetts Bay Colony. Through their influence, the government of the colony was transferred from the company to America, and vested in members who should reside in the country. John Winthrop was appointed governor, and Thomas Dudley deputy governor. In the course of the following year, fifteen hundred persons sailed for Massachusetts; but many of them, dissatisfied with Salem, settled at Boston, Charlestown, Roxbury, Dorchester, &c.

20. In 1631 a law was passed at Charlestown providing for the election of the officers of government by freemen alone, but recognizing none as freemen excepting church members. In 1634 the settlements had become so scattered that it was found extremely inconvenient for all the freemen to assemble and transact the necessary public business. The authority granted by the charter to the whole body of freemen, was accordingly delegated to twenty-four representatives.

21. Notwithstanding the Puritans had suffered so much for opinion's sake, yet the same religious intolerance prevailed among them as in the land they had left. Roger Williams, a minister who had come over from England to escape persecution, boldly maintained that toleration ought to be granted to all sects; that oaths of allegiance to the king and magistrates were wrong; and that the colonial

How was the Government of the colony transferred to America?

Who was appointed Governor?

How many came over the following year, and where did they settle?

What law was passed in 1631.

1634.

When commenced a representative form of government?

What is said of the opinions and persecution of Roger Williams?



charter was founded in injustice. For maintaining these doctrines, he was tried and banished from the colony. He shortly settled at Providence, and became the founder of Rhode Island.

1634

1635.

22. During the following year three thousand new emigrants arrived; among the number were Henry Vane and Hugh Peters. Vane was a young man from one of the first families in England, and possessed of brilliant talents and great piety; affable and winning in his manners and conversation, he so gained the affection of the colonists, that in 1636 he was appointed governor. But his popularity was of short duration; for during his administration a religious controversy arose, which ended in destroying his influence in a great measure in the colony.

How many came over the ensuing year, and what prominent men among the number?

What is said of Vane?

23. Mrs. Hutchinson, a woman of considerable talent and eloquence, advanced certain doctrines which were considered by many as mystical and full of heresy. She opposed every form of despotism over the mind, and declared that the clergy of Massachusetts were the ushers of persecution, who had not imbibed the true doctrine of Christian reform.

What is said of Mrs. Hutchinson and of her converts?

24. Her opinions spread rapidly among the people, and were embraced by Governor Vane, Mr. Cotton and Mr. Wheelwright, two distinguished clergymen, and many other influential men. The majority of the people deemed her doctrines erroneous, and she, with many of her followers, was banished from the colony. Vane, disgusted at the bitter feeling which was manifested toward himself and the sect to which he belonged, in the following year returned to England.

What was the result of the bitter feelings against them?

**1638**

What induced many to flee to America?

How was Cromwell prevented from coming?

25. The persecutions of Charles I. induced many to emigrate to New England, that they might enjoy the civil and religious liberty which was denied them at home. Sir Arthur Haselrig and Oliver Cromwell had embarked, but were prevented leaving the country on account of a proclamation issued by the king, prohibiting all emigration without previous license. Thus the monarch kept at home the very persons who afterward led the way to his dethronement and death.

What is said of the founding of Harvard College?

26. The attention of the colonists was early turned to the subject of education, and in 1636 the general court of Massachusetts appropriated about one thousand dollars for the founding of a college, which was accordingly established within the limits of Newtown. In 1638 John Harvard bequeathed to the institution about three thousand dollars. In honor of the donor, it received the name of Harvard College.

What union of colonies took place in 1643, and for what purpose?

27. In 1643 Massachusetts, Plymouth, Connecticut and New Haven formed themselves into a confederacy, called the "United Colonies of New England." Rhode Island, not willing to comply with the terms, was refused admission. This confederacy, formed for mutual defense against the Indians, French and Dutch, existed for more than forty years, and greatly strengthened the several settlements which were parties to it.

What were the regulations of the confederacy?

28. The affairs of the confederacy were intrusted to commissioners, consisting of two from each colony. Church-membership was the only qualification required for the office. The commissioners

were to assemble annually to transact the public business of the colony. 1656

29. The contest in which the unfortunate Charles became engaged, and the revolution that followed, left the colonists, for the space of twenty years, nearly unmolested in the enjoyment of virtual independence. Plenty prevailed throughout the settlements. The wigwams and hovels, in which the English had first found shelter, were replaced by well-built houses. The number of emigrants, who had arrived in New England before the assembling of the Long Parliament, is esteemed to have been twenty-one thousand, two hundred. In a little more than ten years, fifty towns and villages had been planted; between thirty and forty churches built; and strangers, as they gazed, could but acknowledge God's blessing on the endeavors of the planters.

What is said of the prosperity of the colonists?

30. In 1656 several Quakers arrived in the colony, whose conduct gave great offence to the rigid Puritans. A law was passed banishing them from the colony, and imposing the sentence of death upon those who should return. Several were executed before this unjust and cruel law was repealed.

What is said of the Quakers?

31. In 1660 Charles II. ascended the throne, and was reluctantly acknowledged by the colonies in New England. They apprehended, with good reason, the loss of their civil and religious privileges. The regicides who had condemned Charles I. to death were sentenced to die, and all fell upon the scaffold excepting three, who escaped to America. Their names were Edward Whalley, William Goffe and John Dixwell. Whalley and Goffe arrived in

What did the colonists apprehend on the ascension of Charles II.?

**1661**

What is  
said of  
the regi-  
cide  
judges?

1661.

Boston, where Endicott, the governor, received them with courtesy. For nearly a year they resided, unmolested, within the limits of Massachusetts; but when warrants arrived from England for their apprehension, they fled across the country to New Haven, where it was considered a crime against God to betray the wanderer or give up the outcast. Yet such diligent search was made for them, that they were never in security. For a time they removed in secrecy from house to house; sometimes concealed themselves in a mill, sometimes in clefts of rocks by the sea-side, and for weeks together they dwelt in a cave near New Haven, which is still called the "Regicides' Cave." Great rewards were offered for their apprehension. Indians, as well as English, were urged to scour the woods in search of their hiding-place, as men hunt for the holes of foxes.

Their fu-  
ture  
lives?

32. When the zeal of the search was nearly over, they retired to a little village on the Sound, till at last they escaped by night to an appointed place in Hadley; and the solitude of the most beautiful valley of New England gave shelter to their wearisome and declining age. At New Haven two graves are now shown, said to be those of the two judges. Their bodies were probably removed to this place from Hadley.

John Dixwell was more fortunate. Changing his name, he became absorbed among the inhabitants of New Haven, and lived undiscovered.

How did  
England  
work up-  
on the  
prosperi-  
ty of the  
colonies?

33. The growing and prosperous condition of the colonies soon excited the avarice and jealousy of the government at home; and they were not long

in renewing those commercial restrictions, from which they had been exempt during the time of the commonwealth. 1631

34. The importation of European commodities into the colonies, except in English ships from England, was prohibited; the harbors were shut against the Dutch and every foreign vessel, and the colonists were even forbidden to manufacture those articles for their own wants, which might in any manner compete with the English. Thus were the commercial liberties of the rising States shackled and the principles of natural justice subjected to the fears and avarice of the English people.

What tyrannical regulations did they make?

35. In 1664 a fleet, equipped for the reduction of the Dutch settlements on the Hudson, arrived at Boston, bearing three commissioners charged to investigate the manner in which the provisions of the charters of New England had been exercised; with full authority to provide for the peace of the country, according to the royal instructions and their own discretion. 1664.

What is said of the arrival of the royal commissioners?

36. The colonists, viewing the appointment of the commissioners as uncalled for, and a violation of their charter, paid but little attention to their acts. Massachusetts, from the first, descried the approach of tyranny; and, professing sincere loyalty, refused to acknowledge their authority, and protested against the exercise of it within their limits. In Connecticut and Rhode Island they received more favor; but in Plymouth they were met with bold, decided opposition. Finding it impossible to accomplish any thing, they were in a short time recalled.

**1675**

What was the state of the colonies previous to the breaking out of the war?

37. KING PHILIP'S WAR. Up to the breaking out of King Philip's war, the New England colonies continued to enjoy peace and prosperity. Their population increased, and their settlements extended far into the country; but the clearness of their sky was to be overcast by the clouds of war, and the quiet of their homes broken by the war-cry of the Indian and the dying shrieks of their wounded wives and children.

Who was the successor of Massasoit?

38. In 1662 the aged Massasoit slept with his fathers, and his son Philip, of Pokanoket, succeeded him as chief over the allied tribes. During his father's life, the treaty which had been made with the English shortly after their arrival remained unbroken; but after his death, the feelings of the Indians were changed to hatred toward a race who were dispossessing them of their rich territory, and turning their beautiful hunting-grounds into pastures. Shortly after, an Indian missionary was found murdered. Three Indians were identified, seized, tried by a jury, of which one-half were Indians, and, on conviction, were hanged. The young men of the tribe panted for revenge, and urged Philip to commence a war against the whites. Yielding at length to their entreaties, he sent the women and children to the Narragansetts for protection, and in July, 1675, attacked the English at Swanzev, killing a number of men.

What causes led to this war?

What were the feelings of Philip on the commencement of hostilities?

39. Philip was thus hurried into hostilities, and he is reported to have wept as he heard that a white man's blood had been shed. Against his judgment and his will, he was involved in war. He had no prospect of success. Destiny had

marked him and his tribe. The English were united; the Indians had no alliance. The English had sure supplies of food; the Indians might easily lose their precarious stores. The individual growing giddy by danger, rushes as it were toward his fate. So did the Indians of New England. Frenzy prompted their rising. It was but the storm in which the ancient inhabitants of the land were to pass away. They rose without hope, and, therefore, fought without mercy. For them, as a nation, there was no to-morrow.

40. At the very beginning of danger, the colonists exerted their wonted energy. Volunteers from Massachusetts joined the troops from Plymouth, and within a week from the commencement of hostilities, the insulated Pokanokets were driven from Mount Hope.

What steps did the colonists take, and at what place were the Indians attacked?

41. During the same month they were attacked in a swamp at Pocasset, now Tiverton, but repulsed their enemy with considerable slaughter. Soon after, they fled westward and united with the Nipmucks, a tribe in the central part of Massachusetts, which Philip had induced to join him in his war against the whites. Philip possessed a strong influence over most of the New England tribes; and now, banished from his patrimony, where the pilgrims found a friend, and from his cabin, which had sheltered the exiles, he, together with his warriors, spread through the country, awakening their brethren to a warfare of extermination. In a short time a large number had joined his forces, and now commenced a war which, for cruelty and suffering, is unparalleled in colonial history.

What is said of the union of the tribes and the prosecution of the war?

1675

What of  
their  
manner  
of war-  
fare and  
their cru-  
elties?

42. The Indians, fleet of foot, and conversant with all the paths of the forest, never met the English in open field, but hovered around their paths and shot them down from places of concealment. Exploring parties were waylaid and cut off, and the mangled carcasses and disjointed limbs of the dead were hung upon the trees, to terrify pursuers. The laborer in the field, the reapers as they went forth to the harvest, men as they went to mill, were shot down by skulking foes, whose approach was invisible.

43. The mother feared the tomahawk for herself and children, and was often compelled to fly with her child in her arms. Men carried their fire-arms into the field and to church, and when they returned to their homes, would frequently find their dwellings a heap of ruins.

What  
places  
were de-  
stroyed,  
and to  
whom  
did Had-  
ley owe  
its pres-  
ervation?

44. Brookfield was set on fire; Deerfield was burned; Hadley, surprised during a time of religious service, was saved only by the daring of Goffe, the regicide, now bowed with years, a heavenly messenger, who darted from his hiding-place, rallied the disheartened, and having achieved a safe defense, sunk away into his retirement, to be no more seen.

Describe  
the mas-  
sacre at  
Bloody  
Creek.

45. On the 28th of the same month, as a company of young men, under the command of Capt. Lathrop, were conveying the harvests of Deerfield to the lower towns, they were surrounded by a horde of Indians and nearly all destroyed. The little stream that winds through the tranquil scene is called "Bloody Creek," to commemorate the massacre of that day.



46. Philip, who had been prosecuting the war in the western part of Massachusetts, having accomplished all that could be done there, returned to Rhode Island, for the purpose of obtaining the aid of the Narragansetts. In this scheme he succeeded, and, with 3,000 Indians, fortified himself in the centre of an immense swamp in the southern part of Rhode Island. The island on which he had stationed himself, he surrounded with palisades, and here, with plenty of provisions, considered himself safe from any enemy.

1675

Whose aid did Philip at length obtain, and where did he form his encampment?

47. The English determined to attack him, and accordingly raised fifteen hundred men from the colonies of Massachusetts, Plymouth and Connecticut, and sent them thither under the command of Josiah Winslow. On a stormy day in the month of December, after having spent a night in the open air, and waded a long distance through the snow, they arrived in front of the Indian camp.

What forces were raised to oppose him?

48. A body of water lay between the fort and the English, across which the trunk of a tree had fallen. Over this they endeavored to pass, but in making their way a large number was shot down. In the mean time, a small force having detached itself from the main body, passed around to the rear of the fort, and wading through the swamp, broke the feeble palisades, and rushing in, set fire to the cabins, and were immediately masters of the place. In this bloody battle, which continued for three hours, one thousand Indian warriors were killed, and a large number taken prisoners. Of the whites, six captains and eighty men were killed, and one hundred and fifty wounded.

Describe the siege.

1676

In what situation were the Indians at the commencement of the winter?

What did they do?

What forces were sent against them, and with what result?

Describe the motives that led to Philip's return, and the manner of his death.

What became of his son and the remnant of his followers?

49. Winter had just commenced, and Philip, with the remnant of his forces, now without shelter from the cold, scattered themselves over the country, and burning with revenge, continued the war with energy and spirit. Many a New England village was clothed in mourning; many a town laid in ashes. Several detachments were sent out against him, under Capt. Church, of Plymouth, and Capt. Dennison, of Connecticut, and during the year, two or three thousand Indians were killed, or submitted. Philip refused to hear of peace, and was chased from one hiding-place to another.

50. At length, after the absence of a year, he resolved to meet his destiny, and returned to the beautiful land where were the graves of his forefathers, the cradle of his infancy, and the nestling-place of his tribe. Once he escaped narrowly, leaving his wife and only son as prisoners. "Now," said he, in an agony of grief, "my heart breaks; now I am ready to die." He was shortly after surrounded by a party under Capt. Church, and in attempting to fly was shot by a faithless Indian, who had deserted his chief and gone over to the English.

51. His son, a prince cherished as the future sachem of the tribes, was sold into a bondage bitter as death, and compelled to drag out his life as a slave, under the sun of Bermuda. So perished the princes of the Pokanokets. After the death of Philip, the remnant of his followers either submitted to the English or united with distant tribes.

52. During the war more than six hundred houses were burned, and six hundred men perished

in the field. There was scarcely a family in the colony, from which death had not selected a victim. Although burthened with a heavy debt, which had been contracted during the war, they refused to apply to England for assistance. This omission excited surprise and jealousy. "You act," said a privy counselor, "as though you were independent of our master's crown, and though poor, yet you are proud."

1680

What is said of effects of the war?

What of the expenses?

53. The people of Massachusetts, believing that the commercial restrictions which had been imposed on them at different times, were unjust and a violation of their charter, paid but little attention to them. This had given great offence to the mother-country, and in 1680 Edward Randolph was sent over as inspector of the customs of New England. He was strongly opposed by the colonists, and in a short time returned. This disobedience served as a pretext for the king to enter upon a design which he had long entertained of taking away the charter from the colony; but in 1685 he died, leaving his scheme to be completed by his successor, James II.

How did the colonists treat the commercial restrictions?

What of Edward Randolph?

What design did James II. form, and when was it carried into effect?

54. In 1686 the charter of Massachusetts was taken away, and Sir Edmund Andros appointed governor of all New England. One after another, the colonies reluctantly submitted to this tool of an arbitrary king. His administration was full of acts of oppression, and so thoroughly was he hated by the colonists, that he was called the tyrant of New England.

1686.

What is said of Andros and his administration?

55. In 1689 intelligence reached Boston that James II. had been driven from his throne, and was

**1689** succeeded by William, of Orange. They immediately rushed to their arms, took possession of the fort, seized Andros and other obnoxious individuals, sent them to England for trial, and again resumed their old form of government.

His imprisonment and return to England?

What was the cause of King William's war?

What roads of the French and Indians shortly followed the commencement of the war?

What expedition was sent against the enemy, and with what result?

When was a new charter granted, and what was one of the first acts of the governor?

**56. KING WILLIAM'S WAR.** James, on being driven from England, repaired to France. This nation espousing his cause, a war ensued between the two powers, which in a short time extended to the colonies in North America. In 1689 the French and Indians fell upon the northern colonies, and the contest soon became general. During this year Major Walden, with twenty persons, was slain at Dover, in New Hampshire.

**57.** In the ensuing year, the settlement at Casco, in Maine, was attacked; Schenectady, in New York, was burned, and its streets drenched with blood. Massachusetts deemed it necessary to resort to retaliation, and fitted out an expedition under Sir William Phipps, which proceeded to Nova Scotia and captured Port Royal. The same year, Massachusetts and New York united their forces together for the purpose of subjugating Canada. They proceeded to Quebec and attempted to reduce the place, but failed in their object and returned home.

**58.** In 1692 a new charter was granted to Massachusetts, which added Plymouth, Maine and Nova Scotia to her territory. Sir William Phipps was appointed governor; and one of his first acts, on coming into power, was to institute a court to try the victims accused of witchcraft at Salem.

**59.** In England, the belief in witchcraft had be-

come so prevalent, that parliament had passed an act punishing the crime with death. Under this law numbers had been tried and executed in that country, and two or three in Massachusetts.

1692  
What is  
said of  
witch-  
craft in  
England,  
and its  
progress  
in the  
colonies?

60. In Salem village, now Danvers, there had been, between Samuel Parris, the minister, and a part of his people, a strife so bitter that it had even attracted the attention of the general court. The delusion of witchcraft would give opportunities of terrible vengeance. In February, 1692, his daughter and niece began to have strange caprices. The physicians, who could make nothing of their contortions, pronounced them bewitched, in which opinion Mr. Parris concurred. An old Indian woman was whipped until she confessed herself a witch. Several private fasts were kept in the family, and a general fast throughout the colony.

61. The delusion spread rapidly; parents accused their children, and children their parents, and a word from those supposed to be afflicted, occasioned the arrest of the devoted victim; so that the prisons were soon filled.

62. At first, the victims were confined to the lower class; but, emboldened by success, many of those moving in the higher circles were accused and convicted. Among the rest was a magistrate of great talent, and George Burroughs, a minister of unexceptionable character; both were tried and executed.

63. At length the eyes of community began to be opened; each felt alarm for himself, his family and friends, and they examined more closely into the nature of the evidence which was ad-

How was  
it finally  
termi-  
nated?

**1701** duced. The current of popular opinion began to turn, and in a short time the governor reprieved those who were condemned, and directed that all who were in prison should be set at liberty. During the delusion twenty persons had been executed, fifty-five tortured, and several hundreds imprisoned.

When was peace declared between England and France?

The hostilities between the French and Indians and the English continued until 1697, when peace was declared between England and France.

What events followed the commencement of Queen Anne's war?

**64. QUEEN ANNE'S WAR.** In 1701 England became embroiled in a war with France and Spain. Hostilities immediately commenced in the colonies. Deerfield was attacked, forty persons killed, and more than one hundred made prisoners. Scenes of cruelty and blood, like those we have just recounted, were renewed in different parts of the colonies.

What took place in 1710?

**65.** In 1710 New England, assisted by a fleet furnished by the mother-country, took possession of Port Royal, in Nova Scotia, and changed its name to Annapolis. In 1711 Admiral Walker, with fifteen ships of war and forty transports, carrying a large number of troops, sailed from Boston for the purpose of subjugating Canada. Shortly after their departure nine of the transports were wrecked in a terrible storm, and more than one thousand men perished.

What in 1711?

When and where was peace concluded?

**66.** Weakened and disheartened by this misfortune, the admiral gave up the expedition and returned to England. In 1713 peace was concluded between France and England at Utrecht, and shortly after hostilities ceased with the Indians.

For the space of thirty years from this time, till the commencement of King George's war in 1744, the settlements were unmolested by the Indians. 1744

67. During this time no event of importance occurred. Through the administration of three of the royal governors, a bitter quarrel was carried on between them and the representatives of the people. The governor insisted upon being allowed a permanent salary; this the representatives objected to, but they finally consented to vote a certain sum annually in the room of it. What is said of the long peace which followed?

68. KING GEORGE'S WAR. In 1744 the friendly relations which had for a time existed between France and England, were broken by disputes relative to Austria. War was declared between the two nations, and the French and English colonies in North America joined in the contest. 1744.

69. The first important place which was attacked during the war was Louisburg, a French post strongly fortified, situated on Cape Breton. The commerce and fisheries of the colonies suffered great injury from privateers fitted out from this port; and Governor Shirley of Massachusetts resolved on an enterprise for its reduction. The expedition was resolved upon in the legislature by a majority of one vote. What was the first place attacked?

70. Solicited to render assistance, New York sent a small supply of artillery, and Pennsylvania of provisions. New England furnished the men; of whom Connecticut raised five hundred, New Hampshire three hundred and four, and Massachusetts three thousand volunteers. Who rendered assistance?

71. In April, 1745, these forces, under the com-

**1745** mand of William Pepperell and Roger Wolcott, set sail for Louisburg. Shortly after their arrival at Canseau, where they were detained a number of days from the ice, they were fortunately joined by the squadron of Commodore Warren. On the 11th of May, an hour after sunrise, the combined forces came in sight of Louisburg. Its walls, raised on a neck of land on the south side of the harbor, forty feet thick at the base, twenty to thirty feet high, were furnished with one hundred and one cannon, seventy-six swivels, and six mortars; its garrison was composed of sixteen hundred men.

Who  
com-  
manded  
the  
forces?

Describe  
Louis-  
burg.

Give a  
descrip-  
tion of  
the siege.

72. The day after the landing of the English, a detachment of four hundred men under William Vaughan marched by the city, and took post near the north-east corner. The French who held the royal battery, struck with panic, spiked the guns, and fled in the night. The English immediately took possession of it, removed the spikes from the guns, and turned them upon the city. Batteries were erected at the west and south-west of the city, and the cannon dragged over the boggy morasses upon sledges, drawn by the men with straps over their shoulders. Another battery was erected near the north cape of the harbor, on the Light-house Cliff; while, within two hundred yards of the city, trenches had been thrown up near an advanced post, which, with the guns from the royal battery, played upon the north-west gate of Louisburg.

73. The Vigilant, a French ship of sixty-four guns, laden with military stores, was captured by the fleet under Warren within sight of the city. On the 28th of June the governor sent out a flag



of truce, and surrendered the fortress and the whole island. This was the greatest success achieved by England during the war. France planned its recovery and the desolation of the English colonies; but in 1746, the large fleet from France, under the command of the Duke d'Anville, wasted by storms, and shipwrecks, and pestilential diseases, was compelled to return without having struck a blow.

1748  
With what success did France attempt its recovery?

74. The war was finally closed in 1748, by the treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle, which restored all the territory acquired by either party during the war to its former possessors. Thus, with the exception of the expenditure of a vast amount of wealth, and the loss of many valuable lives, the two countries remained the same as at the commencement of hostilities.

When was peace declared?

## CHAPTER IV.

### NEW HAMPSHIRE.

1. THE colonial history of New Hampshire is intimately blended with that of Massachusetts; it having been a part of that colony until 1680, when it was made a royal province by the king. A brief sketch of its separate history, therefore, will only be necessary.

1622.

What is said of the early history of New Hampshire?

2. The first settlements were made in 1623 at Little Harbor and Dover, by a company of emigrants sent out by Capt. John Mason and Sir Fer-

When and by whom were the first settlements made?

**1629** dinand Gorges, two influential members of the Plymouth council, from which they had just received large grants of land north of Massachusetts.

What is said of the purchase of Wheelwright?

3. In 1629 Rev. John Wheelwright purchased the country between the Merrimac and Piscataqua rivers, of the Indians. In the same year, but at a later date, this territory, extending sixty miles back from the sea, was granted to Mason alone, and then first called New Hampshire. For several years each town remained distinct and independent; but in 1641, fearing their own weakness, they placed themselves under the protection of Massachusetts.

1675.

What is said of Robert Mason?

4. In 1675 Robert Mason, a grandson of John Mason, applied to the king to obtain possession of the territory granted to his ancestor. Notice was given to Massachusetts, and the parties heard by the king, but no decision given to affect the land titles. In 1680 New Hampshire became a separate province, to be governed by a president and council appointed by the king, and a house of representatives chosen by the people.

What of New Hampshire as a separate province?

1680.

5. In 1680 the first assembly met at Portsmouth, and adopted a code of laws, which declared, "that no act, imposition, law or ordinance should be imposed upon the inhabitants of the province, but such as should be made by the assembly and approved by the president of the council."

What is said of Mason's claims?

6. In the following year, Robert Mason arrived in the colony, and assuming the title of lord protector, laid claim to all the lands granted to his grandfather. The colonists refused to acknowledge these claims, and although Mason frequently prosecuted

them, yet he was never able to recover anything, 1690 so very unpopular had he become.

7. In 1690 New Hampshire united with Massachusetts, but at the expiration of two years separated from her, and was formed into a royal province. They were again united in 1699, and continued under one governor, having separate legislative assemblies, until 1741.

8. The heirs of Mason, in 1691, weary with the contention to which their claims to lands in New Hampshire gave rise, sold them to Samuel Allen; but he was as unsuccessful in obtaining rents from them as his predecessor. In 1746 one of the descendants of Mason renewed the original claim, and conveyed the territory granted to his ancestor to twelve persons for fifteen hundred pounds. These persons, in a short time, voluntarily relinquished their claim to lands already occupied.

What is  
said of  
the sale  
of Ma-  
son's  
claims?

Of their  
renewal?

Of their  
sale  
again?

9. From this time, the vexed land disputes ceased, and the people settled down in the quiet enjoyment of their possessions. New Hampshire suffered alike, with many of the other colonies, during the bloody French and Indian wars; but as we have already noticed them in another place, it will not be necessary to recapitulate here.

What is  
farther  
said of  
New  
Hamp-  
shire?

1630

## CHAPTER V.

## CONNECTICUT.

What is  
said of  
the first  
grant of  
Connecticut?

What  
feelings  
did the  
Indians  
manifest?

1. IN 1630 the territory of Connecticut was granted by the Plymouth council to the Earl of Warwick, and transferred by him in 1631 to Lord Say and Seal, Lord Brooke, John Hampden and others. The grant extended from the Atlantic westward to the Pacific ocean. The same year, the Indians living in the valley of Connecticut, wishing to cultivate a friendly feeling with the English, invited the Plymouth colony to make a settlement on their lands. Governor Winslow accordingly visited the country and selected Windsor as the site of their future settlement.

1633.

What  
steps did  
the  
Dutch  
take to  
secure  
the territory?

2. The Dutch at New York, when informed of this project of the English, determined to secure the territory for themselves, and sent out a party in 1633, who erected a slight fort at Hartford, on which they planted two cannon. A few months later, in the same year, a company at Plymouth sent out in a small vessel, commanded by Capt. Holmes, materials for the erection of a trading-house at Windsor.

What is  
said of  
Holmes  
and the  
English  
trading-  
house at  
Windsor?

3. As Holmes was sailing leisurely up the river, past the fort at Hartford, he was hailed by the Dutch with "heave to, or we'll fire." "Fire if you dare," was the cool reply of Holmes, who was soon out of reach of their guns, and safe at Windsor, where the trading-house was immediately erected.

In the following year, the Dutch sent a party of 1635 seventy to drive them from the country; but finding them strongly posted, they returned in peace.

4. In the autumn of 1635, the younger Winthrop arrived from England, with a commission from the proprietors to erect a fort at the mouth of the Connecticut river, and make the necessary preparations for a settlement. Shortly after the fort was erected, a party of Dutch arrived in vessels from New York, but were not permitted to land. The settlement was called Saybrook, in honor of the owners of the territory.

Give an account of the erection of the fort at Saybrook.

5. During the summer of 1635, settlements had been made by emigrants from the environs of Boston at Windsor and Weathersfield; and late in the autumn, a company of sixty men, women and children, began their march to the west. The winter was so early and severe, that provisions could not arrive by the river, and the men suffered such privations that many of them, in the depths of winter, waded through the snows to the sea-board. Early in the following spring, Rev. Thomas Hooker, with a company of about one hundred, started from Cambridge, and proceeded through the wilderness until they arrived, after a journey of two weeks, at Hartford, where they formed a settlement.

Describe the emigration from Massachusetts.

6. In the vicinity of the river Thames resided the Pequods, a fierce and warlike tribe, who had frequently shown a hostile spirit toward the infant settlements. In 1636 they attacked and murdered Mr. Oldham. An expedition was sent against them by Massachusetts, which was ineffectual, and only served to excite their hatred and revenge. They

What is said of the Pequods?

1636.

Of their outrages on the whites?

**1637**

Of their  
attempt-  
ed alli-  
ance  
with the  
Narra-  
gansetts?

now sought an alliance with the Narragansetts and the Mohegans, that, by a general rising, they might sweep the hated intruders from the ancient hunting-grounds of their race. The conspiracy was dissolved by the interference of Roger Williams.

Of the  
expedi-  
tion  
against  
them?

7. In 1637 continued injuries and murders roused Connecticut to action, and the general court decreed immediate war. A force of eighty English, principally from Connecticut, and seventy friendly Mohegans, was placed under the command of Captain John Mason, who, with this small force, sailed down the river, and shortly after, entered Narragansett bay. Here they landed, and, guided by a Pequod deserter, proceeded across the country toward the principal fort of their enemy, situated on the west side of the Mystic river, where they arrived about sunrise on the morning of the 5th of June.

What is  
said of  
the In-  
dian fort?

Of the at-  
tack and  
the re-  
sult?

8. As they approached the fort a watch-dog gave the alarm, but before the Indians could fairly arouse themselves from their slumbers, Mason, followed by his brave band, was in their midst, dealing his death-blows around. The Indians rallied and fought their enemy hand to hand; but their bows and arrows could poorly resist weapons of steel.

9. At length, Mason finding that victory was tardy on account of their superior numbers, shouted, "We must burn them," and cast a firebrand to the windward among the light mats of the Indian cabins. The English had hardly time to withdraw and surround the place, before the whole encampment was in a blaze. If they attempted to escape from the burning inclosure, they were

cut down by the English swords. The carnage was complete. About six hundred Indians, men, women and children, perished, most of them in the conflagration. The work of destruction was finished in about an hour, with the loss of only two of the English soldiers. 1637

10. The remnant of the Pequod tribe were pursued into their hiding-places; every wigwam was burned, and every corn-field laid waste. Their sachem was murdered by the Mohawks, to whom he had fled for protection; and the few that survived, about two hundred, were enslaved by the English, or incorporated among the Mohegans and Narragansetts. There remained not one of the Pequod name. A nation had disappeared from the family of men. From this time, the colonists enjoyed for many years a season of peace and prosperity.

What became of the remnant of the Pequod tribe?

11. In 1638 a colony sprung up at New Haven, under the guidance of the Rev. John Davenport and Theophilus Eaton, who had arrived at Boston the year before from Europe. Their first Sabbath was spent in no temple reared by man, but under a branching oak, while Davenport taught his little flock that, like the Son of Man, they were led into the wilderness to be tempted. 1638.

What is said of the formation of New Haven colony?

How was the first Sabbath spent?

12. On the following day, they rested their government upon the simple declaration, that "all of them would be ordered by the rules which the Scriptures held forth to them;" and when, on the succeeding year, some of the planters desired a more perfect form of government, they held their constituent assembly in a barn, and declared that

What is said of their government?

**1638** the Bible should be their only law book, and that church members only should be free burgesses.

**What of their prosperity?** 13. Meanwhile their pleasant villages spread along the sound, undisturbed by the natives, of whom the land had been fairly purchased. Mr. Eaton was annually elected governor of the colony for twenty years, until his death, and to his wise administration, under the providence of God, they were indebted for their unusual prosperity.

**What event occurred in 1639?** 14. In Jan., 1639, the freemen of the settlements upon the Connecticut river, who had heretofore acknowledged the authority of Massachusetts, assembled at Hartford, and adopted a constitution for themselves. It was ordained that the governor and all public officers should be elected annually by the people, and that in the assembly alone should lie the power of making or repealing laws. Thus did the colonists, by these wise regulations, early show their firm attachment to the principles of liberty and justice.

**Describe their Constitution.** 15 A dispute, of so bitter a nature as to threaten hostilities, had long existed between the English and Dutch respecting the boundary line of their territories. In 1650 Governor Stuyvesant visited Hartford, and entered into a treaty with the English, in which the Dutch were to relinquish their claim to the territory of Connecticut, except the lands they actually occupied.

**1650.** **Describe the treaty with the Dutch.** 16. Upon the overthrow of the Commonwealth and the re-establishment of Monarchy in England, the inhabitants of Connecticut proclaimed the new king, and petitioned through Winthrop, their Governor, for a royal charter. Winthrop repaired to



England, and securing the interest of Lord Say and Seal obtained an ample charter, confirming the constitution which they had previously adopted, and connecting Hartford and New Haven in one colony, of which the limits extended from the Narragansett bay to the Pacific ocean.

1662

How was the royal charter obtained, and what was its character?

17. The sale of a portion of those lands has given to Connecticut its valuable school fund, through which education is placed within the reach of all. For a number of years New Haven refused to unite with Hartford, but in 1665, fearful of being joined to some other colony, she reluctantly gave her consent.

What fund was derived from a portion of these lands?

18. In 1687, Sir Edmund Andros arrived at Boston with a commission from James appointing him governor of all New England. In the autumn of the same year, he proceeded to Connecticut attended by some of his council and an armed guard, and on his arrival, finding the assembly in session, demanded the immediate surrender of its charter.

Who was appointed governor in 1687?

What did he demand on his arrival in Hartford?

19. The assembly was alarmed, and pleaded long and earnestly for their cherished patent. The discussion was prolonged until late in the evening, when the charter was produced and laid on the table, a large number of citizens being present. On a sudden the lights were extinguished, and when rekindled the charter had disappeared. Joseph Wadsworth had concealed the precious document in the hollow of an oak tree, which is still standing, and from this circumstance called the charter oak. Andros, however, assumed the government and continued in his office until the dethronement of James, when he was deposed, and Connecticut resumed her former government.

Describe the scene that ensued.

How long did Andros continue in his office?

1693

For what  
did Col.  
Fletcher  
visit  
Hartford?

20. After this, no attempt to infringe upon her rights occurred until 1693, when Colonel Fletcher, who had been previously appointed governor of New York, with authority to take command of the militia of Connecticut, appeared at Hartford and demanded that they should be placed under his command. This being contrary to the charter of the colony, the governor refused, but in compliance with his request, ordered the militia to assemble on the green.

Describe  
the  
scene  
with the  
militia.

21. Fletcher now attempted to read his commission, but Capt. Wadsworth ordered the drums to beat, so that nothing could be heard. Fletcher commanded silence and again began to read. "Drum, drum, I say," said Wadsworth, and the voice of the reader was again drowned in the noise. The colonel again demanded silence, and Wadsworth again shouted, "Drum, drum," then turning to Fletcher with meaning in his looks, he said, "If I am interrupted again, I will make the sun shine through you in a moment." Deeming it unwise to contend with such a spirit, Fletcher returned to New York, and never again troubled Capt. Wadsworth or the Connecticut militia.

What is  
said of  
educa-  
tion and  
the foun-  
dation of  
Yale  
College?

22. Education was cherished in Connecticut as the great source of freedom, and religious knowledge carried to the highest degree of perfection. In 1700 Yale College was founded at Saybrook by a party of clergymen, but was soon after removed to New Haven. It derived its name from Elihu Yale, who made several donations to the institution. For nearly a century, with transient interruptions, the republican institutions of Connecticut were un-

harmcd, and peace and prosperity were within its borders. 1636

## CHAPTER VI.

### RHODE ISLAND.

1. ROGER WILLIAMS, the pastor of a church in Salem, Massachusetts, having rendered himself obnoxious to the Puritans from certain religious views which he entertained, was banished from the colony. Early in 1636, he left Salem in winter, during snowy and inclement weather, of which he remembered the severity in his old age. For fourteen weeks he wandered in the wilderness, often without a guide, and with no house but a hollow tree. But he was not without friends, for Massasoit and Canoncus, whose cause he had advocated, welcomed him with warm hearts to their cabins. Until his death, he remained the firm friend of their tribes, and was ever regarded by them with the warmest affection.

Who was the founder of Rhode Island?

1636.

What led to his banishment from Massachusetts?

Describe his journey.

2. He first commenced a settlement at Seekonk, but was soon informed by Governor Winthrop, that he was within the patent of Plymouth, and advised to steer his course to the Narragansett bay. He accordingly with five companions, embarked in a frail canoe, and sailed down the Narragansett river, until he reached Moshassuck, where he landed, and having bought the land of the Indians, formed his settlement, which in token of his un-

Where did he first commence a settlement, and what induced him to remove?

Where did he at length form a permanent settlement?

**1636** broken confidence in the mercies of God he called Providence.

What is said of the regulations of the colony and the character of Williams?

3. He founded the colony on the broadest principles of civil and religious liberty, making his government a pure democracy, where the will of the majority should govern the State in civil things, God alone being respected as the ruler of conscience. He labored long and earnestly for the temporal and spiritual good of the Indians, and manifested a friendly feeling toward the people of Massachusetts, who had banished him, giving them the first intimation of the conspiracy of the Pequods for their destruction, and at the peril of his own life, went among the hostile tribes and succeeded in breaking up their designs.

1638.

What is said of the settlement on the island of Aquetnac?

4. In 1638, William Coddington and seventeen others, driven by religious persecution from Massachusetts, formed a settlement at Portsmouth, upon the island of Aquetnac, now called Rhode Island, which they had purchased from the Indians. Coddington was chosen governor. The toleration of all Christian sects and the democracy of the government attracted many emigrants from the adjacent settlements. Newport was founded the next year, and the settlements on this beautiful island rapidly increased.

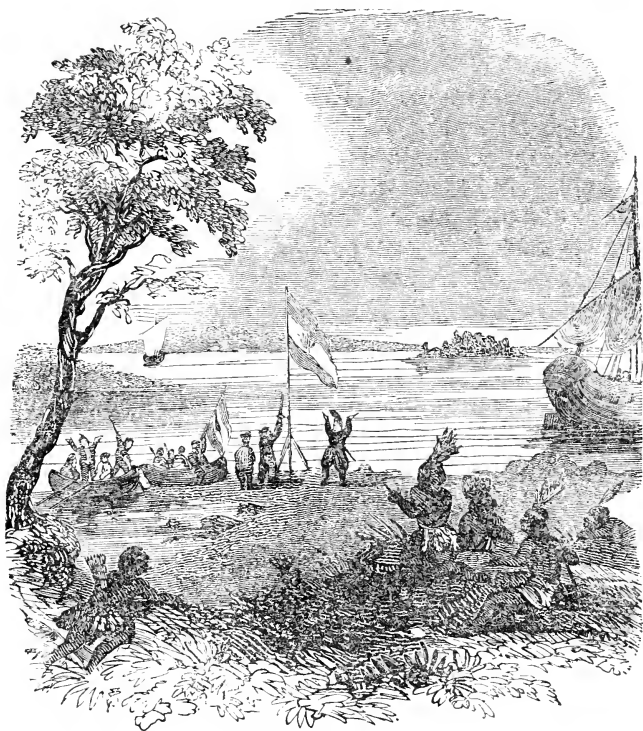
Why was this colony refused admittance into the New England confederacy?

5. As yet, Rhode Island had no royal charter, and when the New England colonies formed their memorable confederacy in 1643, she was refused admittance unless she would submit to the jurisdiction of Plymouth. This she declined doing, preferring to remain in her present state, rather than in one of dependence. In the following

year, Williams having visited England for that purpose obtained of the Plymouth Company a patent of the territory, and permission to institute a government for the colonists. In 1647, delegates elected by the people, held a general assembly at Portsmouth, organized their government, and established a code of laws. 1647

6. In 1663, Rhode Island and Providence plantations obtained a royal charter, which continued in force with but one short interruption until 1842. The governor, members of the legislature, and all public officers, were to be elected by freemen, and no person within the colony could be molested or called in question for any difference in opinion in matters of religion. What is said of the royal charter?

7. When Andros became governor over the New England colonies, he dissolved the charter government of Rhode Island, but three years after when deposed from his office, the freemen assembled at Newport, and resumed their old charter. In 1730, Brown University was founded by Nicholas Brown, who gave to the institution five thousand dollars. What is said of Andros?  
Of Brown University?



LANDING OF THE DUTCH.

1609

## CHAPTER VII.

## NEW YORK.

What  
was the  
object of  
early  
naviga-  
tors?

1. One great object in the voyages of the early navigators was the discovery of a western passage to the East Indies much shorter and more safe than the one then known. In pursuit of this passage,

Henry Hudson made two voyages in the service of a company of London merchants, but being unsuccessful, his employers gave up the attempt in despair.

1609

In whose service did Hudson make two voyages, and with what success?

2. Hudson, still confident of success, now entered the service of the Dutch East India Company and in 1609, sailed on his third voyage. He reached the continent in the vicinity of Newfoundland, proceeded south along the coast to Virginia, then turning to the north, on the thirteenth day of September he anchored within Sandy Hook, where he remained a week, and then entered the harbor and sailed up the river as far as the present city of Albany. Having completed his discovery, he descended the stream to which time has given his name and sailed for Europe.\*

In whose service did he then enter?

What is said of his third voyage?

3. Shortly after, a vessel was fitted out by a company of merchants at Amsterdam and sent out to traffic with the natives. When Argell in 1613, returning from his piratical excursion against the settlements at Port Royal, entered the waters of New York, he found on the island of Manhattan a number of hovels erected by these Dutch mariners and traders. His larger force made him, while he remained, lord of the island, but as he retired, the Dutch continued their profitable traffic, and in the

What of the first settlement?

What of Argell?

---

\* Hudson, shortly after his return, sailed on another voyage to discover a western passage, in the employment of a company of English merchants. Sailing north into the Arctic ocean, he searched through a gloomy winter in vain. At length provisions were nearly exhausted, and his crew broke forth into mutiny. Hudson was seized, and, with his son, thrown into a small boat and left to perish. He never was heard of afterward.

**1621**

Fort Amsterdam  
and Fort  
Orange?

following year having received reinforcements, erected Fort Amsterdam on the south end of the island. Emigrants from Holland frequently arrived, and in 1615, a settlement was commenced at Albany, and Fort Orange erected.

What  
was the  
grant of  
the  
Dutch  
East India  
Company?

4. In 1621, the Dutch West India Company was formed, and immediately received a grant of a large tract of country on both sides of the Hudson, extending from the Connecticut river on the north to the Delaware river on the south. The territory was called New Netherlands. In 1623, Cornelius Mey ascended the Delaware river, and on Timber Creek, where it enters the Delaware a few miles below Camden, erected Fort Nassau. Two years after, Peter Minuits the commercial agent of the West India Company, arrived at Manhattan with the commission of governor, which office he held for six years.

What  
fort did  
Mey  
erect?

What of  
Minuits?

What is  
said of  
the Pilgrims  
and the  
Dutch?

5. For a considerable length of time, a friendly feeling existed between the Dutch and the Pilgrims. The latter were invited to remove to the rich meadows of the Connecticut, and they in their turn reciprocated the kindness of the former in many ways.

Describe  
New  
York as  
it was  
and as  
it is.

These were the rude beginnings of New York. Its first age was the age of hunters and Indian traders; of traffic in the skins of beavers and otters. It was the day of straw roofs, and wooden chimneys, and windmills. The straw-roofed cottages and uncultivated grounds on the island of Manhattan, in little more than two centuries, have given place to the marble mansions of the rich and the crowded streets of the metropolis of the New World.



6. The sombre forests which met the eye of Hudson as he sailed up the river that bears his name, have passed away, and in their place we behold cultivated fields and smiling villages. The vast wilderness traversed only by wild beasts and savage men, its silence unbroken save by their cry, is now penetrated in every direction by railroads and canals, and its rivers and lakes resound with the breathings of the steam-engine, as it impels floating palaces, conveying the busy traveler and the rich products of the soil to their destination. Such are the changes which have been brought about by the action of mind upon matter. 1629

7. In 1629, a new company was formed in Holland, called the "College of nineteen." By the regulations of this company, every one who would emigrate on his own account, was entitled to as much land as he could cultivate. He that within four years would plant a colony of fifty souls, became Lord of the Manor, or Patroon, possessing in absolute property the land he colonized, which might extend sixteen miles in length; yet it was stipulated that the soil must be purchased of the Indians. What of the regulations of the College of Nineteen?

8. Under these regulations several settlements were formed. Five Indian chiefs, in return for parcels of goods, conveyed the land from Albany to the mouth of the Mohawk to the agent of Van Rensselaer, and a few years afterward, the purchase was extended twelve miles farther south. What settlements were formed?

9. In 1631, De Vriez conducted from Holland a colony, which settled at Lewistown, near the Delaware. After a residence of a year in America, De 1631.

1631

What of  
De Vriez  
and his  
colony?

Vriez sailed for Holland, leaving his colony to the care of Asset. At the close of the year he returned, and found the soil he had planted strewn with the bones of his countrymen. The Indians had attacked the settlement, and nearly all had been destroyed. In the following spring, De Vriez sailed to New Amsterdam, where he found Wouter Van Twiller, who had been recently appointed Governor in the place of Minuits.

What  
was the  
cause of  
the quar-  
rel be-  
tween  
Connect-  
icut and  
the  
Dutch,  
and how  
was it  
settled?

10. The Dutch laid claim to a large portion of the territory of Connecticut, and had early occupied the soil, and erected a fort in the vicinity of Hartford. But the swarms of English in Connecticut grew so numerous as not only to overwhelm the feeble settlement at that place, but to invade the less doubtful territories of New Netherlands. A bitter quarrel ensued, which continued until 1650, when Peter Stuyvesant, the governor of New Netherlands, met the commissioners of the New England colonies at Hartford, where a line of partition between their territories was fixed by mutual agreement. Long Island was divided between them, and on the main-land, New Netherlands was allowed to extend to Greenwich near the present boundary.

What  
was the  
boundary  
line?

What is  
said of  
the for-  
mation  
of the  
Swedish  
colony?

11. While encroachments were thus being made upon the Dutch in the east, a new cause of trouble arose in the west. Gustavus Adolphus, the King of Sweden, had long cherished the plan of forming a colony in America, which should be a blessing to the whole Protestant world. After his death in 1633, his minister revived the plan, but more than

four years passed away before the design was carried into effect. 1638

12. In 1638, the Swedish colony under Minuits, 1638. the former governor of New Netherlands, arrived in the Delaware bay ; purchased the lands of the natives, from the southern cape to the falls in the river near Trenton, and not far from the mouth of Christiana creek erected Christiana fort. Delaware was colonized, and notwithstanding the opposition of Kieft, the Dutch governor, for a considerable length of time prospered and increased in population. The banks of the Delaware, from the ocean to the falls, were known as New Sweden.

13. While the limits of New Netherlands were narrowed by competitors on the east, on the south, the colony was almost annihilated by the vengeance of the neighboring Algonquin tribes. What is said of the hostilities with the Indians? Rum had been freely sold to the Indians, and under its influence many outrages were committed.

One of the Manhattan Indians had killed a Hollander, and Kieft demanded the murderer. 1643. An angry quarrel ensued. Shortly after the Mohawks came down upon the Mannhattans, when in terror they begged the Dutch to assist them. The barbarous Kieft sent his troops, and at night murdered them all, men, women and helpless children, to the number of a hundred. Of the cruelty of Kieft?

14. Every Algonquin tribe around Manhattan burned with the frenzy of revenge. No English family within their reach was safe. The Dutch villages were in flames, and the people fleeing to Holland. At length, through the intervention of Roger Williams, peace was restored. But hostili- Describe the progress of the war and its close.

**1645** ties soon recommenced. Capt. Underhill was appointed commander of the Dutch troops. The war continued two years, when it was brought to a close through the influence of the Mohawks, who claimed a sovereignty over the Algonquins.

15. Great was the joy of the colony on the return of peace. The policy of the infamous Kieft was disavowed by the West India Company, and he removed from office. Two years after he embarked for Europe in a richly laden vessel; but the ship, unable to breast the fury of elements, as merciless as his own passions, was dashed in pieces on the coast of Wales, and the guilty Kieft was overwhelmed by the waves.

What became of Kieft?

1647.

Who was appointed in his place, and what is said of his administration?

What fort was erected, and how was it destroyed?

16. Peter Stuyvesant succeeded Kieft as governor of the colony, and with the commencement of his wise administration a better day dawned on New Netherlands. During his administration, the difficulties existing between the Dutch and English were amicably arranged, mention of which has already been made. In 1651, Stuyvesant, from motives of commercial security, built Fort Casimer on the site of Newcastle, within five miles of Christiana, where the Swedish fort was situated. The Swedish governor, looking upon this as an encroachment by means of stratagem, overpowered the garrison and took possession of the fort.

What did this lead to?

17. Stuyvesant determined to punish them, and in September, 1655, at the head of a force of six hundred men, sailed into the Delaware for the purpose of conquest. Resistance was unavailing, and one after another of the Swedish forts surrendered,

until the whole country was in the hands of the Dutch. Such was the end of New Sweden. 1664

18. New Netherlands soon fell into other hands, for in 1664, Charles II. granted the whole of the territory, from the Connecticut to the Delaware river, to his brother, the Duke of York and Albany. The same year, the Duke dispatched three ships for his new possessions, under the command of Col. Richard Nichols.

19. In August, Nichols arrived in the harbor of New Amsterdam, and immediately demanded a surrender of the territory to his English majesty. Governor Stuyvesant being unprepared for defense, was compelled to comply with the demand, and the whole country passed into the hands of the English. In honor of the Duke, the name of New Amsterdam was changed to New York, and Fort Orange to Albany. Nichols assumed the government, and continued for three years to rule over it with absolute power, but with great integrity and moderation. Upon his return to England in 1667, he was succeeded by Lovelace, who administered the government with equal moderation.

20. In 1672, war broke out between England and Holland, and in the following year a few Dutch ships were sent to reconquer their old territory, in America. Arriving in New York bay, John Manning, who had charge of the fort, sent down and covertly made terms with the enemy. The Dutch immediately sailed up the harbor and took possession of the fort and city without firing a single gun. The next year, peace was concluded, and the country was restored to the English.

To whom was New Netherlands granted in 1664?

What took place on the arrival of Nichols as governor?

To what were the names of New Amsterdam and Fort Orange changed?

Who was the successor of Nichols?

What took place in New York on the breaking out of a war between England and Holland?

1682

Who was appointed governor under the new patent?

21. The Duke of York obtained a new patent, confirming his former grant, and appointed Edmund Andros, afterward known as the tyrant of New England, governor of his possessions in America. During the administration of Andros and that of his successor, Anthony Brockholst, no event worthy of particular notice occurred in the colony.

When was Dongan appointed governor?

In 1682, Colonel Thomas Dongan, a Roman Catholic, was appointed governor, and on the following year arrived at the colony. Heretofore the governor and council had possessed absolute power, but now Dongan was directed to call an assembly of representatives.

What was the result of the first legislative assembly?

22. Early in October, the first assembly consisting of the council and eighteen representatives met and formed a "*Charter of Liberties*." The legislature was hereafter to possess the sole power of enacting laws and levying taxes, but the laws could have no force, until ratified by the Duke. With these just regulations the people were gratified and contented. In 1684, a treaty of peace was renewed with the Five Nations, from which time it continued unbroken for a number of years.

How was James II. looked on by the colonists?

23. In 1685, the Duke of York ascended the throne of England, with the title of James II. Claiming unlimited authority as king, and a bigoted Catholic in religion, he was feared and hated by a large majority of the colonists, who were Protestants, and who, on account of the oppressive acts of himself and governor, began to tremble for their religion. Great, therefore, was their joy when in 1689, they received intelligence that the people

With what feelings did they hear of his dethronement?

of England had determined to dethrone James, 1689 and offer the crown to William and Mary.

24. Jacob Leisler, an active militia captain, placed himself at the head of a few men, declared for William and Mary, and took possession of the fort of New York. Milborne, his son-in-law, proceeded to Albany and made himself master of the place. These proceedings, at first, were discountenanced by the magistrates, and the more respectable part of the citizens, but in a short time his force increased to more than five hundred men, sufficient in strength to put down all opposition.

What is said of Leisler?

What is said of the acts of Milborne?

25. Before the breaking out of these disturbances, Dongan had sailed for England. Nicholson, his successor, unable to contend with Leisler, absconded in the night. Shortly after a letter arrived from the ministry in England, conferring authority on whoever administered the laws of the province, to perform all the duties of lieutenant-governor. Leisler considered this letter as addressed to himself, and assumed the authority conferred.

Why did Leisler think himself authorized to assume the government?

The assumption of power on the part of Leisler, and his arbitrary and unjust measures, created in the minds of many a violent animosity toward him, which ended in bringing him to the scaffold.

What was the fate of Leisler?

26. During these troubles in the colony, war was declared between England and France, and hostilities soon after commenced between the French and Indians on the north, and the English. Schenectady was burned, sixty of the inhabitants were killed, and twenty-five made prisoners. To avenge these barbarities and others perpetrated in New England, it was resolved to attack the French in Canada.

What effect had the declaration of war between France and England in the colonies?

1690.

What barbarities were committed?

**1690**

What  
expedi-  
tions  
planned?

Two expeditions were formed, one under Sir William Phipps to proceed by sea, the other by the way of Lake Champlain, but both were unsuccessful.

Who was  
appoint-  
ed gover-  
nor in  
1691?

27. In 1691, Henry Sloughter was appointed by the King, Governor of New York. Never was a governor more necessary to a province; but it would have been almost impossible for the king to have selected one less qualified for the station than Sloughter. He refused to treat with Leisler; but put him with many of his companions in prison. Under the absurd charge of high treason, Leisler and Milborne were tried; pronounced guilty, and sentenced to be executed. Their property was confiscated, but was afterward restored to their descendants.

What is  
said of  
him?

What of  
Leisler  
and Mil-  
borne?

In August, Sloughter ended, by a sudden death, a short, weak, and turbulent administration.

What of  
the  
French  
and In-  
dian war?

28. The war between the French, with their Indian allies, and the English, still continued, and about this time Major Peter Schuyler, at the head of three hundred Mohawks, made a successful attack upon the French settlements, at the north end of Lake Champlain.

Whosuc-  
ceeded  
Slough-  
ter?

What is  
said of  
his ad-  
ministra-  
tion?

29. In 1692, Col. Fletcher was appointed as the successor of Sloughter. He was a good soldier, a religious man, and labored zealously to promote the interest of the English Church. Near the close of his administration, the bloody war which had so long been carried on between England and France, by the French and English colonies in America, was terminated by the peace of Ryswick.

When  
did the  
French  
and In-  
dian war  
termi-  
nate?

1693.

30. In 1698, the Earl of Bellamont arrived in



New York, as the successor of Governor Fletcher. **1701**  
 About this time, the American seas were much infested with pirates. Bellamont, before his departure from England, had received instructions to wage a war of extermination against them. He had already, when in England, in connection with several others, procured a vessel of war, placed it under the command of Capt. Kidd, and directed him to proceed first to New York, and then to cruise against the pirates. Kidd disobeyed his instructions, turned pirate himself, and for a long time ravaged the Atlantic and Indian oceans.

Who succeeded Fletcher?

What instructions did he receive in England?

What is said of Captain Kidd?

31. Three years after, appearing publicly in Boston, he was apprehended and sent to England, where he was tried and executed. Bellamont and his partners were accused of sharing in his plunder, but after an examination in the House of Commons, they were pronounced innocent.

32. On the death of Bellamont, in 1701, Lord Cornbury was appointed as his successor. Mean, profligate and unprincipled, he looked upon a residence in America as a happy escape from his creditors at home. His persecution of all religious sects except the Church of England, his indecent and vulgar manners, and his many acts of injustice and oppression, rendered him universally odious. The assemblies of New York and New Jersey, of which he was also governor in 1708, petitioned the queen for his removal. The request was complied with, and he was soon after thrown into prison by his creditors for debt, where he remained until the death of his father, when he exchanged his cell for a peerage and a seat in the House of Lords.

Who succeeded Bellamont?

What is said of Cornbury?

What of his future history?

**1741**

How  
long did  
Queen  
Anne's  
war con-  
tinue?

33. During Queen Anne's war, which broke out in 1702 and continued until 1713, and King George's war, which commenced in 1745, but few events of interest transpired in New York, which have not been already touched upon in connection with the colonial history of Massachusetts. The quiet of the country for many years was only disturbed by political contests, which would possess but little interest for the youthful mind.

1741.

What is  
said of  
the negro  
plot in  
New  
York?

34. In the year 1741, a supposed "negro plot" created great alarm in the city of New York. Robberies of a bold and daring character were often committed, and fires were of frequent occurrence, which were evidently the work of incendiaries. The suspicion of the citizens fell upon the slaves who resided among them. They were accused, by a number of abandoned females, of combining together to burn the city, and make one of their number governor. The excitement in a short time became so great, that, upon the evidence of persons of the most infamous character, a large number were arrested and confined in prison. When the time of trial arrived, so strong was the prejudice against the prisoners, that every lawyer in the city volunteered against them, and the poor victims of an unjust suspicion were compelled to endure the mockery of a trial, and be convicted upon evidence the most extravagant and contradictory. Fourteen were burned, eighteen hung, and seventy-one transported. When all this blood had been shed, and the apprehension of danger had subsided, men began to reflect calmly upon the evidence that had been advanced against the prisoners, and the con-

How ma-  
ny were  
exe-  
cuted?

Were  
they  
guilty?

clusion was that the plot originated in their own brains, and that they had executed innocent men. The negro plot in New York and Salem witchcraft in Massachusetts show into what extravagances men may be led, when their actions are uncontrollable by the calm dictates of reason. From the close of King George's war, in 1748, until the breaking out of the "French and Indian war," the inhabitants of New York were relieved from the burdens and distresses of hostilities. Mention will be made of that contest, in which all the colonies acted in concert, at a future period in our history.

1711

With what delusion can the negro plot be classed?

What is said of New York from the close of King George's war?

## CHAPTER VIII.

### NEW JERSEY.

1. The province of New Netherlands included within its limits the State of New Jersey, and, up to the time of the conquest of the whole of that country by the English, in 1664, its history is a part of the history of that colony. The first settlement within the limits of New Jersey, was made by the Danes, about the year 1624, at a place called Bergen; shortly afterward, several Dutch families settled themselves in the vicinity of New York. But little progress, however, had been made in settling this territory, until 1664, when a settlement was formed at Elizabethtown.

What is said of the early history of New Jersey?

Of its first settlement?

2. Shortly after, the Duke of York, having re-

**1664** ceived a grant from Charles II., of all lands within the province of New Netherlands, conveyed that portion of them lying between the Hudson and Delaware rivers, to Lord Berkeley and Sir George Carteret. This tract, in compliment to Sir George, who had been governor of the island of Jersey, was called New Jersey. A constitution, securing equal privileges and liberty of conscience to all, was formed by the proprietors, and Philip Carteret appointed governor. He arrived in 1665, and fixed the seat of government at Elizabethtown. The liberal spirit of the constitution, and the beauty of the climate, attracted many settlers from New England and New York. The population rapidly increased, and for a number of years, they enjoyed uninterrupted peace and prosperity.

To whom was this country granted by the Duke of York?

What is said of New Jersey under the administration of Carteret?

What troubles arose respecting land titles?

3. But at length domestic troubles arose, which, in a short time, assumed a serious character. The inhabitants who had purchased lands from the Indians, previous to their conveyance to the duke, refused to pay rent to the proprietors. Disputes were followed by confusion, and in 1672, the disaffected colonists displaced Philip Carteret, their governor, and transferred his office to the young and frivolous James Carteret, a son of Sir George. Philip Carteret, hastened to England, in search of new authority, while the colonists remained in the undisturbed possession of their farms.

What is said of the conquest and the restoration of the country and the government under the new charter?

4. In 1673, the Dutch re-conquered the country, and retained it until 1674, when it was restored by treaty. A new patent was then granted to the duke, who immediately appointed Andros governor over the re-united province. In 1675, Philip Car-

teret returned to New Jersey, and was gladly received by the inhabitants, who had become heartily weary of the tyranny of Andros. 1674

5. In 1674, Lord Berkeley sold his share of New Jersey to Fenwick, in trust for Billings and his assignees. Billings subsequently became embarrassed in his pecuniary affairs, and made an assignment of his claims on New Jersey to William Penn, Gawin Lawrie, and Nicholas Lewis. In 1676, the assignees of Billings divided the territory with Sir George Carteret, they taking the western, and he the eastern portion. The western proprietors divided their territory into one hundred lots, which were sold separately. They then gave the settlers a free constitution, under the title of *Concessions*, granting all the important privileges of civil and religious liberty.

Describe the frequent sales which were made of this territory.

6. The Duke of York continued to urge his claims to jurisdiction over New Jersey, to the great annoyance of the inhabitants, until 1680, when the question was referred to Sir William Jones, for his decision. The decision was in their favor, and the people finally succeeded in securing a formal recognition of their independence. In 1681, the Governor of West Jersey convened their first legislative assembly, when several laws were enacted, establishing the rights of the people and defining the power of the rulers.

How were they finally freed from the claims of the Duke of York?

7. In 1682, William Penn and eleven other persons of the society of friends, purchased of Sir George Carteret, the whole province of East New Jersey. Twelve other persons of different denominations, were then united with the purchasers,

What of New Jersey under Quaker administration?

1682 and Robert Barclay, author of the "Apology for the Quakers," appointed governor for life. Under his brief administration, a large number of emigrants arrived from Scotland.

What led  
to the  
surren-  
der of  
their gov-  
ernment  
to the  
crown?

1702.

What of  
the histo-  
ry of the  
State  
from this  
time?

8. The vast numbers of proprietors, and the frequent transfer and subdivision of shares, introduced confusion in land titles, which gave rise to long and angry disputes. At length, the proprietors, weary of contending, surrendered in 1702 their rights of government to the crown. The two divisions were united and joined to New York under the government of Lord Cornbury. The two provinces remained under the same governor, but possessed of distinct legislative assemblies until 1738, when, in compliance with the urgent request of the people of New Jersey, they were allowed a separate governor. From this period until the commencement of the Revolution, no event of historical interest occurred in New Jersey.

1682

## CHAPTER IX.

## DELAWARE.

1. The history of Delaware until its conquest by the Dutch, has already been given in connection with that of New York. It will therefore be unnecessary to refer to that period again. The settlements on the Delaware continued under the control of the Dutch, until 1664, when New Netherlands was conquered by the English. They were then considered a part of New York.

What is said of the early history of Delaware?

2. About the year 1682, William Penn purchased of the Duke of York the country at present comprised within the State of Delaware. This tract was called the "Territories," and was for twenty years governed as a part of Pennsylvania.

What important event occurred about 1682?

3. They were divided into three counties: New Castle, Kent and Sussex, each of which sent six delegates to the general assembly. These delegates, in 1703, being dissatisfied with the last charter which Penn had prepared, broke off from that colony, and formed a distinct assembly; but still remaining under the jurisdiction of the former proprietor.

What led to their separation from Pennsylvania?

4. Delaware was but little disturbed during the various Indian wars which harassed the country, and enjoyed peace and quiet until the breaking out of the Revolution, when her troops were foremost in fighting for the liberties of their country.

What is farther said of Delaware?

1681

## CHAPTER X.

## PENNSYLVANIA.

What is  
said of  
the grant  
to Penn?

1. The territory comprised within the limits of the State of Pennsylvania was granted in 1681, by Charles II., to William Penn, son of Admiral Penn, as a recompense for services which he had rendered the British nation.

What of  
the char-  
ter?

2. The charter constituted William Penn and his heirs proprietors of the province of Pennsylvania, and gave to him, his heirs and their deputies, power to make laws with the advice of the freemen, and to erect courts of justice. Wishing to dispose of his lands and found a colony, Penn now published a description of the country holding out many inducements for emigration. He offered the land at the rate of twenty pounds for every thousand acres, or to lease it to those who preferred for a yearly rent of a penny an acre. At these low rents, large tracts of land were sold, mostly to Quakers, of which denomination Penn was a member.

How did  
Penn dis-  
pose of  
his lands,  
and what  
is said of  
the first  
emigra-  
tion?

3. In the latter part of the same year, three ships carrying settlers sailed for Pennsylvania. Among their number was Markham, who was to act as deputy governor. On their arrival, they selected, as a proper place for their settlement, a position above the confluence of the Delaware and the Schuylkill.

4. In the following year, Penn published the frame of government for Pennsylvania, and a code



of laws, which had been approved by the emigrants in England. To prevent future claims to the province by the Duke of York, he obtained a release from him of all lands under his control in Pennsylvania, and also a grant of the territory comprised within the present State of Delaware.

1682  
What did Penn publish in the following year?

What did he obtain from the Duke of York?

5. In the latter part of September, accompanied by about two thousand emigrants, he set sail for America, and early in the following November landed at New Castle. The next day possession of the "Territories" was legally given him by the magistrates.

When did he visit America?

From New Castle, Penn ascended the Delaware to Chester, and from thence proceeded in an open boat to the beautiful bank on which the city of Philadelphia was soon to rise.

6. Shortly after his arrival, surrounded by a few friends in the habiliments of peace, he met the numerous delegation of the Lenni Lenape tribes under a large elm tree, and entered into a treaty with them which ever remained unbroken. "We meet," said he in addressing them, "on the broad pathway of good faith, and good will; no advantage shall be taken on either side, but all shall be openness and love. The friendship between me and you, I will not compare to a chain, for that the rains might rust or the falling tree might break. We are the same as if one man's body were to be divided into two parts; we are all one flesh and blood."

What took place immediately after his arrival?

Describe his meeting and treaty with the Indians.

7. The children of the forest were touched by the sacred doctrine, and renounced their guile and their revenge. "We will live," said they, "in love with William Penn and his children, as long as the

**1682** moon and the sun shall endure." After having received the stipulated price for their lands, and a copy of the treaty, which they were requested to preserve, they retired to their wigwams, and long after would repeat to their children, or to the stranger, the words of William Penn.

How did the Indians ever regard the Quakers?

8. In nearly all the other American colonies, Indian hostilities and massacres were of frequent occurrence ; but in Pennsylvania, they lived in harmony with the whites, and were inspired with a feeling of affection for those whose conduct gave evidence that they were their sincere friends. During the whole period that the other colonies suffered from the vengeance of the red man, not a drop of Quaker blood was shed by an Indian. Shortly after the formation of this treaty, Penn laid out the plan of a city, which he called Philadelphia, or the city of "Brotherly Love."

The plan of what city did he lay out?

1683.

What were the regulations of the second assembly?

What was the result of these regulations?

When did Penn return to England, and in whose hands did he leave the government?

9. In this city a second assembly was held in March, 1683, and a second charter granted, differing in some respects from the first. To prevent lawsuits, three arbitrators were to be chosen by the county court, to settle differences between man and man ; children were to be taught some useful trade, and no one was to be molested for religious opinions. These wise regulations attracted many emigrants, so that, in four years from the grant to Penn, the province contained twenty settlements, and Philadelphia two thousand inhabitants. In August, 1684, he returned to England, leaving the province under the administration of five commissioners, chosen by the people.

10. Soon after his return, James II. ascended the

throne. For many years he had been his father's and his own friend, and when, a few years afterward, he was deprived of his throne, Penn was sent to prison for his attachment to the cause of the unfortunate monarch. In a short time he regained the good opinion of King William, was released from prison, and restored to his rights. The government of his province, during his confinement, had been administered by Governor Fletcher, a man appointed by the king.

1694

What befel Penn after his return to England?

1694.

Who governed his province in his absence?

11. In 1699, Penn again visited his colony. Finding the people dissatisfied with their old charter, in 1701 he prepared another, still more liberal than the former. The colony of Delaware disapproving of the charter, separated from Pennsylvania, and were allowed a distinct assembly.

When did Penn return?

When did he form another charter?

What did Delaware do?

12. Penn soon after returned to England, and the affairs of the province from that time were administered by deputy governors. In the early part of the Revolutionary war, a new constitution was adopted by the people, excluding the proprietary from all share in the government. His claim to rents was afterward purchased for 580,000 dollars.

What is said of the future history of the colony?

1632

## CHAPTER XI.

## MARYLAND.

To whom was Maryland first granted?

Who obtained the grant after his death, and what name did he give it?

What were the Calverts?

Who was appointed governor of the province, and where was the first settlement commenced?

What led to the rapid increase of population in Maryland?

1. The territory of Maryland was granted in 1632, by Charles I., to Sir George Calvert (whose title was Lord Baltimore); but before the charter was completed, he died. Cecil Calvert, his eldest son, and heir to his estate and title, obtained the grant intended for his father. The country was called Maryland, in honor of Henrietta Maria, the Queen of England. The Calverts, father and son, were Roman Catholics, and their design in founding a colony in America was, to furnish a place of refuge to their religious friends who suffered from persecution.

2. Near the close of the year 1633, Leonard Calvert, who had received the appointment of governor of the province from his brother Cecil, set sail for America, accompanied by about two hundred emigrants, mostly Roman Catholics. They arrived in March 1634, and commenced their settlement on St. Mary's river, about ten miles from its junction with the Potomac, at an Indian village which they purchased from the natives, and to which they gave the name of St. Mary's.

3. The ample provisions of their charter, and the mildness of the climate, attracted many emigrants, not only from Europe, but from the other colonies in America. From the south churchmen drove puritans, from the north puritans drove churchmen,

into her borders, where all were received and protected. The charter granted to the emigrant religious freedom, and the power to make their own laws, independent of all influence or action of the crown. 1635

4. In 1635, the first assembly of Maryland met at St. Mary's. During the same year troubles arose from the resistance of William Clayborne, who had, prior to the grant of Maryland to Lord Baltimore, received a license from the legislature of Virginia, to traffic in the country with the Indians. This, he said, made him independent of the Maryland government, which he refused to obey. A bloody skirmish followed, and several lives were lost, but Clayborne and his party were defeated. Clayborne fled to Virginia, and when reclaimed by Maryland, was sent by the governor of that colony to England for trial. The Maryland assembly convicted him of treason, and confiscated his estates. He applied to the king for redress, but was dismissed, without obtaining any order in his favor..

When did the first assembly meet?

What was the cause of the troubles which shortly after arose?

What is said of Clayborne?

1638.

5. At first the people of Maryland assembled together for passing laws, each freeman having a right to come and vote, but in 1639, the colony had increased to such an extent, that the people adopted a representative form of government. In 1642, hostilities commenced with the Indians, which were not appeased till 1644. During the civil war between the king and parliament, Clayborne embraced the cause of the latter, and in 1645, returned to Maryland, and fomented an insurrection against its rulers, who were attached to the royal cause.

When did the people adopt a representative form of government?

What hostilities occurred in 1642?

What is said of Clayborne during the civil war in England, 1646

**1651**

The governor was obliged to flee to Virginia, and confusion reigned in the colony. The next year the insurrection was suppressed, and tranquillity restored.

What division was made in the legislature in 1650?

What is said of Maryland while the Catholics were in the ascendancy?

6. In 1650, the legislature of Maryland was divided into two branches—the delegates, chosen by the people, constituting the lower house; and the governor and council, appointed by the proprietor, the upper house. It is worthy of remark, that during the whole period that the Catholics held the ascendancy, no law was passed, interfering in the least with religious freedom. Maryland was a place of refuge for the persecuted of every religious denomination.

To whom was the government intrusted during the reign of Cromwell?

What disturbances occurred in Maryland?

How were the Catholics persecuted under the new government?

1660.

What took place on the restoration?

7. After the parliament had triumphed over the king, and Cromwell commenced his rule as “Protector of the Commonwealth,” government sent out commissioners to govern the colony within the Bay of Chesapeake. Among these was Clayborne, who had been at the bottom of nearly all the difficulties which had occurred in Maryland. Disturbance and confusion ensued, and Calvert, the governor appointed by the proprietor, was obliged to surrender the government, and the Catholics, after having settled the country, were shamefully persecuted in it by the English authorities. It was ordained by the assembly, that persons professing the Catholic religion should not be considered within the protection of the laws. At the restoration in 1660, Philip Calvert was appointed governor, and the ancient order of things restored.

8. In 1675, Lord Baltimore died, and was succeeded by his son Charles, who possessed the same

amiable qualities which had rendered his father 1689  
 respected and beloved. At the time of the revolution in England, in 1689, the repose of Maryland was again disturbed. A rumor having been circulated, that the Catholics had leagued with the Indians to destroy all the Protestants in the province, an armed association was formed for the defense of the Protestant faith, and for asserting the rights of King William.

9. At first the Catholics endeavored to oppose by force this association, but were finally compelled to abdicate the government. From this time the authority was exercised in the name of King William, and for twenty-seven years, the crown retained the controll of the province. In 1716, the proprietor was restored to his rights, and Maryland continued a proprietary government from that time, until the commencement of the Revolution, when a constitution was adopted, and the claims of Lord Baltimore to jurisdiction or property rejected.

When did Baltimore die, and what is said of his successor?

1689.

What occasioned the disturbance in 1689.

What did the Catholics do?

In whose name was the government then administered?

When was the proprietor restored to his rights, and how long did he retain possession of the government?

1630

## CHAPTER XII.

## NORTH CAROLINA.

What is said of the patent granted to Sir Robert Heath?

1. In 1630, Sir Robert Heath, attorney-general of Charles I., obtained a patent for all the country between the 30th and 36th degrees of north latitude, extending from the Atlantic ocean to the South sea, by the name of Carolina. Heath's patent led to no settlements, and was finally declared void. Between 1640 and 1650, a number of families suffering from religious persecution in Virginia, fled to Carolina, and without a grant from any quarter occupied that portion of the State which lies north of Albermarle sound.

When and by whom was Carolina first explored and settled?

What is said of the colony from Massachusetts?

2. In 1661, a number of emigrants from Massachusetts formed another settlement, near Cape Fear river, but the land being unproductive, and the Indians hostile, they two years afterward abandoned it. The place, however, was in a short time supplied by emigrants from Barbadoes, over whom Sir John Yeamans was appointed governor. In 1663, the territory which had been before granted to Heath, was given to Lord Clarendon and seven others, and in the same year, a government under Mr. Drummond was established over the settlement in the vicinity of Albermarle sound, which was called the "*Albermarle* county colony."

What of the colony from Barbadoes?

What of the Albermarle county colony?

Why did the proprietors determine to establish a form of government?

3. The proprietors, judging from the richness of the soil and the beauty of the climate, that North Carolina would soon be extensively settled, determin-



ed to establish a form of government, commensurate 1669  
 in its dignity with the auspices of the colony, and  
 the vastness of the country. They accordingly  
 deputed the Earl of Shaftsbury, the most active  
 of their number, to frame for the dawning States a  
 perfect constitution, worthy to endure throughout  
 all ages. Who  
were the  
framers  
of this  
constitu-  
tion?

4. Shaftsbury engaged to assist him the cele-  
 brated John Locke, whose political writings have  
 been much admired. The constitution which was What is  
said of it?  
 formed was little relished by the colonists, as it de-  
 prived them almost entirely of political freedom,  
 establishing a government to be administered by  
 lords and noblemen, and placing every office of  
 importance out of the reach of the common people.

5. The attempt to enforce this, to the colonists, 1670.  
 odious constitution, created an insurrection, in which  
 the principal officers of government were imprison-  
 ed, and which could only be subdued by the threat  
 of bringing out an armed force against them. After  
 an opposition to the constitution of more than  
 twenty years, it was finally abrogated by the pro-  
 prietors themselves. How did  
the peo-  
ple like  
the con-  
stitution?

6. In 1670, a settlement was made at Charlestown, What is  
said of  
the set-  
tlement  
made in  
1670?  
 within the present limits of South Carolina, by  
 William Sayle, but he dying soon after, was suc-  
 ceeded by Sir John Yeamans, the governor of Cla- 1671.  
 rendon. Many of the inhabitants of Clarendon  
 removed to the new settlement, which being remote  
 from Albermarle, the proprietors established a sep-  
 arate government over it, and thence arose the dis-  
 tinctive appellations of North and South Carolina.

7. In 1683, Seth Sothel, one of the proprietors, Why  
was a  
separate  
govern-  
ment  
formed,  
and what  
distinct-  
ive ap-  
pella-  
tions  
were  
formed?

**1707** was appointed chief magistrate. He was avaricious, hard-hearted, and tyrannical. He cared not for truth, and eagerly plundered the people under the cloak of law. The colonists, after having endured his oppression six years, banished him from the colony.

What is said of Seth Sothel?

1689.

8. Ludwell, the next governor, and John Archdale his successor, were deservedly popular and beloved, for under their administrations the colonists prospered and were happy.

What of Ludwell and Archdale?

In 1707, a company of French emigrants who had formerly settled in Virginia, arrived in Carolina. In 1710, they were followed by a hundred German families from the Rhine, who sought refuge in the same part of the province, from the religious persecution which harassed them at home. To each of these the proprietors granted one hundred acres of land, upon which they settled and were soon in the enjoyment of ease and competency.

What emigrants arrived in 1707 and 1710?

What grant was made to them?

**1712.** 9. In 1712, the Tuscarora and Coree Indians, smarting under recent injuries and alarmed at the increase of the white population, formed a conspiracy for destroying the colony by a general massacre. Twelve hundred warriors united in the plot, and in the same night attacked the different settlements. Their measures were taken with such secrecy, that no alarm was spread until the work of death commenced. In one night, one hundred and thirty persons were butchered. A few escaped and hastened to South Carolina for assistance.

Give an account of the conspiracy formed by the Tuscarora and Coree Indians?

10. Colonel Barnwell, with nearly a thousand men, was immediately sent by Governor Craven to

their assistance. After a fatiguing march, they met the enemy, defeated them and then entered into a treaty of peace. But in a few days the treaty was broken and hostilities again commenced. At length Colonel Moore arrived from South Carolina with forty whites and eight hundred friendly Indians, besieged them in a fort near Catechny river, and took eight hundred prisoners. The remainder of the Tuscaroras, in 1713, migrated to the north, and joined the Huron confederacy. In 1715, the Corees sued for peace, and afterward continued friendly.

What is said of the progress and end of the war?

1715.

11. Until 1729, the two Carolinas had been under the control of the same proprietors, but they were now separated, and royal governments entirely unconnected with each other established over each colony. Emigrants constantly arrived from the north, and from different parts of Europe; the settlements extended far back into the wilderness, and the colonists at peace with the Indians, continued to enjoy quiet and prosperity until they were involved in the troubles of the Revolution.

1729.

What change took place in the government in 1729?

1670

## CHAPTER XIII.

## SOUTH CAROLINA.

What is  
said of  
the first  
colony in  
South  
Carolina?

1. The whole territory of South Carolina was, as we have already stated, included in the charter granted to Lord Clarendon and seven others in 1663. No permanent settlement was made until 1670, when a company of emigrants sent out by the proprietors, under the direction of William Sayle, commenced, on a neck of land between Ashley and Cooper rivers, the erection of Old Charlestown.

What  
emi-  
grants  
arrived  
soon af-  
ter they  
insti-  
tuted a  
form of  
govern-  
ment?

2. The emigrants had hardly landed, before they appointed delegates to their colonial parliament, and instituted a government on the basis of liberty. The colony from this time rapidly increased in population. Within a year after their first arrival, many of the Dutch on account of the conquest of New York removed to Charlestown. They were speedily followed by emigrants from Holland. Puritans in England gladly sought a refuge in Carolina, where they could avoid the vice of the King's licentious court. The tyranny of Louis XIV. induced many French Protestants to seek a home beyond the Atlantic, where their worship would be tolerated, and their civil rights respected.

What  
occurred  
in 1671?

3. In 1671, Sir John Yeamans was appointed governor. He brought from Barbadoes several African slaves; thus, South Carolina alone of the thirteen original States was from its cradle a planting State,

with slave labor. The number of blacks increased so rapidly, that in a few years they numbered more than the whites. 1680

4. The situation of Charlestown not being convenient for commercial purposes, most of the inhabitants removed in 1680 to Oyster Point, where they laid the foundation of the present city of Charlestown. The same year the Wistoes, a powerful tribe of Indians, commenced hostilities against the whites, but in the following year peace was restored.

Why did the people remove to Oyster Point?

What occurred in the same year?

5. In 1690, Seth Sothel one of the proprietors, who had been previously banished from North Carolina for his corrupt conduct, suddenly appeared at Charlestown, and aided by a large party, assumed the reins of government. But his conduct was soon found to be intolerable, and in two years he was removed from office.

What is said of Seth Sothel in 1690?

6. The French Protestants who had been driven from France by the tyranny of Louis XIV., up to the present time, possessed no voice in legislative matters, but now their good conduct induced the proprietors to extend to them the right of representation. This the English settlers strongly opposed, and such was the general turbulence and disorder respecting this and other matters, that in 1695, John Archdale, a pious Quaker, was sent over as governor, with authority to redress all grievances. He succeeded in restoring order, but was compelled to exclude the French Protestants from all concern in the legislature. In a few years, however, they were admitted to all the rights of citizens and freemen.

Why had the French Protestants left France?

1696.

How were they regarded by the English settlers?

What is said of Archdale's government?

7. In 1702, soon after the commencement of the 1702.

**1702** war between England and Spain, Governor Moore proposed an expedition against the Spanish settlement at St. Augustine, but the attempt which was made with 1,200 men, was entirely unsuccessful, and cost the colony about twenty-six thousand dollars. Moore, on his return, to silence the reproaches of the people of Charlestown, marched with a large force against the Apalachian Indians, who had at different times manifested their hostility to the whites. In this expedition, he was successful, and after having burned many of their towns and villages, and sold several of their number as slaves, he compelled them to submit to the government of the colony.

Give an account of the expedition against St. Augustine.

What of the expedition against the Apalachian Indians?

1704.

8. According to the constitution, religious liberty was to be freely enjoyed by all; but Governor Moore, by bribing the voters, succeeded in procuring the passage of a law, establishing the Episcopal religion, and excluding dissenters from a seat in the assembly. The lords, however, disapproved of the law, and Queen Anne shortly after declared it void. The war between England and Spain still continued, and in 1706, a Spanish squadron appeared off the harbor of Charlestown; but on the enemy attempting to land, they were driven back with considerable loss, when they took a final leave of the coast.

What change did Gov. Moore make in religious matters?

Why did the Spanish send a squadron to America?

1715.

9. The colonists now remained in peace for several years, but in 1715 their quiet was broken by the horrors of Indian warfare. The Yamassees, a brave and warlike people inhabiting the interior, had long meditated the total destruction of the whites. They had engaged in the conspiracy all

Give an account of the Indian war in 1715.

the tribes from Cape Fear to Florida, and in April 1715 commenced their attack. Ninety persons were massacred at Port Royal, and other attacks no less bloody made in different parts of the country.

10. Governor Craven, at the head of twelve hundred men, marched against the savages, and the tide of war was speedily changed. Straggling parties of the Indians were cut off, and the great body of the enemy totally routed in a pitched battle at Saltcatchers. Most of them fled to Florida, where they were welcomed by the Spaniards. The war with the Yamassees was now closed, and a heavy public debt contracted. The proprietors not only refused to pay any portion of this debt, which had been incurred in the defense of the colony, but deprived the emigrants of the land from which the Indians had been driven.

11. This tyrannical conduct led to frequent contentions; the emigrants refused to submit to the authority of the proprietors, and appointed John Moore governor in the name of the king. They shortly after obtained a hearing before the king, when it was declared the proprietors had forfeited their charter, and the colony from thenceforth became a royal province. In 1729 it was separated from North Carolina. From this time to the breaking out of the Revolution but little occurred of interest.

1732

## CHAPTER XIV.

## GEORGIA.

1. A portion of the territory of Georgia had been included in Carolina, but previous to the surrender of that charter, no settlement had been made in the country. In 1732, a number of benevolent gentlemen in England formed the plan of planting the sunny clime with those, who, in England, had neither land nor shelter, and those on the continent to whom, as Protestants, bigotry denied freedom of worship at home.

What plan was formed in 1732?

2. At the head of this company stood James Oglethorpe, a member of the British parliament, a man of a heroic mind and merciful disposition. Through his influence a charter was obtained in 1732 from George II., erecting the country between the Savannah and Altamaha, due west to the Pacific, into the province of Georgia, and placing it for twenty-one years under the guardianship of a corporation "in trust for the poor." In November of the same year, Oglethorpe, with about one hundred and twenty emigrants, sailed for America, and on their arrival commenced the foundation of their town, on the high bluff where now stands Savannah.

What is said of Oglethorpe?

What grant did he receive from George II.?

What town was settled in 1732?

3. In the following June, the chiefs of the Creek nation assembled at Savannah, and bade the strangers welcome to the lands which their nation did not use. One of them in token of sincerity, laid eight bundles of buck-skins at Oglethorpe's feet;

How did the Indians receive the settlers?



a treaty of peace was signed, by which the English claimed sovereignty over the land of the Creeks as far south as St. Johns, and the chieftains departed loaded with presents. 1733

4. The poverty and indolence of the new settlers, most of whom were the refuse of cities, for a time prevented the colony from prospering, but on the trustees extending their invitation, which had heretofore been confined to the poor and persecuted, to all who might wish to settle in Georgia, a large number from Scotland, Germany, and Switzerland, of a more respectable class, joined the colony, which from this time assumed a more flourishing condition. In the regulations adopted by the trustees, the introduction of ardent spirits was prohibited, and no slaves were allowed in the colony.

How did the next company of emigrants differ from the first?

What wise laws did they adopt?

5. Oglethorpe in 1734, after a residence in America of about fifteen months, sailed for England. In 1736, he again returned to his colony, with a new company of three hundred emigrants, among whom were John and Charles Wesley. John Wesley came out as a minister of the gospel, but his severe habits of conduct and opinion brought him into difficulties, and at the end of the year he returned home. 1736.

What new company arrived with Oglethorpe?

6. Two years after, George Whitfield, another eminent divine, came to Georgia, for the purpose of founding an asylum, where orphan children could be educated in the knowledge of Christianity. The house, during his life, did not flourish, and after his death was entirely abandoned.

For what purpose did Whitfield come to America?

1740.

What did Oglethorpe do on the commencement of the English and Spanish war?

On the commencement of the war in 1739 between England and Spain, Oglethorpe received a commission as general in the British army, and at

**1740** the head of two thousand men, from Virginia and the Carolinas, marched against Florida. Two Spanish forts were taken, but meeting with so obstinate a resistance in his attack upon St. Augustine, he was compelled to raise the siege and return to Georgia.

With  
what  
success?

Give an  
account  
of the  
Spanish  
expedi-  
tion  
against  
Georgia.

1742.

Of Ogle-  
thorpe's  
move-  
ments.

7. Two years afterward, the Spanish government in retaliation resolved on invading Georgia. It collected its forces at Cuba, and a large fleet sailed toward the mouth of the St. Mary's. Oglethorpe having been informed of the proposed invasion, made preparations for a vigorous defense. He assembled his forces consisting of about seven hundred men at Frederica, on the island of St. Simon, and awaited the attack.

8. On the last of June, the Spanish fleet of thirty-six vessels, having on board about three thousand men, entered St. Simon's harbor. And notwithstanding the resistance of General Oglethorpe, sailed up the river Altamaha, and landed upon the island. In attempting to advance toward Frederica by a road leading through a morass and dense wood, the Spaniards fell into an ambush, which had been prepared for them, and were compelled to retreat with the loss of nearly two hundred men. The swamp from that time received the name of "The Bloody Marsh."

Give a  
farther  
account  
of the  
war.

What  
was the  
result of  
the expedi-  
tion?

9. Despairing of success, and weakened by divisions—deceived, too, by an ingenious stratagem—the Spaniards, early in July, re-embarked leaving a quantity of ammunition and guns behind them. Thus was Georgia delivered, with a trifling loss, from the horrors of a bloody invasion. The Span-

iards were so mortified at the result of the expedition, that the commander on his return was tried by a court martial, and dismissed from the service. **1743**

10. In the following year, Oglethorpe returned to England, never again to behold the colony, with which the disinterested toils of ten years had identified his fame. For ten years longer, the colony remained under the management of the trustees, but their regulations were often unwise, and created much dissatisfaction. At length in 1752, they surrendered their charter to the crown, and Georgia became a royal province, having the same government as the Carolinas.

What is said in conclusion of Oglethorpe?

1752.

What change was made in the government?

1748

## CHAPTER XV.

## FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR.

What is  
said of  
the treaty  
of Aix-  
la-Cha-  
pelle?

1. After long years of strife, of repose, and of strife renewed, England and France agreed to be at peace. The treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle, concluded between those two nations in 1748, for a time restored tranquillity to America. That treaty was negotiated by the ablest statesmen in Europe. They believed themselves the arbiters of mankind, the pacificators of the world, and supposed they were establishing the colonial system on a basis which would endure for ages.

Where  
was  
Wash-  
ington  
born, and  
what is  
said of  
his early  
life?

2. At the time of the congress of Aix-la-Chapelle, the woods of Virginia sheltered the youthful George Washington. Born by the side of the Potomac, beneath the roof of a Westmoreland farmer, almost from infancy his lot had been the lot of an orphan. No academy had welcomed him to its shades; no college crowned him with its honors; to read, to write, to cipher, these had been his degrees in knowledge. And now at sixteen years of age, in quest of an honest maintenance, encountering incredible toil, wandering over the Alleghanies and along the banks of the Shenandoah, among skin-clad savages, with their scalps and rattles—holding a bearskin a splendid couch, this stripling surveyor in the woods, with no companion but his unlettered associates, and no implements of science but his compass and chain, con-

trusted strongly with the imperial magnificence of the congress of Aix-la-Chapelle. 1753

3. And yet God had chosen not Kaunitz nor Newcastle, not a monarch of the house of Hapsburgh nor of Hanover, but the Virginia stripling to give an impulse to human affairs, and as far as events can depend on an individual, had placed the rights and destinies of countless millions in the keeping of the widow's son. Yes, the voice of that boy was soon to be heard in the din of battle, and the mind of that stripling surveyor, strengthened and matured by years, was to guide the steps of his suffering country through a long and bloody war, and finally lay the foundation of the noblest structure of human freedom ever designed by man.

What of his after life?

4. The colonists had but short time to reap the benefits of peace, after the conclusion of the treaty already referred to, when their prospects were again clouded, and the sound of approaching war filled the land with anxiety and gloom. After an interval of about eight years, from 1748 to 1756, Great Britain formally declared war against France.

When was war again declared against France?

5. The causes leading to this war were the alleged encroachments of the French on the frontiers of the colonies in America belonging to the English crown. The possessions of the French in the north reached from the mouth of the St. Lawrence to Montreal; and they had erected trading houses on Lake Ontario. They had planted New Orleans on the south, and having discovered the Mississippi, claimed the vast tract of country watered by it and its tributary streams. At length they determined to connect their northern and southern pos-

What causes led to this war?

What was the extent of the French claim?

How did they intend to connect their northern and southern settlements?

**1753** sessions, by a line of posts extending along the frontiers of the English, from Lake Ontario to the Ohio, and down the Ohio and Mississippi, to New Orleans.

**What grant did the English receive from the king?** 6. While busily engaged in the prosecution of this design, a company of traders from London and Virginia having obtained of the king a grant of six hundred thousand acres of land, on and near the Ohio river, erected trading houses there for the purpose of carrying on the fur trade with the Indians. The governor of Canada, fearing that the plan of this company might prevent their communication between Canada and Louisiana, seized some of these traders, and sent them prisoners to Canada.

**What violent measures followed on the part of the French?** 7. The company complained bitterly of this encroachment on their rights to Governor Dinwiddie, of Virginia, who immediately sent a letter to the French commandant, to demand the reason of this hostile conduct, and to summon the French to evacuate the forts in that region. This message was intrusted to George Washington, who, at the age of twenty-one, began that line of service which ended in the independence of his country.

**What message was sent to the French commandant, and by whom?** 8. On the 31st of October, he left Williamsburg, Virginia, to proceed on his dangerous journey. The distance he was obliged to travel, through the forests and over the most rugged parts of the Alleghanies, was about five hundred and sixty miles. On the way, his horse failed; he nevertheless proceeded with a single companion on foot, with a gun in his hand, and his shoulder burthened with a pack. On the 13th of December, he reached the French fort,

**Give an account of his journey.**

on French creek, and delivered his letter to the commander. 1754

9. In a few days he received his answer and returned to Williamsburg. The reply of the commandant was, that he had taken possession of the country, under the direction of the governor-general of Canada, to whom he would transmit the message, and whose orders he should obey. This reply not being satisfactory, the British ministry, on being made acquainted with the determination of the French, instructed the Virginians to resist the encroachments by force of arms.

What was the reply of the French commandant?

What measures were taken in consequence of this answer?

10. Troops were accordingly raised in Virginia, which were joined by an independent company from South Carolina, amounting in all to about four hundred men. The command of the expedition was given to Washington, who in April, 1754, marched into the territory in dispute. Meeting at Great Meadows a French force that had been sent out to intercept his retreat, he attacked and defeated them. At this place he erected Fort Necessity, and after having been reinforced with troops from New York and Carolina, he proceeded toward Fort Du Quesne, situated at the confluence of the Alleghany and Monongahela rivers.

Who commanded this expedition?

Whither did he proceed?

11. Hearing that De Villiers was approaching from this fort at the head of nine hundred men, he thought best to retire to Fort Necessity and await reinforcements. Here the enemy, one thousand five hundred strong, soon appeared, and commenced a furious attack on the fort. After an engagement of several hours, De Villiers offered honorable terms

With what success?

**1754** of capitulation, which Washington accepted, and returned with his troops to Virginia.

For what purpose did delegates assemble at Albany?

12. In the same year, delegates from seven of the colonies assembled at Albany for the purpose of forming a treaty of friendship with the Six Nations. After accomplishing this business, they proceeded to adopt a *plan of union*, similar in its construction to the present Constitution of the United States, to be submitted to the colonial legislatures and to parliament for their approval. This plan was rejected by parliament, because they considered it gave too much power to the people. It was rejected by the colonies, because it placed too much power in the hands of the king.

What is said of the plan of union proposed?

How did England already view the colonies?

13. England was already jealous of the colonial assemblies, and saw in them a spirit which, unless checked in its embryo state, might soon become too powerful for her control.

The colonies having failed in their plan of union, England determined to carry on the war with the French, which was now inevitable, with her own troops, aided by such of the colonists as chose to join them.

When did Gen. Braddock arrive, and what is said of him?

14. In the spring of 1754, Général Braddock arrived from Ireland, with a large force of English troops, with the authority of commander-in-chief over the English and colonial forces in America. Shortly after his arrival, the governors of the several provinces met at his request to make arrangements for the ensuing campaign. Three expeditions were resolved on, one against Fort du Quesne, to be commanded by Braddock; a second against

What three expeditions were resolved upon?



Niagara, under Governor Shirley ; and a third 1754  
against Crown Point, under General Johnson.

15. While preparations were making for these expeditions, a plan, which had been previously formed for attacking the French in Nova Scotia, was carried into effect. In May, Gens. Monckton and Winslow at the head of about three thousand men sailed from Boston, and in June arrived at their place of destination. The resistance of the enemy was slight, and the English in a short time gained possession of the whole province, with the loss of only three men.

16. The preparations of General Braddock in Virginia proceeded slowly, owing to the difficulty of obtaining horses, wagons, and provisions, so that it was on the tenth of June before he was able to leave Fort Cumberland. Wishing to proceed as rapidly as possible toward Fort du Quesne, he marched on with twelve hundred troops, leaving the baggage under the command of Col. Dunbar, with directions to follow as rapidly as possible.

17. Braddock was a brave man, possessed of great military skill ; but educated in the science of war as then taught in Europe, he knew but little of Indian warfare. He was strict in the camp, but his strictness was tinged with severity, and his severity approached to arrogance. Unfortunately for him, he entertained the most supreme contempt for the colonial troops, and the advice of the American officers ; so that when Washington, who was his aid-de-camp, suggested the propriety of employing the Indians as scouting and advance parties, he disclaimed the advice, which, if followed,

What previous plan was undertaken?

Why was Braddock delayed in his preparations?

What is said of Gen. Braddock?

How did he treat the advice offered by Washington?

**1755** would have saved his army, and changed a shameful defeat into a glorious victory.

What was the consequence of his rashness?

18. Taking none of the necessary precautions to insure his safety, on the 9th of July, within a few miles of the fort, he fell into an ambush of French and Indians. The English troops, panic struck as they heard the war-whoop of the Indians, broke their ranks, and would have fled, but Braddock rallied them and sought to preserve a regular order of battle; thus were they kept cooped up like sheep—fair marks for their unseen enemy.

What is said of the battle?

19. The slaughter was dreadful. Every officer on horseback excepting Washington was shot down; and he, riding over every part of the field, had two horses shot under him, and four balls lodged in his coat. The Indians afterward asserted that they had repeatedly fired at him with rifles which never missed the mark before; but at length they were convinced that he was shielded by the Great Spirit, and that no balls could harm him. God preserved his life to be a leader in the great struggle of his country for liberty.

Of Washington during the battle?

Of Braddock?

20. Braddock, undismayed amid the continual shower of bullets, encouraged his men by his countenance and example. At length, after having had three horses shot under him, he received a mortal wound. After his fall, the regular troops fled in confusion, and were only saved from complete destruction by the coolness of the bravest provincials under the command of Washington, who covered their retreat. Sixty-four officers out of eighty-five, and more than half of the privates were killed or wounded. The army continued to retreat until

What saved the army from total destruction?

How many were killed or wounded?

it reached Fort Cumberland. Col. Dunbar, on whom the command devolved, then withdrew the regulars to Philadelphia, leaving the frontiers of Virginia exposed to the attack of the French and Indians. 1755

21. The expedition against Niagara, under Governor Shirley, met with so many delays, that they did not reach Oswego until late in August, and then the autumnal rains setting in, and the Indian allies deserting the camp, Governor Shirley thought it expedient to relinquish the design. What is said of the expedition against Niagara?

22. The troops for the expedition against Crown Point, numbering about six thousand, under the command of General Johnson, assembled in Albany the last of June, where they were joined by the Mohawks under their sachem Hendrick. In July they were collected at the carrying place, between the Hudson river and Lake George, under General Lyman, the second in command, when a small fort was built and named Fort Edward. In the latter part of August, General Johnson arrived, and taking command, removed his forces to the head of Lake George, for the purpose of attacking a fort which the enemy were erecting at Ticonderoga. What of the expedition against Crown Point?

23. Shortly after his arrival at this place, he was attacked by the Baron Dieskau, who, at the head of two thousand French and Indians, was proceeding from Crown Point to attack Fort Edward, when he received intelligence of the position of Johnson, and changed his route to surprise him. The suddenness of the attack at first caused the Americans to waver; but soon rallying, they repulsed the foe with great slaughter. The Baron, pale and bleed- What is farther said of it?

Why did Dieskau change his route?

**1755** ing, was found by a soldier near the close of the battle, sitting against a tree. While feeling in his pocket for his watch for the purpose of surrendering it, the soldier, supposing him to be in search of a pistol, fired and killed him. The poor remains of his army halted in its flight at French mountain, where they were the next day cut off by a detachment from Fort Edward, and their dead bodies thrown into a lake, since called the "Bloody Pond." General Johnson having left garrisons at Forts William Henry and Edward, retired to Albany and dispersed his army to their respective provinces.

What was the fate of Dieskau?

Of his army?

1756.

When was war formally declared?

What was determined at a council of governors in Albany?

What commanders were appointed?

What is said of both officers?

24. Although this bloody warfare had continued for a considerable length of time in America, war was not formally declared by Great Britain until May, 1756, and by France until the following month. At a council of governors held in Albany, it was determined to raise from the several colonies twenty-one thousand men, and to direct their energies during the year toward the reduction of Crown Point, Niagara, and Fort du Quesne.

25. Lord Loudon was appointed by the crown commander-in-chief of all forces in America; but owing to necessary delay, General Abercrombie preceded him and took the command. Abercrombie arrived in June, but thinking the forces in readiness too small for the emergency, deemed it prudent to await the arrival of Loudon, which took place in July. Both officers were inefficient, and by their delays allowed the French not only time to strengthen their posts, but to attack those of the English.

26. Early in August, the Marquis Montcalm crossed

Lake Ontario, with more than five thousand French and Indians, and with between thirty and forty pieces of cannon, attacked Fort Ontario on the east side of the river, at Oswego. The garrison in a short time, finding their number reduced to fourteen hundred men, and their commander, Col. Mercer slain, were forced to capitulate. One hundred and thirty-four pieces of cannon, with a large amount of military stores and several ships in the harbor, fell into the hands of the enemy.

1756

Give an account of Montcalm's expedition?

What loss did the English suffer at Fort Ontario?

27. In June 1757, Lord Loudon sailed from New York, with six thousand regular troops, to attempt the capture of Louisburg. On the 30th of the same month, he arrived at Halifax, where he was reinforced by a naval armament under Admiral Holburn, but learning that a French fleet had arrived and that the fort was strongly garrisoned, he abandoned the expedition, and returned to New York.

1757.

What is said of Lord Loudon's expedition in 1757?

Why did he abandon it?

28. In the mean time, Montcalm had collected his forces at Ticonderoga, marched against Fort William Henry, and compelled it to surrender. The garrison were to be allowed to march out with the honors of war, and rejoin their countrymen; but the Indians violated the stipulation, and butchered a great number of them. It is said that Montcalm endeavored to prevent the massacre, but he was held responsible for the act, and there was accordingly aroused in the breast of the colonists a deep thirst for vengeance that called for more vigorous measures against the enemy.

What had Montcalm done in the mean time?

What is said of the surrender of Fort William Henry?

Of the conduct of the Indians and Montcalm?

29. Hitherto, disaster and disgrace had marked most of the operations against the French, especially on the part of the English officers and their

**1758** troops. The British nation was indignant at the mismanagement of the war, and the king was obliged to change his councils. William Pitt (afterward Lord Chatham) was intrusted with the public helm. His active mind and enterprising genius, seemed to be infused throughout the empire, through the senate and the people, the army and the navy. Lord Loudon was recalled, and General Abercrombie appointed commander-in-chief.

What change was made in the English affairs, and why?

What is said of Pitt?

What expeditions were planned?

30. Three expeditions were planned; one of twelve thousand men against Louisburg; one of sixteen thousand against Ticonderoga and Crown Point; and one of eight thousand, against Fort du Quesne.

Give an account of Admiral Boscawen's expedition.

On the expedition against Louisburg, Admiral Boscawen sailed from Halifax, May 28th, with a fleet of thirty-eight armed vessels, and an army of twelve thousand men under the command of Gen. Amherst.

What is said of the surrender of Louisburg?

31. On the 26th of July, after a vigorous resistance this fortress was surrendered, and with it five thousand seven hundred and thirty-seven prisoners of war, and one hundred and twenty cannon, besides which the French lost five ships of the line and four frigates. During this siege Wolfe served next in command to Amherst, and displayed those traits of character which afterward covered his name with glory.

What is said of Wolfe?

With how many men did Abercrombie march against Ticonderoga?

32. In the mean time, General Abercrombie, at the head of 15,000 men, 9,000 of whom were provincials, was advancing against Ticonderoga. On the 5th of July, he embarked on Lake George, and

on the following morning landed near the head of the lake, and proceeded through the woods with great difficulty toward the fortress. On approaching the fort, a skirmish ensued in which Lord Howe was killed. Respected and beloved by the whole army, his death threw them into confusion, and they fell back to the landing-place; but on the 8th they pressed on with all their force to attack the fort.

1758

What route did he take?

Who was killed in a skirmish as they approached the fort?

What effect did his death produce?

33. After a fierce and bloody contest of more than four hours, and a loss of two thousand men, Abercrombie was obliged to raise the siege and retire to the head of Lake George. From this place he dispatched Col. Bradstreet with an army of three thousand men against Fort Frontenac, situated on the present site of Kingston, at the outlet of Lake Ontario. He crossed the lake from Oswego, and in two days compelled the fort to surrender. Nine armed vessels, and a large quantity of stores and goods, were a portion of the reward reaped by the gallant soldiers.

Describe the second attack.

What is said of the expedition of Colonel Bradstreet against Fort Frontenac?

34. The expedition against Fort du Quesne, consisting of nine thousand men, left Philadelphia early in July, under the command of General Forbes. The French attacked an advance party under Major Grant and killed three hundred men; but as General Forbes with the main body of the army approached, the enemy deserted the fort and fled in boats down the Ohio. Possession was taken of the fort next day, and in honor of Mr. Pitt, its name was changed to Pittsburgh. The Indians from the West soon after concluded a treaty of neutrality with the English, and the campaign

Of the expedition against Fort du Quesne?

What treaty was then formed with the Indians?

**1759** closed with more honor and benefit to the English than any preceding one.

What three expeditions were planned for the campaign of 1759?

35. The campaign of 1758 had been so successful, that the vigorous mind of Pitt marked out a bold plan for the ensuing year worthy his great genius. It was the dispossessing the French of the whole of their American territory. To effect this design, three large armies were to be led at the same time against three of their strongest posts. One, under General Wolfe, was to ascend the St. Lawrence and lay siege to Quebec; the second, under General Amherst, was to attack Ticonderoga and Crown Point, and then by the way of Lake Champlain and the St. Lawrence, unite with the forces of Wolfe; and the third, after the reduction of Niagara, was to proceed down Lake Ontario and the St. Lawrence and attack Montreal.

What is said of the expedition against Niagara?

36. General Prideaux, who commanded the expedition against Niagara, reached that fort on the 6th of July, by the way of Oswego, and commenced the siege. Near the beginning of the attack he was killed by the bursting of a shell, and the command devolved on Sir William Johnson. Soon after, he met twelve hundred French and Indians, who were marching to the relief of the place. He defeated them and immediately gained possession of the fort.

Of the expedition against Ticonderoga?

37. General Amherst, who had been appointed to the command of the expedition against Ticonderoga, arrived before that place with about 11,000 men on the 22d of July. It was immediately abandoned by the enemy. Having strengthened



Ticonderoga, the army next proceeded against 1759  
Crown Point, and took quiet possession of it, the  
enemy having fled to the Isle aux Noix.

38. The expedition against Quebec, under the  
command of General Wolfe, was the most daring of  
any in the records of English warfare, and its con-  
quest might almost be considered a miracle of war.  
Nature and art seemed to have combined to render  
the fortress impregnable. So great was its strength  
that it was rightly called the Gibraltar of America.  
Yet the daring mind of Pitt had planned its con-  
quest and selected to carry out those plans the  
brave and gallant Wolfe. The result showed that  
he was not mistaken in the character of the man.

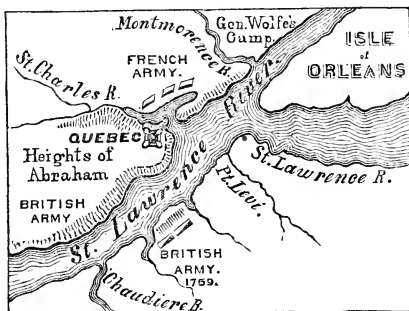
Against  
Quebec?

Who had  
planned the expe-  
dition?

39. Embarking at Louisburg with eight thou-  
sand men, under convoy of Admirals Saunders and  
Holmes, Wolfe landed with his troops in the latter  
part of June on the island of Orleans, a little below  
Quebec. Here he reconnoitered the position of the  
enemy, and could easily perceive the difficulties  
with which he had to contend. Before him arose

VICINITY OF QUEBEC.

Quebec is situated at the  
confluence of the river St.  
Charles with the St. Lawrence,  
about 400 miles from the ocean.  
It has a deep, safe, and capa-  
cious harbor, sufficient to con-  
tain one hundred sail of the  
line. It was an immense for-  
tification, situated on a high  
rock, and strongly fortified, both  
by nature and art. From its  
great strength, it was rightly  
called the Gibraltar of America.  
The appearance of the English  
army before its walls, gave the  
French but little uneasiness,  
for they considered the place  
impregnable. A more minute  
description of the place is given  
in the following page, in the  
account of its capture by  
Wolfe.



**1759** Quebec, situated on the north side of the St. Lawrence, and divided into an upper and lower town.

Describe the situation and strength of Quebec.

40. The lower town was situated between the river and a lofty eminence running parallel with the river far to the westward. The upper town was situated upon a large plain which spread out on the top of this eminence. Below or east of the city, the river St. Charles flowed into the St. Lawrence, its mouth guarded by armed vessels. A short distance farther down, is the river Montmorency; and between these, two rivers reaching from one to the other, and in the city was encamped the French army of thirteen thousand men under the command of Montcalm.

Where was the French army encamped?

What movement did Wolfe make?

41. Wolfe took possession of Point Levi, on the bank of the river opposite Quebec, and with batteries which he erected there, destroyed the lower town, but the distance was so great that no effect could be produced on the chief defenses of the city. Wolfe, therefore, determined to leave this position, cross the St. Lawrence and land below Montmorency, and then passing that river to attack the French general in his intrenchments.

What was done on the 31st of July?

42. Accordingly on the 31st of July, General Monckton with a large number of troops, crossed the river and effected a landing a short distance above the Montmorency, where they were to be joined by Generals Townsend and Murray, who were to ford the stream at low water. But the English grenadiers galled by the fire of the French artillery, rushed tumultuously up toward the intrenchments without waiting for the troops who were to sustain them. Their courage proved their

What is said of the English grenadiers?

ruin, for a close and well-directed fire from the enemy cut them down in great numbers. They fell back in confusion, after sustaining a loss of five hundred men, night approached, a heavy thunder-storm set in, and Wolfe was compelled to give up the attack, and withdraw his troops.

1759

Why was Wolfe compelled to withdraw his troops?

43. Disappointed thus far, and worn down with fatigue and marching, General Wolfe fell violently sick. Scarcely had he recovered, however, before he proceeded to put in operation a plan he had formed on his sick bed. This was to gain the heights of Abraham, and draw Montcalm to a general engagement. The camp at Montmorency was broken up, and the troops and artillery removed to Point Levi, while to conceal their intention, the admiral retired a number of miles up the river.

What is said of Gen. Wolfe?

What plan had he formed on his sick bed?

44. On the night of the 12th of September, the troops in boats glided silently down the river, and landed within a mile and a half of the city, an hour before day-break. Wolfe leaped on the shore followed by his men, and immediately began to ascend the precipice. The guards were dispersed, and by the dawn of day, Wolfe with his little army of five thousand men stood on the heights of Abraham, in bold defiance of Montcalm and his overwhelming force. That was a proud moment for the leader of those gallant troops, but little did he dream as he thought of the coming conflict, that before night his body would be stretched cold in death on that bloody field.

How was the plan executed?

What is farther said of Wolfe?

45. Montcalm could hardly credit his own senses, as he beheld the firm battalions of the English army drawn up in battle array on so advantageous

What is said of Montcalm?

**1759** a position. He saw that an engagement was inevitable, for unless they could be driven from their position, Quebec was lost. "I see them," said he, "where they ought not to be, but since we must fight, I will go and crush them." And immediately with his whole army, he crossed the river and advanced to the attack.

What is said of Wolfe during the battle?

Of Montcalm?

46. Wolfe, in the beginning of the battle, was struck by a musket ball in the wrist, but binding his handkerchief around it, he continued to encourage his men. Shortly after he received another ball in the groin; this he also concealed, placed himself at the head of his grenadiers, and was leading them to the charge, when he received a mortal wound. Col. Monckton was dangerously wounded by his side, and the command devolved upon Townsend. About the same time, Montcalm received a mortal wound, and his second in command also fell.

Describe the last moments of the two commanders.

When did the city surrender?

47. Wolfe, on receiving his last wound, was carried to the rear of the line; there, leaning on the arm of an officer for support, he was seized with the agonies of death. At this moment was heard the distant shout, "*They fly, they fly!*" The dying hero raised his drooping head, and eagerly asked, "Who fly?" On being told, "The French," "Then," he replied, "I die happy;" and expired. Montcalm lived to be carried to Quebec, and when informed that his wound was mortal, he replied, "I shall not then live to see the surrender of Quebec." Five days after the battle the city surrendered. An attempt was made by the French to retake it in the following spring, but it was unsuccessful.

48. Shortly after, they were compelled to evacuate Montreal, and were driven from all the important posts in Canada. In 1763 a treaty of peace was concluded in Paris, by which France ceded to Great Britain all her northern settlements in America. The bloody war which had so long raged upon the American frontiers, was at length closed, and the provincial soldiers returned to their homes to enjoy a short respite of peace before they again took the field. The next struggle in which we shall see them engaged, will be the struggle for liberty against the tyranny of England.

When was peace concluded, and what were ceded to Great Britain?

What was the next struggle of the provincial soldiers?

## CHAPTER XVI.

### CAUSES OF THE AMERICAN REVOLUTION.

1. We are now to detail the causes of events, the most interesting of any in the history of the world; the overthrow of tyranny and despotism in the United Colonies, and the erection there of an altar, sacred to liberty. A dark cloud had hung over the nations of the Old World for more than a thousand years. The rulers were the rich and the great, and the rod of empire was swayed by them with no gentle hand. The groans of the down-trodden and oppressed arose faintly through the gloom which surrounded them, yet they entered the ear of the Most High, and he, in his own good

What events have we now to detail?

What was the condition of the Old World prior to the Revolution?

**1764** time formed a plan for the civil and religious emancipation of the world.

What was the basis of the government now to be framed in the West?

2. A new era was to commence in the West. The link, which for ages had bound England to America, by the corroding influence of evil ministers, was to be broken; a new government was to be formed, based on the principles of justice to all, in which the voice of the lowest as well as the highest could be heard.

What were the causes of the Revolution?

What is said of the British king?

3. The causes of the great American Revolution, which ended in the firm establishment of our liberties, lay in the jealousy, tyranny, and oppression of the English government. The British king, like Rehoboam, "forsook the council which the old men gave him, and took council with the young men, that were brought up with him, that stood before him," and, in effect, said to the colonies, "Whereas my father put a heavy yoke upon you, I will put more to your yoke: my father chastised you with whips, but I will chastise you with scorpions." And "when the people saw that the king would not hearken unto them, they took council among themselves, and a shout went up from every hill and valley, city and hamlet, mountain and plain, from the rock of Plymouth, to the lagoons of Florida, 'To your tents, O Israel!'"

What did the people do?

What had the colonists done for the British crown?

4. They had freely expended their blood and treasure for the maintenance of the power of the British crown. They had rushed to the battle-field and endured every hardship, when the home government demanded their aid, and then patiently submitted to manifest wrong from the very hand their loyalty and prowess had strengthened. They

had ever regarded England with reverence and affection, and never dreamed of leaving the paternal roof, until the unholy chastisement of a parent's hand alienated their love, expelled them from the threshold, and compelled them to seek shelter and security behind the bulwarks of a righteous insurrection.

1765

How had they ever regarded England?

What did her treatment lead them to do?

5. In the early period of their colonial existence, Great Britain had troubled them but little about their internal policy, being satisfied with a monopoly of their trade. She wished also to obtain their assistance in the prosecution of the war against the French.

Why had not England troubled them in the early period of their colonial existence?

The colonies had increased in strength and population, and the war ended in the acquisition of a vast amount of territory to the English crown. Then when prudence would have dictated a relaxation of their authority, they rose in their demands and increased their restraints. They imposed heavy and crushing taxes to pay off a national debt of more than one hundred and fifty million sterling. They forgot that the Americans were descended from the same forefathers as themselves, and heirs to the same rights.

How had the war ended?

What course would prudence have dictated to the English, and what course did they take?

To bearing their share in the expenses of the war, the colonies had made no objections; but they did object to that system of taxation in which they had no right to be heard.

To what did the colonists object?

6. In 1765, Lord Grenville having previously given notice of his intentions to the American agents in London, introduced into parliament a long-cherished scheme for the purpose of raising a revenue from the American colonies by means of a stamp duty.

What scheme was introduced into parliament in 1765, and by whom?

1765

How was  
it re-  
ceived in  
the  
House?

Petitions poured in against it from the Americans, and at first it met with a strong opposition in the House of Commons.

What  
were the  
remarks  
of Town-  
send in  
the  
House of  
Com-  
mons?

7. Charles Townsend, at the close of an eloquent speech on the side of the ministry, asked, "And those Americans, children planted by our care, nourished by our indulgence, and protected by our arms until they have grown up to a degree of strength and opulence, will they grudge to contribute their mite to relieve us from the heavy load of national expense which we lie under?"

What  
was the  
reply of  
Barré?

8. Col. Barré immediately arose and indignantly exclaimed, "*Children planted by your care!* No! your oppression planted them in America. They fled from your tyranny into a then uncultivated land, where they were exposed to all the hardships to which human nature is liable.

9. "*They nourished by your indulgence!* No! They grew by your neglect.

"*They protected by your arms!* They have nobly taken arms in your defense; they have exerted their valor amid their constant and laborious industry for the defense of a country which, while its frontiers were drenched in blood, has yielded all its little savings to your emolument." He concluded by saying that "the people were loyal, but would vindicate their liberties if they should be violated."

Did the  
bill pass?  
March 8.

10. But the eloquence of Col. Barré and the remonstrance of the colonies could not change the avaricious feelings of parliament, and the bill passed by a large majority. Short-sighted legislators, poor readers of human nature, who did not see that in the passage of an act so odious to the colonies, they



were awakening an opposition and spirit of independence among them, which would materially weaken their own power. The night after the bill passed, Dr. Franklin wrote to Mr. Charles Thomson, "The sun of liberty is set; you must light up the candles of industry and economy." Mr. Thomson answered, "I was apprehensive that other lights would be the consequence, and I foresee the opposition that will be made."

1765

What did Franklin write to Mr. Thomson, and what was his reply?

11. By this act, no written instrument could be legal unless stamped paper was used, which they were compelled to purchase at an exorbitant price of the British agents. For a breach of this law they were to be tried without jury before any marine court in the colonies. The news of its passage was received with sorrow and dismay. Parliament had turned a deaf ear to their petitions, and showed by the passage of the act a determination to treat them, not as English citizens, but as servants and slaves. They must either surrender without a struggle their liberty, or oppose strongly and firmly the grasping avarice of a nation the most powerful in the world, and to which they had been accustomed to turn their eyes with fond affection as their "mother land."

What were the provisions of the act, and the penalty for its violation?

How was the news of its passage received by the colonies?

To what alternative were they driven?

12. They were not long in making up their decision and proclaiming it to the world. The Virginian legislature was in session when the information arrived. Patrick Henry, then a young man, but possessed of brilliant talents, opposed it with all the strength of his great mind. He brought before the house five resolutions which were adopted, and which closed by declaring, "That any in-

What is said of Patrick Henry?

What resolutions did he introduce?

**1765** individual, who, by speaking or acting, should assert or maintain, that any class of men except the general assembly of the province, had a right to impose taxation, he should be considered an enemy to his Majesty's colony."

What did he say in advocating them?

13. In advocating these resolutions, he boldly denounced the policy of the British government, and declared that the king had acted the part of a tyrant. Growing warm with his subject, and alluding to the fate of other tyrants, he exclaimed with flashing eyes and in thunder tones, "Cæsar had his Brutus, Charles I. his Cromwell, and George III."—"Treason! treason!" arose from every part of the house. Pausing a moment until the tumult had ended, he added, "may profit by their example. If this is treason, make the most of it."

Were these sentiments confined to Virginia?

14. Similar sentiments flew like lightning through the other States. The tongues and pens of the citizens labored in kindling the latent sparks of patriotism. The press strongly opposed the innovation, and called upon the citizens to resist it. Before the proceedings in Virginia had become known in Massachusetts, her legislature passed a resolution in favor of a continental congress, fixed a day in October for its meeting in New York, and sent letters to the speakers of the other colonial legislatures requesting their concurrence.

What resolution had the legislature of Massachusetts passed prior to this?

15. On the first Tuesday in October, delegates from all the States excepting Virginia, North Carolina, Georgia, and New Hampshire, assembled in New York, and agreed upon a declaration of rights asserting, in strong language, their exemption from

When did this Congress assemble?

all taxes not imposed by their own representatives, their right of trial by jury, and drew up a petition to the king with memorials to both houses of parliament. The memorials were signed by all the delegates excepting Thomas Ruggles of New York, and Mr. Ogden of New Jersey.

1765

How many colonies were represented, and what action did they take?

16. On the arrival of the first of November, the day on which the obnoxious stamp act was to go into operation, hardly a sheet of the stamped paper which had been sent to America could be found. It had been destroyed or re-shipped to England. The general aversion to the act was demonstrated in a variety of ways. In Boston, the morning which ushered it into existence, spoke forth the destroying agency, in the mournful accents of the funeral knell. Shops and stores were closed; effigies of unpopular characters were paraded through the streets and burned.

How was their aversion to the stamp act demonstrated?

17. In Portsmouth, New Hampshire, the day was ushered in with strong evidences of hostility and grief. Notice having been given to the friends of liberty to attend her funeral, a coffin inscribed with the word "Liberty," was borne along in solemn procession to the grave. The muffled drums, the death march, the booming minute guns, and the tolling bells as they threw out their mournful tones upon the air, gave evidences of the greatness of their bereavement. On their arrival at the place of interment, a eulogium was pronounced upon the deceased. Scarcely was it ended before the coffin was taken up, the inscription was changed to "Liberty revived," the bells exchang-

What took place in Portsmouth, N. H.?

**1765** ed their melancholy for a joyous peal, and satisfaction appeared on every countenance.

What in  
New  
York and  
in differ-  
ent parts  
of the  
country?

18. In New York, the act was printed under the title of "The folly of England, and the ruin of America," and distributed through the streets.

In different parts of the country, the stamp-masters were compelled to resign their offices to prevent being mobbed. The stamp act was so formed that the penalty of disobedience would be no less than suspension of the whole machinery of the political and social order, and the creation of a state of anarchy.

What ef-  
fect  
would  
the act  
produce  
on the  
country?

19. Neither trade nor navigation could proceed, no contract could be legally made, no process against an offender could be instituted; no apprentice could be indented; no student could receive a diploma, nor even could the estates of the dead be legally settled, or the marriage ceremony performed, until the stamp duty was paid. By degrees, however, things began to assume their usual course, and all kinds of business were transacted in open defiance of the act.

What as-  
socia-  
tions  
were  
formed,  
and for  
what  
purpose?

20. Associations under the title of the "Sons of Liberty," were formed in every part of the country. They denounced the stamp act as being an outrage on the British constitution, and resolved that they would defend those who fell into the hands of British tyranny, on account of their clinging to their rights as freemen. Merchants resolved to import no more goods from Great Britain until the act was repealed, and families denied themselves the use of foreign luxuries.

21. The information of the violent proceedings

of the colonies, was received in England with consternation and alarm. It was well that about this time Lord Grenville was dismissed, and the Marquis of Rockingham, a friend of the Americans, appointed in his place. He, with many others, felt that the stamp act could only be enforced at the point of the bayonet, and that it must be repealed or the death knell of their power would be tolled in America.

1766

How did England receive this news

What change took place in the ministry, and how did they view the stamp act?

22. A proposition for its repeal was accordingly laid before parliament. Lord Grenville strongly opposed it, and declared that to repeal the act would disgrace the government and encourage rebellion. He demanded when the Americans were emancipated, and by what reason they claimed exemption in defraying expenses incurred in protecting them?

What did Lord Grenville say in opposing the repeal?

23. Mr. Pitt arose to reply. In his speech he said, "We are told America is *obstinate*—America is in open rebellion. *Sir, I rejoice that America has resisted.* Three millions of people so dead to all the feelings of liberty as voluntarily to submit to be slaves, would have been fit instruments to make slaves of all the rest.

What was Mr. Pitt's reply?

24. "When, asks the honorable gentleman, were the colonies emancipated? At what time, say I in answer, were they made slaves? I speak from accurate knowledge, when I say the profit to Great Britain from the trade of the colonies is two millions per annum. This is the fund which carried you triumphantly through the war. This is the price America sends you for protection; and shall a miserable pensioner come with a boast that he can

**1766** fetch a pepper-corn into the exchequer at the loss of millions to the nation?

25. "I know the valor of your troops—I know the skill of your officers—I know the force of this country—but in such a cause, your success would be hazardous. America, if she fell, would fall like the strong man; she would embrace the pillars of the state and pull down the constitution with her.

26. "Is this your boasted peace, not to sheathe the sword in the scabbard, but in the bowels of your countrymen? The Americans have been wronged, they have been driven by injustice! Will you punish them for the madness which you have occasioned? No, let this country be the first to resume its prudence and temper; I will pledge myself for the colonies, that on their part that animosity and resentment will cease. Upon the whole, I will tell the house in a few words, what is my opinion. It is that the stamp act be repealed, absolutely, totally, and immediately."

27. The eloquence of Pitt and other kindred spirits at length prevailed, and the bill passed the House of Commons, but in the House of Lords it met with violent opposition. Lord Camden, in advocating the cause of the colonies, said, "Taxation and representation are inseparable; it is an eternal law of nature; for whatever is a man's own is absolutely his own; no man has a right to take it from him without his consent. Whoever attempts to do it, attempts an injury; whoever does it commits a robbery." The bill of repeal, after a stormy debate, finally passed; but accompanied with a decla-

With what strong remark did he conclude?

Did the bill pass in the House of Commons?

What were the remarks of Camden in the House of Lords?

What act passed with the bill of repeal?

ratory act, which declared that parliament had a right *to bind the colonies in all cases whatever.* 1766

28. The news of the repeal was received with the liveliest expressions of gratitude and joy. All England joined in the applause. The ships in the river Thames displayed their colors, and the city was illumined. In America, public thanksgivings were held, English goods imported, and a general calm succeeded the storm which had raged so violently.

How was the news received in England?

How in America?

29. By the people of New England and New York, less joy and gratitude were displayed and felt. They feared, from the passage of the declaratory act, that this was only a truce in the war against American rights. In the mirror of the past they saw reflected the future, and trembled at the picture. The result showed that their suspicions were just. A change in the ministry took place in July, in which the Marquis of Rockingham was removed, and a new cabinet formed under the direction of Mr. Pitt, afterward Earl of Chatham.

What were the feelings of New England and New York?

What change in the ministry took place in July?

30. In June, 1767, during the confinement of Mr. Pitt in the country by sickness, Charles Townsend, chancellor of the exchequer, brought before Parliament another plan for taxing America, by imposing duties on all tea, glass, and painter's colors, which should be imported into the colonies. The bill passed both houses with but little opposition, and also another, appointing officers of the navy as custom-house officers, to enforce the act of trade and navigation. Previous to this new act of tyranny, the legislative power of New York had been suspended, until it should furnish the king's

1767.

What took place during the sickness of Mr. Pitt?

Until what time was the legislative power of New York suspended?

1768 troops with certain supplies at the expense of the colony.

What did the general court of Massachusetts do in 1763?

31. Early in 1768 the general court of Massachusetts sent a petition to the king, and addressed circular letters to the colonial assemblies, asking for their co-operation in obtaining the redress of their grievances. The ministry were alarmed, and demanded of the court, that they should rescind the vote directing circulars to be sent. The assembly refused, and the governor dissolved them. This attempt to intimidate did but strengthen the opposition.

What did the ministry demand of the court?

What did the governor do on their refusal?

What is said of the seizure of a sloop?

32. Shortly after this, a sloop belonging to John Hancock was siezed by the custom-house officers, for violating some of the new commercial regulations. The houses of the officers were attacked by the people, and they compelled to leave the town. The refractory spirit of the citizens of Boston had been displayed on so many occasions, that General Gage was directed to station a regiment of soldiers in the city, to overawe the citizens, and protect the officers in the discharge of their duty.

What was Gen. Gage directed to do?

How many regiments arrived, and how did they land?

33. Two regiments were accordingly ordered on from Halifax. On their arrival the troops landed with loaded muskets and fixed bayonets, took possession of the state house, and planted two pieces of cannon at the principal entrance. The appearance of an armed force in their midst served only to excite the indignation of the inhabitants. They saw the hall of legislation polluted by the tread of foreign mercenaries. Soldiers paraded the streets, and guards mounted at the corners challenged them as they passed. The din of martial music, and the

How were they looked upon by the citizens, and what reason had they for their feeling?



roar of artillery, broke in upon the quiet of their sabbath, and their wives were exposed to insult from the soldiery, as they attended to the sacred duties of the sanctuary. 1769

34. Early in the following year, resolutions passed both houses of parliament, censuring, in the strongest terms, the conduct of the citizens of Massachusetts, and directing the governor to make strict inquiries, as to all treasons committed in that province since the year 1767, that offenders might be sent to England for trial. The legislature of Virginia, on the receipt of that order, passed resolutions denying the right of the king to remove an offender out of the colony away from his home and his friends, for trial. The governor, on hearing of the resolutions, immediately dismissed the assembly.

What resolution passed parliament the following year?

What did the legislature of Virginia do on hearing the news?

35. The members met in a private house, and entered into a written agreement, not to import any of the taxed articles. Their example was extensively followed. The assembly of Massachusetts convened, but refused to proceed to business while an armed force surrounded the state house, and cannon were pointed at the door. The governor refused to remove them, and they were adjourned to Cambridge.

Where did the members meet on being dismissed by the governor, and what agreement did they enter into?

What did the assembly of Massachusetts do?

36. Toward the close of the session, the governor requested them to provide funds to pay for the quartering of the troops, but they refused, declaring that they would never make any provisions to support a standing army among them, in times of peace. The governor, therefore, prorogued the as-

1770

sembly, and was shortly after succeeded in office by Governor Hutchinson.

What occurred on the second of March?

37. On the 2d of March, an affray took place between some of the regular troops and some ropemakers, in which the soldiers were beaten. Angry feelings were roused, and on the evening of the 5th a crowd of citizens attacked the city guards under Capt. Preston, pelted them with stones and snow balls, until the word to fire was given in return, when eight pieces were discharged, three citizens were killed, and several wounded. The alarm immediately spread every where, the bells were rung, drums were heard, and the cry to arms was raised.

Give an account of the riot.

38. The citizens assembled in crowds, and could only be dispersed by the governor promising them that justice should be done in the morning. The troops were removed from the city, and Capt. Preston and his men tried for murder. Although the most intense excitement prevailed in the place, yet such was the love of justice, that the soldiers were all acquitted excepting two, who were convicted of manslaughter.

What became of Preston and his men?

What bill did Lord North introduce into parliament?

39. In England, on the very day of the commission of this outrage, Lord North was appointed to the ministry. He introduced a bill into parliament, which passed on the 12th of April, removing the duties that had been laid in 1767, excepting those on tea, but still declaring their right of taxing the colonies. For a long time, no tea was imported, and the effect was beginning to be severely felt by the commercial part of Great Britain. Parliament therefore passed an act permitting the East India

What finally induced parliament to remove the tax from tea?

Company to import their teas into America free of duty in England. 1773

40. The naked question of principle on taxation was thus presented. It was an insidious plan, but the energy of the Americans foiled it most signally. Three pence a pound on tea was nothing, but the principle of tyranny was strong, and the resistance was as unyielding as though it had been an act of confiscation. Tea was accordingly shipped from England in vast quantities, but on its arrival, the people refused to receive it. In Charleston, the tea was landed, but not permitted to be offered for sale; and being stored in damp cellars, finally perished.

What is said of the principle thus presented?

What did the people do on the arrival of the tea?

41. In Boston, a large company of men disguised as Indians, went on board the ships during the night and threw the cargoes into the water. Three hundred and forty-two chests were thus broken open and the contents thrown into the harbor. Parliament, in order to punish the inhabitants of Boston, passed the "Boston Port Bill," which prevented the landing and shipping of goods at that place, and removed the custom house to Salem. But the people of Salem refused to raise their fortunes on the ruins of their countrymen, and the inhabitants of Marblehead generously offered them the use of their warehouses and harbor.

What did the people of Boston do with it?

Dec. 16.

1774.  
What did parliament do to punish the inhabitants?

What did the inhabitants of Salem and Marblehead do?

42. In the following March, two other bills equally tyrannical passed both houses of parliament. One subverted the whole constitution and charter of Massachusetts, taking all power out of the hands of the people, and vesting it in the crown. The other authorized the governor to

What tyrannical bills passed parliament in the following March?

**1774** send to England or some other colony, for trial any person indicted for murder, or any other capital offence committed in aiding magistrates in the discharge of their duty.

For what purpose did Gage arrive?

What resolution did the assembly pass?

43. Shortly after, General Gage arrived to supersede Hutchinson as governor of the province, and also to enforce the odious "Port Bill." The assembly resolved that "the impolicy, injustice, inhumanity, and cruelty of the act, exceed all our powers of expression," and declared that they would leave it to the just censure of others, and *appeal* to the God of the world.

What did the legislature of Virginia do?

44. The legislature of Virginia appointed the 1st of June, the day on which the act was to go into effect, as a day of fasting, humiliation and prayer, to implore God to give them one *heart* and one *mind* firmly to oppose by all justice and proper means every injury to American rights. Governor Dunmore resenting this proceeding, dissolved the assembly. They, however, formed an association, resolved not to use any East India production, until the act was repealed, and concluded by proposing a "General Congress" of the colonies.

When did Congress meet?

What resolution did they pass, and what agreement did they enter into?

45. On the 4th of September, the proposed congress, consisting of deputies from eleven colonies, assembled at Philadelphia. They passed a resolution highly commending the conduct of Massachusetts, in the conflict with wicked ministers, and exhorted all to press on in the cause of liberty. They drew up a *Bill of Rights*—entered into an agreement for themselves and for their constituents, to cease all importations from Great Britain, and adopted measures for organizing committees

What measures did they adopt?

in every town and city, to see that this agree-  
ment was enforced by every species of popular in-  
fluence. 1774

46. They addressed a letter to General Gage, entreating him to desist from military operations. They also voted an address to the king ; one to Great Britain, and another to Canada. Their petition to the king entreated him in eloquence the most affectionate and respectful, to restore to them their violated rights, their rights as English freemen. In their address to the English people they declared "that they never would be hewers of wood and drawers of water, for any ministry or nation in the world."

What did they declare in their address to the English people?

47. This frank expression of feeling on the part of the colonists aroused the indignation of the British government. America, they said, had long wished to become independent, and to prevent this, was the duty of every Englishman, and that it must be done at every hazard.

How did England view this expression of feeling?

48. Boston Neck was fortified, and powder and other military stores in Cambridge and Charleston, by order of General Gage, removed to Boston. An assembly was called in Massachusetts, but dissolved by the governor. The members then met in Salem, appointed a committee of safety, and supplied and sent messengers to New Hampshire, Rhode Island and Connecticut, asking for their assistance in raising an army of twenty thousand men to act in an emergency. England, although she could distinctly see the upheaving of the violence of colonial indignation, refused to listen to the warning sound, and determined upon another act of oppression.

What measures of safety did Gage adopt?

Where did the assembly of Massachusetts meet, and what action did they take?

1775

## CHAPTER XVII.

## REVOLUTIONARY WAR.

What is said of the approaching crisis at this time?

1. Matters were now rapidly approaching a crisis; the spirit of resentment was being fanned into a flame; a dark and bloody cloud was hovering over the land, and the great question was soon to be decided, whether they should be slaves or free-men, whether their names should be blackened with the stigma of rebellion, or handed down to posterity as the saviors of their country.

What bill passed parliament on the 10th of February?

2. On the 10th of February, a bill was passed restricting the commerce of the New England States, and forbidding them to fish on the banks of Newfoundland. The same restrictions soon after extended to all the colonies. The people of

What other tyrannical acts soon followed?

Massachusetts were pronounced rebels, and ten thousand men with several ships of the line ordered to America to enforce obedience.

For what purpose were Col. Smith and Maj. Pitcairn dispatched to Concord?

3. The committee of safety and supplies had collected a large quantity of stores and ammunition at Concord, about twenty miles from Boston. General Gage, deeming it advisable to obtain possession of them, sent out a detachment of eight hundred men, under the command of Col. Smith and Major Pitcairn.

4. Notwithstanding the precaution of the British officers, to prevent the spread of the intelligence, the march of the troops had been made known by

expresses and signal guns. On their arrival at Lexington, five miles from Concord, they saw the militia of the place were drawn up to receive them. The regulars approached within musket shot, when Major Pitcairn riding forward with drawn sword, exclaimed, "Disperse, you rebels! throw down your arms and disperse." Not being obeyed, he discharged his pistol, and ordered his soldiers to fire. They fired, and killed eight men and wounded several others. The rest dispersed, but the firing continued. The enemy then proceeded to Concord, and destroyed the greater part of the stores.

1775

How did the people receive the intelligence of their approach?

Relate the circumstances of the meeting.

5. The militia had in the mean time assembled and a skirmish ensued, in which a number were killed. The British commenced their retreat, but were pressed on all sides by the now enraged Americans.

What ensued?

At Lexington, they met Lord Percy, with a reinforcement of 900 men. They, however, continued their retreat.

Who was at Lexington?

6. The whole country was in arms. Every wall, house, and tree, contributed to shelter some exasperated New Englander. A perpetual fire was kept up in this manner, during the whole length of their weary and laborious march, until at night, with the loss of two hundred and seventy-three men, they encamped on Bunker's Hill, under the protection of the men of war, and the next day passed over to Boston.

How great was their loss on reaching Bunker's Hill?

7. Intelligence of these events spread like wild fire through the country. The torch of war had

1775

What effect had these events on the people generally?

been lighted—blood had been offered on the altar of liberty: fearfully was the death of those patriots slain at Lexington and Concord to be avenged. Couriers galloped in every direction, beating a drum, and shouting in tones, that thrilled every ear that heard, “To arms, to arms! liberty or death.” The streets of Lexington and Concord have been soaked in blood, and the country is in a blaze.

What is said of Putnam?

8. Gen. Putnam heard it, and leaving his oxen in the field, he stayed not to change his farmer’s dress, but springing on his swiftest horse, was soon seen speeding along the road to Boston. Those that saw that rough form fly past, knew that wild work would be done. Old age with hands trembling from palsy, threw aside the cushioned crutch, and grasped the deadly firelock. Mechanics left their shops, and farmers the plough, and bursting away from their wives and children sped on to the field of battle, where liberty was to be bought with blood.

What was the extent of the encampment formed?

9. In a few days a line of encampment stretched from Roxbury to the river Mystic, and the British forces in Boston were environed by an army of twenty thousand men. In New Haven, on the news being known, Benedict Arnold, a druggist, gathered around him a band of volunteers and marched on to the scene of strife. At Boston he formed the bold plan of seizing the important fortresses of Ticonderoga and Crown Point.

What plan did Arnold form?

10. Having received instructions from the committee of safety to raise a sufficient number of men



for the purpose, he marched on to Bennington, where he found that Col. Ethan Allen had collected a large band for the same object. They marched on together at the head of three hundred men from Castleton, and reached Ticonderoga on the 10th of May.

1775

Who was at Bennington?

11. They advanced to the gateway, Arnold and Allen entering side by side. A sentinel snapped his fusee at Allen and retreated. Allen rushed up the stairs, and exclaimed in a voice of thunder as he reached the governor's room, "Come out here, you white-livered wretch, and surrender!" The governor started up, and pale with terror, stammered out, "In whose name do you demand it?" "In the name," said Allen, "of the Great Jehovah and the Continental Congress!"

Describe the expedition of Allen and Arnold?

12. This was high authority, and the governor immediately surrendered. They were equally successful in obtaining Crown Point. By this fortunate expedition, executed without bloodshed, they gained possession of two important fortresses, more than one hundred cannon, and a large quantity of ammunition.

What was accomplished by this expedition?

On the 10th of May, the Continental Congress again assembled at Philadelphia, and issued bills of credit to the amount of three millions of dollars, for defraying the expenses of the war, and pledged the faith of the United Colonies for their redemption.

What was done in Congress in May?

13. In May, the British army in Boston received reinforcements from England, under Generals Howe, Clinton and Burgoyne, which, together with the garrison, formed an army of more than twelve

What reinforcements did the British receive?

**1775** thousand men. General Gage now proclaimed martial law throughout the State, offering, however, to pardon all rebels who would return to their allegiance excepting Samuel Adams and John Hancock.

What was done by Gen. Gage?

What orders were given to Col. Prescott, and why?

What mistake was made, and how did they succeed?

What was done the next morning?

What about noon?

14. The Americans, learning that General Gage was determined to penetrate into the country by the way of Charlestown Neck, issued orders to Col. Prescott on the evening of the 16th of June, to take one thousand men and form an intrenchment on Bunker's Hill, an eminence which commanded the neck of the peninsula of Charlestown. By some mistake they went farther on and occupied Breed's Hill. At midnight those stern-hearted men stood on the top while Putnam marked out the line of intrenchments. By daylight they had constructed a redoubt eight rods square, in which they could shelter themselves.

15. In the morning the English officers and the people of Boston could hardly believe their eyes as they saw this redoubt almost over their heads. All now was bustle and confusion ; and, in two hours' time, all the artillery of the city, the ships of war, and the floating batteries, were pointed against that single silent structure. The city shook to the thunder of cannon, and that lonely height rocked under the bombs and balls which tore up its sides. Still, those hardy men toiled on as they never toiled before, heedless of the iron storm that rattled around them, until by noon they had run a trench nearly down to the Mystic river on the north.

16. The cannonading having failed to dislodge them, about noon General Gage sent a body of

about three thousand men, under Generals Howe and Pigot, to carry the height by assault. They left Boston in boats, and landing at Moreton's Point, under the protection of the shipping advanced in two columns, setting fire to Charlestown on their way, by which act two thousand people were deprived of their habitations.

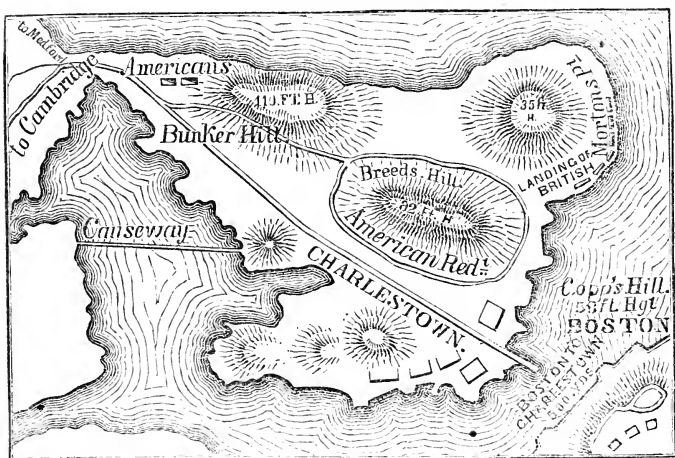
What is said of the burning of Charlestown?

17. The day was clear, not a cloud rested on the summer heavens. The soldiers on the hill gazed upon the moving mass below them with a stern and anxious eye. In the intervals of the roar of artillery, were heard the thrilling strains of martial music, while plumes danced and standards waved in the sunlight, and five thousand bayonets gleamed and shook over the dark mass below.

What is said of the battle?

18. A solitary horseman moved swiftly over the

VICINITY OF BUNKER'S HILL.



1775

What of  
Gen.  
Warren?

hill, and rode up to Putnam. It was General Warren. "Tell me," said he, while his lips quivered with the excitement, "*where the onset will be heaviest.*" "At the redoubt," said Putnam; "Prescott is there, and will do his duty." Away galloped Warren, and as he rode up to the intrenchments, a loud huzza rent the air.

What  
of the  
scene at  
this  
time?

19. Nothing could exceed the excitement of the scene at this moment. Stretched over that hill and out of sight lay fifteen hundred sons of Liberty, coolly awaiting the onset of the veteran thousands of England, and sternly resolved to prove worthy of the high destinies intrusted to their charge. The roofs and steeples and shores of Boston were black with spectators. Many of them had husbands, brothers, and lovers on the hill. At home, the earnest prayer went up to Heaven. With what intense longing each heart turned to the silent redoubt!

What or-  
der was  
given by  
Putnam?

20. The English advanced. Putnam rode along the lines urging them not to fire until the command, and then aim at their *waistbands*. On came the battalions, stopping every few yards, to deliver their deep and regular volleys on the embankments; not a shot replied, but flashing eyes were there bent in wrath on the enemy, as they slowly ascended the hill and sternly closed for the death struggle. That silence was more awful than the thunder of cannon—it told of carnage and death slumbering there.

Describe  
the on-  
set.

When  
was the  
order  
given to  
fire?

21. When the hostile columns had almost reached the intrenchments, the stern order "*Fire,*" rung with startling clearness on the air. A sheet

of flame burst along that low dark wall, and down went the enemy rank on rank, as that tempest of fire smote their bosoms; still the battalions struggled against the deadly sleet, but all in vain. Furious with rage, the army broke and fled for the shore. A loud huzza rose from the redoubt, which was answered by thousands of voices from Boston.

What succeeded?

Describe the next charge.

22. The English officers rode swiftly among their flying troops, and finally succeeded in rallying them. Again the drums beat their hurried charge, and the columns pressed gallantly forward. On, on they came, shaking the firm ground with their heavy tread, until they stood breast to breast with that silent redoubt, when it again opened and sent forth a tempest of fire and lead, sweeping away the firm-set ranks like mists, in its path. Rank after rank went down before that fire, until the bravest gave way and rushed furiously down the hill. Again the triumphant huzzas rocked the height, and the slopes of that hill turned red with flowing blood.

23. At this critical moment, General Clinton arrived with reinforcements. By his exertions the troops were again rallied, and a third time advanced to the charge. Throwing aside their knapsacks and reserving their fire, the soldiers, with fixed bayonets, marched swiftly and steadily over the heaps of their fallen companions, up to the intrenchments. Only one volley smote them, for the Americans had fired their last cartridges and were without bayonets. Clubbing their muskets, they still beat back the enemy, until the order was given to retreat. Putnam could not bear the idea of re-

What reinforcements arrived, and what effect did they produce?

Describe the retreat.

**1775** treating, and attempted again to rally them. Finding his efforts in vain, he burst forth into a torrent of indignation. Warren, too, urged them to another effort. He reminded them that Heaven watched over their cause and would sustain their efforts. An English officer who knew him, snatched a musket from a soldier and shot him dead in his footsteps.

What is  
said of  
Warren?

24. The Americans retreated with little loss across Charlestown Neck, which was swept by cannon, and finally took up their station on Winter and Prospect Hills, still maintaining the command of the entrance to Boston. The battle-field remained in the hands of the English, but the victory was ours. It had been a bloody day. Nearly two thousand slept in death on that height, fifteen hundred of whom were British soldiers. The news spread rapidly, and one long shout went up from every corner of the land.

What is  
said of  
the loss?

Who  
were the  
victors?

25. In the mean time Congress had assembled at Philadelphia. Once more they addressed letters to the king, the inhabitants of Great Britain and Ireland, and at the same time published to the world the reason of their appeal to arms.

What  
had been  
done in  
the mean  
time by  
Con-  
gress?

On the 15th of June, they elected George Washington by a unanimous vote to the high office of commander-in-chief of the United Colonies, and voted to raise an army of twenty thousand men. Washington, who was present, accepted the appointment, expressing a sense of the high honor which he had received, and the vast responsibility of the station. He refused to accept any compen-

Who was  
elected  
com-  
mander-  
in-chief?

How did  
Wash-  
ington  
receive  
his ap-  
point-  
ment?

sation for his services, merely asking that Congress would defray his expenses. 1775

26. In subordination to the commander-in-chief, Messrs. Ward, Charles Lee, Schuyler and Putnam, were appointed major-generals ; Horatio Gates, adjutant-general ; and Messrs. Pomeroy, Montgomery and Wooster ; Heath, Spencer, Thomas, Sullivan and Greene, brigadier-generals. Who were appointed major-generals ?

27. Soon after his election, General Washington, accompanied by Lee, proceeded to Cambridge to take command of the army, which amounted to about fourteen thousand men. He found them full of love to their country, but without tents and ammunition, destitute of discipline, and averse to subordination. By his own energy and the assistance of Gates, order and discipline were soon introduced ; stores were collected, and every thing provided for carrying on their operations. How large was the army ?  
What was their condition ?

28. In July, Georgia chose delegates to Congress, increasing the number of the United Colonies to thirteen. How many United Colonies were there in July ?

The British army was now closely blockaded in Boston, and Congress resolved to seize the opportunity of sending a force into Canada, and thus anticipating Sir Guy Carleton, the governor of that province, who was evidently preparing to attack the colonies. Why did Congress resolve to send an army to Canada ?

29. The army of invasion consisted of about three thousand men. Two expeditions were planned : one by the way of Lake Champlain, under the command of General Schuyler, aided by Generals Montgomery and Wooster ; the other by the way of the river Kenebec, under the command of Arnold. What two expeditions were planned ?

1775

What is  
said of  
Arnold's  
march  
through  
the wil-  
derness?

30. Arnold's march of above forty days through the wilderness, at the head of more than a thousand men, is one of the most stupendous things in the annals of war. He marched through a forest more than two hundred miles in extent, climbing mountains and scaling precipices, drenched with rains, and wasted with toil, enduring cold and hunger. Bonaparte fleeing from Moscow, Julian retreating across the desert, and Suwarrow over the Alps, are wonderful events in history; but the wonder would have been tenfold greater, had they encountered these perils and hardships in marching *after* an enemy, instead of fleeing *before* one.

Describe  
his at-  
tack on  
Quebec.

31. On the 9th of November, Arnold arrived at Point Levi, opposite Quebec, and on the 13th boldly led his men up the precipice, where Wolfe sixteen years before ascended to the field of his fame and his grave. Closing sternly around their leader, at early dawn these gallant troops stood in battle array upon the plains of Abraham. He sent a summons to the commander to surrender, which was treated with scorn. To have attempted to carry the place by storm, would have been madness, he therefore withdrew his troops twenty miles above Quebec, and awaited the arrival of Montgomery.

On  
whom  
did the  
com-  
mand de-  
volve,  
and why?

32. A severe illness prevented General Schuyler from going to Canada, so that the whole command of this expedition devolved on Montgomery. On the third of November, he took possession of St. Johns, and then proceeded to Montreal, which capitulated on the 13th, Governor Carleton having

When  
did they  
gain pos-  
session  
of Mont-  
real?



previously abandoned the place and fled to Quebec. 1775

33. On the 1st of December, Montgomery arrived, and uniting his forces with those of Arnold, marched to Quebec, then garrisoned by a superior force. The army was in a miserable condition. Worn out with fatigue, its numbers thinned by the ravages of the small-pox and the severity of the winter, they were but poorly prepared to capture a place like Quebec.

What was the condition of the army when Montgomery arrived?

34. After a siege of three weeks in the midst of winter, it was determined to attempt the place by assault. On the last day in the year, in the midst of a heavy snow storm, the army in four divisions made the attempt. Two divisions were to make feigned attacks on the upper town, while Montgomery and Arnold with the other divisions, were to attack the lower town, at opposite points, intending to meet.

What plan of attack was chosen?

35. Montgomery advanced on the banks of the river, lifting with his own hands at the huge blocks of ice, digging away the snow, and cheering on his men as they, one by one, struggled through. With his sword waving over his head, he rushed forward to the pickets followed by his devoted soldiers. After one discharge from the battery, the gunners fled, the pickets were forced, but on entering, the discharge of a wall-piece from a neighboring house stretched Montgomery lifeless on the bloody snow. The officer next in command immediately ordered a retreat. Soon all had fled excepting one boyish form, who stood by the mangled body of Montgomery, his dark eye wet with tears. That fair

What is said of Montgomery?

Who remained with the corpse of Montgomery?

**1775** boy, covered with the blood of fight, was he who in after years was *almost* president of the United States and emperor of Mexico—*Aaron Burr*.

What is said of Arnold? 36. In the mean time, Arnold had entered the town at the head of his troops, bravely fighting, when his leg was shattered by a cannon ball, and much against his will he was carried to the rear. The command then devolved on Capt. Morgan, who pressed on through the storm of grape shot, and fought desperately for a number of hours, when he was compelled to surrender the remnant of his brave band prisoners of war.

What of Morgan? 37. The death of Montgomery was deeply lamented. He died in the flush of heroism, in the pride of early manhood, before the laurels which were green on his brow could fade in the poisonous breath of envy and jealousy, which the great and the good so often and so keenly feel. He left on the rock of Quebec his blood, and to his country the legacy of his fame. A monument was erected to his memory in St. Paul's church, New York.

Why was Arnold obliged to evacuate Canada in the spring? 38. Arnold retired after his repulse three miles below Quebec, where he remained during the winter, kept the place in a state of blockade, and reduced it to distress for want of provisions. Early in May, General Carleton having received reinforcements from England, the Americans were obliged to make a hasty retreat, and on the 18th of June they entirely evacuated Canada. Thus ended the expedition against Canada, having proved an entire failure. We can now see, that it was well for our independence that it did so, as the protection

What is said in conclusion of the expedition against Canada?

of the province would have drawn away too many 1775  
men from more important colonies.

39. While these events were transpiring on our northern frontiers, English ships were laying waste towns and cities upon our Atlantic coast. Bristol, in Rhode Island, and Falmouth in Massachusetts, were burned by the orders of Capt. Mowatt of the British navy, because they had taken part in the rebellion. Congress thought it time to turn their attention to the construction of armed vessels. Thirteen were accordingly fitted out, a navy established, and a large number of privateers licensed, which scoured the seas and did great injury to the English commerce.

What events were transpiring on the Atlantic coast during this time?

What navy did Congress fit out?

40. Gen. Washington employed in the service several cruisers to intercept the store ships of the enemy. Regular courts of Admiralty were established for the adjudication of prizes, and by these timely measures much good was accomplished.

What was done by the cruisers?

41. One of the most fortunate leaders in these enterprises was Captain Manly, of Marblehead. He captured an English ship loaded with ordnance stores and ammunition of immense value at that time. Among them was a large brass mortar on a new construction, which he called the *Congress*. An invoice, it is said, could scarcely have been formed of articles better suited to the pressing wants and circumstances of the army. Cargoes of provisions and various kinds of stores were seized to a very considerable amount.

What by Captain Manly's expedition?

42. It is said that the distresses of the Bostonians and the troops there, exceeded the possibility of description. They were almost in a state of star-

What is said of the distresses of the Bostonians during the blockade?

**1775** vation, and suffering for want of fuel. The wretched inhabitants were totally destitute of vegetables, flour, or fresh provisions, and were actually obliged to feed on horse flesh. A number of houses were taken down, and pews were removed from churches to supply them with fuel.

What efforts were made by the British to detach New York from the Union?

43. Efforts were still made by the British ministry, to detach New York from the confederacy, and to retain the colony under their influence. To this end, they restored Governor Tryon, who was greatly beloved by the people, and empowered him to make use of measures to bribe and corrupt in various ways. Congress immediately recommended that "all persons, whose going at large would endanger the liberty of America, should be arrested and secured." On hearing this intelligence, Gov. Tryon was obliged to take refuge on board a ship in the harbor.

What did Congress recommend?

What is said of Lord Dunmore and Virginia?

44. Virginia, during this year, was involved in difficulty through the insolent conduct of the royal governor, Lord Dunmore. The government of Virginia was now in the hands of the colonial assembly, but Lord Dunmore, who had retired to the king's ship, did not abandon all hopes of regaining his former station; and in November, he issued proclamations, instituting martial law, and promised freedom to such slaves as would leave their masters, and join his party. Many loyalists and negroes joined his numbers, when Dunmore left his ships and occupied a strong position near Norfolk. The Virginians took post nearly opposite.

45. Lord Dunmore being completely defeated,

again repaired to his ships, where, with his party of royalists, he became reduced to great distress, for want of provisions. He sent a flag to Norfolk demanding a supply for his Majesty's ships, which being refused by the provincial commander, he set fire to Norfolk and reduced it to ashes.

1775

What occurred at Norfolk?

46. By this inhuman act nearly 6,000 persons were deprived of habitations, and three hundred pounds sterling were lost.

What was the extent of the loss?

At length he was obliged to relinquish all attempts to regain his government, and finally, after suffering from famine, tempest, and disease, sought refuge in the Southern Islands.

Where did Dunmore finally go?

47. Royal government generally terminated this year, throughout the country, the king's governors abdicating their governments, and taking refuge on board the English shipping.

What is said of royal governments during this year?

48. An act was passed, prohibiting all trade and commerce with the colonies; and authorizing the capture of all American and other vessels found trading with the colonies, and the crews of these captured vessels were to be treated not as prisoners, but as *slaves*.

What odious act was passed by parliament at this time?

49. The colonists had sent over their last petition, styled the *Olive Branch*, to the king; but both houses of parliament refused to hear it, alleging that they could not treat any proposition coming from an unlawful assembly. Until now, they hoped for reconciliation with the mother country. This was enough. The rejection of this last petition determined the eternal separation of Great Britain and the colonies—the suppliants were suppliants no longer. The flag, which had hitherto

What final steps did the colonists take to secure a reconciliation, and how were they treated?

What did the rejection of their last petition do?

1775 been plain red, was changed to thirteen stripes, emblematical of the union of the colonies.

What change was made in the flag?

What was the state of the army at the close of 1775?

50. At the close of this year (1775), the American army was almost entirely destitute of the supplies necessary for carrying on the war, and the terms for enlistment of all the troops expired with the year. Although active measures had been taken for enlisting troops, yet on the last day of December when the old troops were to be disbanded, there were but 9,650 men enlisted for the ensuing year.

## CHAPTER XVIII.

### CAMPAIGN OF 1776.

1776.

How long had Boston been blockaded, and what was at last resolved upon?

What is said of the fortifying of Dorchester Heights?

1. General Washington had continued the blockade of Boston, during the winter of 1775-6, and at last resolved to bring the enemy to action. It was thought expedient to fortify Dorchester Heights, which commanded the harbor and British shipping. The night of the 4th of March was selected for the attempt—and a bright full moon favored them in their toilsome employment. The amount of labor performed through the night, considering the depth of the frozen earth, was incredible. Great preparations were made to defend themselves from the raking fire which they expected from the enemy's ships. General Washington, was present animating the soldiers, and they in turn manifested warm hearts in the service.

2. The surprise of the British the next morning cannot easily be conceived. A few moments sufficed to tell Gen. Howe the advantage the Americans had gained, and no alternative remained for him but to dislodge them or retire, for his vessels were too much exposed to remain in the harbor. It was his wish to attack the Americans, but a violent tempest of wind and rain came on the night after, and obliged him to abandon his enterprise. The Americans looked on this as the work of a kind Providence, in frustrating a design which must have been attended with immense slaughter.

1776  
What is said of Gen. Howe, and what prevented his attacking the Americans?

How did the Americans regard this storm?

3. On the morning of the 17th of March, the royal army commenced their embarkation, and the inhabitants beheld, with great joy, the whole fleet under sail.

When did the royal army leave Boston?

By this event they were relieved from a force of 7,575 regulars, exclusive of the staff, which, with the mariners and sailors, may be estimated at about 10,000 in the whole.

How many troops embarked?

4. This force greatly exceeded the five regiments with which Gen. Grant vauntingly boasted in England that he could march successfully from one end of the American continent to the other. Fifteen hundred Tories left the country with their families on board the transports with the army, not knowing what part of the world was to be their home.

What had been Gen. Grant's boast in England?

How many Tories left the country?

5. The houses and streets of Boston presented a deplorable scene to the army as they entered. Wretchedness and desolation were written on every side, and reflected disgrace on the late occupants.

What is said of the condition of Boston after the departure of the troops?

**1776** A spacious brick building which, for more than a century, had been consecrated to the service of God, was occupied as a riding school for Burgoyne's regiment of dragoons. A beautiful pew ornamented with carved work and silk furniture, was demolished, and the carved work used, by order of an officer, as a fence for a hogstye.

What did Washington request of Rev. Dr. Eliot?

6. Gen. Washington requested the Rev. Dr. Eliot to preach a thanksgiving sermon, which he did on the 28th, from Isaiah xxxiii. 20, in the presence of his Excellency and a numerous audience.

What was done with the remains of Gen. Warren?

The remains of that hero and patriot, Major Gen. Warren, were taken from the earth at Breed's Hill, placed in an elegant coffin, and brought into the Stone Chapel. After the eulogy was pronounced, the remains were deposited in the vault under the chapel. The port of Boston was now again opened, having been closed during two years, by order of an act of the British parliament.

How long had the port of Boston been closed?

What expeditions were planned for the campaign of 1776?

7. The British resolved on two expeditions for the campaign of 1776, besides the relief of Quebec and the recovery of Canada. The object of one expedition was to reduce the Southern Colonies—the command of which was given to Gen. Clinton and Sir Peter Parker; the object of the other was to gain possession of New York. The command of this was given to the successor of Gen. Gage. Admiral and Sir William Howe.

Who succeeded Gen. Gage?

What is said of the condition of our army in Canada?

8. During this time the most melancholy accounts were received from our army in Canada; they were subjected to great hardships, sufferings, and privations. Destitute of provisions, sinking under fatigue, and reduced by the small-pox, which



was attended with unexampled mortality, they were in a state bordering on desperation. 1776

Reinforcements had been ordered by Congress, but when they arrived, they were worn out and sinking under disease.

9. Gen. Thomas succeeded Arnold in the command, and endeavored to reduce Quebec. He sent a fire ship down the St. Lawrence, to destroy the governor's vessels, intending, in the confusion which would ensue, to make a desperate assault on the town. The design was discovered by the garrison, and the attempt failed. On that very day, several British vessels came in sight, bringing reinforcements, and thus cutting off any communication between the different parts of the American camp. Gen. Thomas was obliged to retreat in the greatest precipitation, leaving behind him the baggage, artillery, and whatever else might have impeded the march.

What was done by Gen. Thomas, and with what success?

Why was Gen. Thomas obliged to retreat?

10. Many of the sick fell into the hands of Gen. Carleton, who treated them with great kindness. After a toilsome retreat of 45 miles without halting, they reached the river Sorel, where, in addition to all their sufferings, they were called upon to part with their brave General Thomas. He was violently seized with small-pox, which in a few days proved fatal, when the command devolved upon Gen. Sullivan.

What loss did they meet with on their retreat?

Who succeeded Gen. Thomas?

11. The British forces in Canada under Gen. Frazer, now numbered 13,000. The general place of rendezvous was Three Rivers, but a party under Gen. Nesbit was near them on board the transports: while one exceeding the other in number,

What was the number of the British force in Canada?

Where were they stationed?

**1776** with Generals Burgoyne, Carleton, Philips, and Baron Reidesel, was on its way from Quebec.

For what purpose was Gen. Thompson dispatched, and what was the result of the expedition?

12. Gen. Sullivan dispatched Gen. Thompson with a considerable body of troops to attack Gen. Frazer at Three Rivers. Intending to surprise him, they sailed down the river by night, but were discovered and defeated with the loss of 200 prisoners.

What is said of the success of the American cause in Canada?

Adverse fortune followed the American arms in every part of Canada, although the contest displayed the military character of the colonial officers in the most honorable point of view. Gen. Sullivan soon received orders to embark on the Lakes for Crown Point, and thus ended the bold but unsuccessful attempt to annex Canada to the United Colonies.

What news was brought through an intercepted letter?

13. An official letter had been intercepted early in this year, announcing the departure of a large armament from England, under Sir Peter Parker and Gen. Clinton, its destination being against the Southern States. Forthwith the gallant Southerners began to prepare for its reception. The only resistance which the inhabitants of Charleston could make, was to defend Sullivan's island, and the militia of the country were summoned to surround the capital.

What preparations were commenced by the people of Charleston?

Describe the fortification.

14. Palmetto trees which resemble the cork, had been cut in the forest, and the logs in immense rafts, were moored to the beach. With these huge palmettoes, a square pen was made with bastions at the angles, capable of covering a thousand men. When completed, it presented the appearance of a solid wall 16 feet wide.

15. Although ignorant of gunnery, these valiant

men, nerved with courage, were confident of suc- 1176  
 cess, and toiled on in their preparations. The com-  
 mand of this fort was given to Col. Moultrie. To whom was the command given?  
 Behind it he placed 435 brave soldiers, with  
 31 cannon, the total calibre of which was about  
 513 pounds. Much had been said to Col. Moul-  
 trie in derision of this rudely built affair. A former  
 captain of an English man-of-war, warned them  
 in the most emphatic manner, saying to Col. Moul-  
 trie, "Sir, when the enemy's ships come to lay  
 alongside of your fort, they will knock it down in  
 half an hour." Moultrie very coolly replied, "*Then*  
*we will lie behind the ruins, and prevent the men*  
*from landing.*" What had been said in derision of Moultrie's fort? What in reply?

16. Gen. Lee, whose eye had been accustomed  
 to the scientific structures of Europe, requested the  
 governor to have it immediately evacuated; but  
 looking proudly on the brave men who had sworn  
 to protect it, Governor Rutledge replied, "That he  
 would never give his sanction to such an order  
 while a soldier remained alive to defend it." The  
 sequel will tell how bravely they kept their deter-  
 mination. What did Gen. Lee request of Gov. Rutledge? What did the governor reply?

17. On the morning of the 28th of June, a de-  
 tachment from the fleet, consisting of two ships of  
 50 guns each, 5 of 28, 1 of 26, and a bomb vessel,  
 came steadily up, driven by a fair wind. As they  
 neared the fort, Col. Moultrie's eyes flashed with  
 delight, and he gave orders to his men to fire.  
 That bold onset was an earnest of what followed.  
 Not a shot was returned from the fleet, until they  
 cast anchors directly abreast of the fort, when a  
 fearful volley from more than one hundred cannon  
What took place on the morning of the 28th of June? Describe the commencement of the attack.

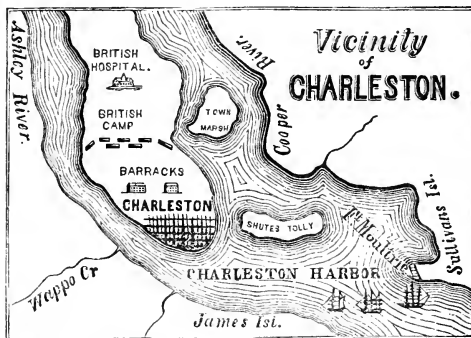
**1776** greeted them, and the battle had fairly commenced.

What is said of Lee's movements?

18. Gen. Lee had stationed himself at Haddrell's Point, expecting to see the fort shattered in fragments in thirty minutes. Hour after hour passed, during which time the firing seemed like one constant peal of thunder; the fort trembled at times like a frightened thing, as hundreds of balls buried themselves in the good palmettoes. Lee passed over to the fort in an open boat, amazed that an English fleet of 266 guns should be kept at bay by 31 cannon and 400 inexperienced artillerists.

Describe the battle.

19. His astonishment was increased as he gazed upon the coolness and intrepidity of those noble men. Finding his presence of no avail, he left the fort, and returned to his old station. An incessant shower of bombs flew through the air, and quantities dropping within the fort, were lost in the morass in the middle. With joy they saw the bomb ves-



Charleston is situated on a point of land formed by the junction of the Ashley and Cooper rivers, about seven miles from the ocean. The entrance to the city is through a narrow channel, on the east of which, and about six miles below the town, is Sullivan's Island. On this island Fort Moultrie was erected, in a position which completely commanded the entrance, and presented a formidable obstacle in the way of an attack on the city. Fort Johnson was erected on James' Island, which is about three miles below Charleston.

Gen. Clinton landed with his troops on Long Island, a short distance east of Sullivan's Island, and erected two batteries, chiefly for the purpose of covering his forces when they should land on Sullivan's Island to attack the fort.

sel rendered useless, while every succeeding discharge told with murderous effect. 1776

20. During the heat of the battle, the flag-staff was shot away, and the flag dropped on the beach. One deep groan of despair was heard from hundreds of the citizens of Charleston, who had crowded the wharves and steeples, and were watching with intense anxiety for the event of the battle. Every face grew pale, as the flag disappeared, and many an eye filled with tears.

What is said of the flag-staff?

Of the agitation of the citizens?

21. But the firing continued, and blaze, and smoke, and thunder answered from the sea. But a few moments elapsed, and they saw the flag shaking its folds in the sea-breeze in its former place. Among the bravest of those brave ones within the fort, was Sergeant Jasper. Quickly he sprang from one of the embrasures, snatched the dripping flag from the ditch, and walking the whole length of the works, though the balls were falling fearfully around him, coolly mounted the logs and supported the flag upon the parapet, until another staff was procured. A shout of joy rung from the wharves and heights of Charleston at the sight.

What is said of Sergeant Jasper?

22. All day long beneath a burning sky, they fought without cessation, and when the level beams of the setting sun lighted up the sea, the battle still raged furiously. Slowly, says one in graphic style, the gray twilight began to creep over the water, and at last darkness settled on the shores and the sea. The scene now became one of indescribable grandeur. That heavy cannonade still continued, and still the spectators who lined the mainland, gazed seaward through the gloom, toward

What is farther said of the battle?

What is said of the scene after sunset?

**1776** the spot where the combat still raged. Night had fallen on the island and fort, and all was dark and invisible there, except when the flash of the guns lit up its form, and then its mysterious bosom for a moment would be inherent with flame, and it seemed as if the sea itself had opened and shot forth fire. Around those ships, the smoke lay like a dark and heavy storm cloud, through which the lightnings incessantly played, and thunders rolled. Moultrie and his men could distinctly hear the heavy blows of their shot, as they struck the ships, and crashed through the solid timbers.

Who fired the last gun as the enemy retreated, and with what effect?

What expressions of joy were given?

23. Finally, the English, despairing of conquering such men, moved quietly away, and it is said Marion (who was afterward so famous for his bravery) fired the last gun as the ships were retiring, as a parting salute, and so well aimed was the piece, that it struck the cabin of the commander's ship, killing two officers and three sailors. All through the streets of Charleston one loud huzza rent the air—" *Victory! Victory!*" while from the little fort went up three hearty cheers, and thenceforward it was named in honor of its gallant defender, Fort Moultrie.

What was the loss on both sides?

24. They mourned over the dead bodies of ten of their band—but they grieved as for brave men, who died in the service of their country fighting for liberty. Twenty-two were wounded, while the loss of the British was about one hundred and seventy-one killed, and two hundred and sixty wounded. A number of officers were slain and their ships shattered almost to a perfect ruin.

25. A few days after this brilliant action, the

bold soldiers at the fort were visited by Gov. Rutledge and many of the fair women of Charleston. The gallant Jasper was brought forward, and as a reward for his chivalric act in replacing the flag on the parapet, Gov. Rutledge buckled his own sword around the stalwart form, while a pair of elegantly embroidered colors were presented to Col. Moultrie's regiment, by Mrs. Elliott, saying at the close of a few words begging them to accept the colors &c., "I make not the least doubt, under Heaven's protection, you will stand by them as long as they can wave in the air of Liberty." Jasper heard this speech and remembered it well.

1776

What rewards were afterward given the brave soldiers?

What was said by Mrs. Elliott on presenting a pair of colors to Col. Moultrie's regiment?

26. Some time after, during the assault on Savannah, Jasper received a mortal wound while in the act of replacing these colors on the parapet of the Springhill redoubt. Feeling the damp dew of death gathering on his brow, he summoned his companions in war about him to hear his last words. Said he, "I have got my furlough. That sword was presented to me by Gov. Rutledge, for my services in the defense of Fort Moultrie. Give it to my father, and tell him I have worn it with honor. If he should weep, tell him his son died in the hope of a better life. Tell Mrs. Elliott, that I have lost my life, supporting the colors which she presented to our regiment."

What of Jasper's future history?

What were some of his last requests?

27. He then sent a message to a Mrs. Jones, whose husband he had rescued with much bravery from the enemy, saying, "If you should ever see Jones, his wife and son, tell them that Jasper is gone, but that the remembrance of the battle which he fought for them, brought a secret joy to his heart,

What message did he send to Mrs. Jones?

**1776** when it was about to stop its motion forever." He expired in a few minutes after closing this last sentence.

Where  
did the  
British  
fleet as-  
semble?

28. The remainder of the fleet set sail for the north, where the whole of the British fleet had been ordered to assemble.

During these transactions at the South, the Continental Congress was in session, watching with anxiety the aspect of affairs in both countries, and revolving the chances for success in the approaching contest.





ENCAMPMENT AT VALLEY FORGE.

1776

## PART II.,

EXTENDING 13 YEARS—TO THE FORMATION OF  
THE FEDERAL GOVERNMENT IN 1789.

### CHAPTER I.



N the first week in June, Richard Henry Lee, one of the deputies from Virginia, made a motion in Congress, *To declare the American colonies free and independent States*, and supported it by an eloquent speech, which found an echo in many hearts. It was still

What motion was made in Congress by Richard Henry Lee?

farther discussed on the 11th of June, when it was

1776

What  
action  
was  
taken?

postponed for subsequent consideration until the first day of July, and at the same time it was voted that a committee be appointed to propose a full *declaration*.

Who  
were the  
members  
of the  
commit-  
tee to  
prepare a  
full Decla-  
ration?

2. The committee was elected by ballot, and consisted of Thomas Jefferson, John Adams, Benjamin Franklin, Roger Sherman, and Robert R. Livingston.

To  
whom  
does the  
merit of  
writing  
the decla-  
ration  
belong?

Mr. Jefferson and Mr. Adams acted as a sub-committee to prepare the draft, and Mr. Jefferson drew up the paper. The merit of this document is Mr. Jefferson's. Some changes were made in it, on the suggestion of other members of the committee, and by others in Congress while it was under discussion.

When  
did the  
colonies  
dissolve  
their al-  
legiance  
to the  
British  
crown?

What  
name did  
they  
adopt?

What  
did they  
express  
in their  
declara-  
tion?

3. On the *4th of July, 1776*, upon the report of the committee, the 13 confederate colonies dissolved their allegiance to the British crown, and boldly declared themselves *Free and Independent* under the name of the *Thirteen* United States of America.

In their declaration they boldly expressed the grievances and oppression for which they could not obtain redress, and proclaimed to the world the causes which impelled them to a separation from the Crown of Great Britain.

What  
does the  
author of  
a pam-  
phlet en-  
titled—  
"Com-  
mon  
Sense,"  
say on  
the ne-  
cessity of  
independ-  
ence?

4. The author of a pamphlet entitled "*Common Sense*," thus argues the necessity of the measure: "We had no credit abroad, because of our *rebellious dependency*. Our ships could obtain no protection in foreign ports, because we afforded them no justifiable reason for granting it to us. The calling of ourselves subjects, and at the same time

fighting against the prince we acknowledge, was a 1776 dangerous precedent to all Europe.

5. "If the grievances justified our taking up arms, they justified our separation ; if they did not justify our separation, neither could they justify our taking arms. All Europe was interested in reducing us as rebels, and all Europe, or the greater part at least, is interested in supporting us in our independent state.

6. "At home our condition was still worse ; our currency had no foundation ; and the state of it would have ruined whig and tory alike. We had no other laws than a kind of moderated passion ; no other civil power than an honest mob ; and no other protection than the temporary attachment of one man to another.

7. "Had independency been delayed a few months longer, this continent would have been plunged into irretrievable confusion ; some violent for it, some against it, all in the greatest cabal, the rich would have been ruined, and the poor destroyed.

"The *necessity* of being independent would have brought it on in a little time, had there been no rupture between Britain and America.

8. "The increasing importance of commerce, the weight and perplexity of legislation, and the enlarged state of European politics, would clearly have shown to the continent the impropriety of remaining subordinate ; for after the coolest reflection on the matter, this must be allowed, "that Britain was too jealous of America to govern it justly ; too ignorant of it to govern it well ; and too distant to govern it at all."

1776

What effect was produced by the pamphlet?

9. This pamphlet was universally read, and most highly admired. The language was plain and forcible, and produced a powerful effect on the public mind. The principles of hereditary government were ridiculed, while the excellences of republican institutions were faithfully portrayed.

What was recommended by Congress to the colonies?

10. According to recommendation of Congress, those colonies that had not yet adopted constitutions, were advised to establish "such governments as might best conduce to the happiness and safety of the people." The colonies had become accustomed to look upon themselves as sovereign States, and the recommendation was generally complied with, and the government was in every instance entirely elective, and at such short periods as to impress upon the rulers their immediate accountability to the people.

What was thought of the subject of independence by the public?

11. The subject of independence had for some time agitated the public mind, and various opinions were entertained relative to that momentous transaction. Some objections were raised, as it was considered doubtful whether the grand object, *liberty*, could be gained. And when we reflect on the deranged condition of the army, the fearful deficiency of resources, and the little prospect of foreign assistance, and at the same time contemplate the prodigious powers and resources of the enemy, we look with wonder upon this bold measure of Congress.

Why do we look with wonder on this bold measure?

What is said of the fortitude of the signers?

12. It has been said, that the history of the world cannot furnish an instance of fortitude and heroic magnanimity parallel to that displayed by the members, whose signatures are affixed to the Dec-

laration of American Independence. Their vener- 1776  
 ated names will ornament the brightest pages of  
 American history, and be transmitted to the latest  
 generations.

13. A signature to this paper would be regarded  
 in England as TREASON, and expose them to the  
 halter or the block. These brave men knew well  
 what an ignominious death awaited them, in case  
 their experiment failed. But they had counted the  
 cost, and realized the responsibility of their station.  
 As a nation the American people, in their helpless-  
 ness, bowed before the omnipotent Ruler of the  
 world, and besought his protection and guidance.  
 They felt that their cause was just, they were op-  
 pressed in their dearest rights and privileges, and  
 they hesitated not to appeal to Heaven for aid.

What  
would  
have  
been the  
conse-  
quences  
to them  
if their  
exper-  
iment had  
failed?

To  
whom  
did they  
look for  
aid and  
protec-  
tion?

14. The President of Congress, *John Hancock*,  
 led the way in this bold work, and the original  
 paper still exhibits the characters written by no  
 coward's hand. Of all the 56 signers, but one  
 hand trembled as they signed what might have  
 proved their own death warrant. The name of  
 Stephen Hopkins is traced in trembling lines owing  
 to a severe attack of palsy, with which he had  
 been afflicted.

What is  
said of  
the sig-  
natures  
of the  
signers?

15. The pen with which these signatures were  
 made, is now in the cabinet of the Massachusetts  
 Historical Society. But the signers have all gone.  
 Their bodies are at rest in the tomb, but they live  
 in their example, in the recorded proofs of their  
 own noble actions, principles, and opinions, which  
 for succeeding generations will act upon the affairs  
 of men throughout the civilized world.

What is  
said of  
their  
death  
and their  
example?

1776

What is  
said of  
the last  
of this  
band?

16. Charles Carroll of Carrollton was the last of this venerable body who survived. He lived to see one after another leave the stage of life, and go down to the grave with whitened hairs. The longevity of the signers has been frequently noticed.

What is  
said of  
the long-  
evity of  
the sign-  
ers of the  
Declara-  
tion?

17. The average lives of the New England delegation (14 in number) was 75 years. Four of the others lived to the age of 90 and upward; 14 exceeded 80 years, and most of the others reached the age of threescore years and ten. They had lived to see the goodness of the Lord in granting them freedom from oppression, and in their advanced age could bear testimony to their posterity, that God was the hearer and answerer of prayer.

What  
testimo-  
ny could  
they bear  
to their  
posterity?

What  
does An-  
thon say  
in his  
Lives of  
the Sign-  
ers to the  
Declara-  
tion?

18. Anthon says in his Lives of the Signers to the Declaration, "It remains to us to cherish their memory, and emulate their virtues, by perpetuating and extending the blessings which they have bequeathed. So long as we preserve our country, this fame cannot die, for it is reflected from the surface of every thing that is beautiful and valuable in our land. We cannot recur too often nor dwell too long on the lives and characters of such men; for our own will take something of their form and impression from those on which they rest. If we inhale the moral atmosphere in which they moved, we must feel its purifying and invigorating influence."

How was  
the dec-  
laration  
received  
by old  
and  
young  
through-  
out the  
Union?

19. Voices of joy throughout the Union welcomed the declaration. From old and young, master and servant, the glad tones were echoed, *America is, and of a right ought to be, a free and independent nation.*

20. In Virginia, the rejoicings were almost beyond description. The name of King George was suppressed in all public prayers, and the great seal of the commonwealth represented Virtue as the tutelary genius of the province, trampling on tyranny, under the figure of a prostrate man whose crown had fallen from his head, and bearing in one hand a scourge and the other a chain. The words *Sic semper tyrannis* were inscribed around the effigy of Virtue. The reverse represented Liberty with her wand and cap; Ceres, with a horn of plenty in one hand and a sheaf of wheat in the other, and at the foot these words: *Deus nobis hæc otia fecit.*

1773

What was done in Virginia?

Describe the great seal of the commonwealth.

21. In New York, the leaden statue of George III. was taken down and converted into bullets.

What was done with the statue of George III. in New York?

In Boston, thirteen salutes, corresponding to the number of American States, were fired, and *King* street received the name of *State* street. The bells rang out a joyous peal, while members of the council and House of Representatives, magistrates, clergymen, selectmen, assembled to hear the news proclaimed, and in the loud huzzas from the concourse of people, every voice joined. After ensigns of royalty, lions, crowns and sceptres were destroyed, the people felt that they were forever absolved from all allegiance to a tyrant's throne.

What was done in Boston?

What did the people feel?

22. The British ministry were confounded at what they called the daring enormity of the colonists, in spurning their mighty power and authority. They were surprised, that *rebels* dared to show such temper and spirit. Forthwith they determined by augmented forces to crush them at a blow, and

What is said of the surprise of the British ministry, and what did they determine to do?

**1776** to coerce them into a sense of duty and submission to their king.

From what foreign princes did the English parliament obtain troops?

23. Doubting the competency of their own power to subjugate the colonies, the English parliament, at an immense expense, resorted to the aid of foreign troops to prosecute their bloody work. They entered into a treaty with several German princes to furnish 17,000 men, to aid in reducing the Americans to vassalage. Besides the wages parliament paid these foreigners, the terms in the treaties stipulated that thirty pounds sterling should be paid for each soldier slain, and fifteen for each one disabled. It was asserted in the House of Lords, that the expense to England for these foreign troops was not less than 1,500,000 pounds for one year.

Who came over with the English army, and with what powers were they invested? Where and when did they land, and by whom were they joined? When did Gen. Howe arrive from Boston? What would be the number of the English army on the arrival of the Hessians? What proclamation did Gen. Howe make in June?

24. With a horde of Hessians, Brunswickers, Waldeckers, English, Scotch and Irish came two commissioners, Lord Howe and General Howe, with powers to restore peace to the colonies, and grant pardon to such of his majesty's subjects as should deserve clemency. These royal commissioners landed at Staten Island on the 12th of July, and about the same time Gen. Clinton arrived with the shattered fleet from Charleston. The troops under Gen. Howe, which had evacuated Boston, reached Staten Island on the 2d of July, so that the British army here amounted to 24,000. When the Hessian troops joined, the army would consist of 35,000 of the best drilled soldiers in Europe.

25. In June, Gen. Howe had announced his proclamation of pardon to all well-disposed rebels, and promised a large remuneration to any who should aid in re-establishing the royal authority.



Congress boldly and wisely caused this proclamation to be printed with accompanying remarks, showing the people its insidious nature, and advising them to be true to their own cause.

1776

How did Congress treat this proclamation?

26. The commissioners then dispatched Col. Patterson, adjutant-general of the British army to Gen. Washington at New York with letters respecting their mission, but as the letters were not directed in a manner expressive of his official capacity, his Excellency refused to receive them.

Who was dispatched with letters to Washington?

Why did he refuse to receive them?

27. In a few days after, Col. Patterson again waited on Gen. Washington, with a letter directed to *George Washington, Esq., &c., &c., &c.*, which they hoped would remove all difficulty, as the three *et ceteras* might be understood to imply every thing that ought to follow. Gen. Washington absolutely declined receiving this letter, adding that as the three *et ceteras* might mean *every thing*, they might also mean *any thing*, and he must have all public letters directed to him according to his rank.

How was the next letter addressed to Washington?

Why did he refuse to receive this also?

28. Col. Patterson then said that the letters contained offers of pardon, &c., to which Gen. Washington coolly replied, that the *Americans had committed no wrong*, and therefore wanted no pardons; they were only defending what they deemed their indisputable rights. Col. Patterson manifested great solicitude that the letters might be received, and a reconciliation take place. Gen. Washington with firmness and dignity refused.

What did Patterson then say, and what was the reply of Washington?

29. Gen. Washington was well assured that warlike operations would speedily follow, and forthwith preparations were made to fortify New York,

Of what was Washington assured, and what preparations were immediately made?

1776

Why did the English wish to obtain possession of New York?

Where was Washington's head-quarters?

Where was the army principally stationed?

Where was Gen. Clinton stationed, and for what purpose?

What was Gen. Greene ordered to do?

Who succeeded during his sickness, and why was he unprepared for defense?

What position did his army occupy?

Where were Sullivan's forces?

What was the number of the army?

How many were ordered to join it?

and increase the army. The possession of New York was a favorite object of the British, on account of its central situation, and the ease with which possession could be maintained. In April, Gen. Washington had fixed his head-quarters in that city, and endeavored by every means in his power to prepare for its defense.

30. The greatest part of his army was stationed in New York, while a division was ordered to Canada, and another left in Massachusetts. Two detachments guarded Governor's Island and Paulus Hook, while Gen. Clinton with some militia, observed New Rochelle, East and West Chester, in order to prevent the British from landing on the North. Gen. Greene had been ordered in the spring to occupy Long Island, and had thoroughly examined the ground, established his posts, and made great preparations for meeting the enemy. At this most critical moment he was seized with a bilious fever, which prostrated him for many days. Putnam was ordered to succeed him, and from his ignorance of the ground, was unprepared, in every way, for an efficient defense. His army occupied Brooklyn, the left wing resting on Wallabout Bay; his right was bordered by a marsh near Gowannus Cove. Gen. Sullivan guarded the coast and the road from Bedford to Jamaica.

31. The continental army numbered only 10,514 effective soldiers, and these were so circumstanced that but a small part could be brought into action. Thirteen thousand troops were ordered to join the army, which with the invalids and men destitute of arms, would increase the number to 27,000.

32. On the 22d of August, the British forces under Generals Clinton, Cornwallis, Percy, and Grant, landed on the southern shore of Long Island, causing the inhabitants to flee in terror before them. Many of them fired their own houses and stacks of grain, to prevent their becoming British property. The two armies were about four miles distant, separated by a range of hills running from east to west.

1776

When and where did the English forces land, and what did the inhabitants do on their approach? By what were the two armies separated?

33. Over these hills called the heights of Gowanus were three roads: one by the Narrows, through which Gen. Grant passed; another by Flatbush, through which the Hessians under Gen. Heister marched; and the third road by way of Flatlands, which was taken by the column under Gen. Clinton. It was important that these passes should have been thoroughly guarded, but Gen. Clinton on the morning of the 27th gained possession of one of the defiles without any resistance. The British were seen advancing on the other roads, and the American troops were drawn up from their camps to oppose them.

Describe the different routes which the enemy took.

34. These movements of the enemy proved to be only feints to divert the attention of Gen. Putnam from the main body, who were cautiously and silently advancing under Gen. Clinton by the road on the left. Early on the morning of the 28th, an attack was made by the Hessians and a detachment under Gen. Grant. The Americans were fighting bravely when first informed of the approach of Gen. Clinton, who had passed round to the left.

What feint did Gen. Clinton make to divert the attention of the Americans from his main force?

35. In this desperate situation, the affrighted Americans had no safety but in retreat. They

When and by whom was the attack made?

1776

What  
was their  
situation  
when  
Clinton  
ap-  
proach-  
ed?

Describe  
the ac-  
tion.

endeavored to regain their camp, but were intercepted by the light infantry and dragoons of Gen. Clinton, who drove them back on the Hessians. An awful scene of butchery took place during a succession of attacks and many were taken prisoners. For six hours several regiments of the Americans under Lord Stirling, continued fighting in this desperate manner, but being ignorant of the movements made by Gen. Clinton, their retreat

## VICINITY OF NEW YORK.



The British army occupied the plain extending from the Narrows to Flatbush. Gen. Grant commanded the left wing near the coast, De Heister, with the Hessian troops, the centre, and Sir Henry Clinton the right.

The city of New York stands on the south-east end of an island anciently named Manhattan, but now called by the name of the city. The Hudson or North river bounds it on the west. It is about fifteen miles long, and only two broad. The American army was posted partly at New York and partly on Long Island. On the 2d of July the British landed without opposition on Staten Island, which lies on the coast of New Jersey, and is separated from Long Island by a channel called the Narrows.

The American division on the island, about 11,000 strong, occupied a fortified camp at Brooklyn, opposite New York, under the command of Putnam, Sullivan, and Brigadi'r-general Lord Sterling.

On the 22d of August Gen. Howe determined to commence active operations, and crossed the Narrows without opposition, and landed on Long Island between Utrecht and Gravesend. A range of woody hills running from the Narrows to Jamaica separated the two armies.

was intercepted. Many, however, broke through and escaped to the lines. 1776

36. The Americans defended themselves with great bravery, but were unequal to the contest. The British possessed the most decided advantage in numbers, artillery, discipline, and experience. That Washington should be able to keep the field at all, with these ever shifting, undisciplined, unfurnished troops, has been proclaimed a wonder; much stranger it is, that he should ever have risked them in open fight. Not that they lacked bravery or patriotism, or that they could not form squares to repel cavalry, or display their ranks to make a charge; but they could not even *change front in battle*, or execute the most simple manœuvre to prevent being outflanked, without being thrown into greater or less disorder.

In what did the enemy possess the advantage?

Why has it been proclaimed a wonder that Washington should be able to keep the field with the troops under his command?

37. In this instance, British discipline triumphed over the mere desperation and bravery of raw troops, whose officers even were not acquainted with the science of war. The American loss, according to Gen. Washington's computation, was 1,000. Among the prisoners were Generals Sullivan and Stirling, and 82 other officers of various ranks. The British loss was estimated at 450.

Over what did English discipline triumph?

What was the American, and what the English loss, and who were among the prisoners?

38. This battle was considered the most unskillful and imprudent one fought during the war. Had the British shown sufficient energy, all the Americans except the cavalry might have been secured or slain. The battle was fought against the advice and wish of Washington, and but for his consummate skill and energy, the whole army would have been lost.

What is said of this battle, and against whose advice was it fought?

1776

What is said of Washington as he saw so many of his men slaughtered?

39. During the engagement, Gen. Washington crossed over from New York to Brooklyn, and his stout heart was moved to anguish, on seeing so many of his best men slaughtered. Had he, in this moment of affliction, acted from impulse or for vain-glory, he might have drawn all his troops from the encampment and from New York, but on mature deliberation, he decided to preserve his army for the future.

Where was Greene during the action, and what is said of him?

40. Gen. Greene tossing on his sick bed, heard the thunder of the first cannon as it shook the house in which he lay helpless, and half rising from his feverish couch, he clasped his hands, exclaiming on the affliction of "*being confined at such a time.*" His brave heart was wrung with such sorrow as only heroes know, and as the uproar of the combat increased, his agitation became intense. Explosion after explosion shook his bed, and constant inquiries were made as to the fate of the battle. At last, when told that his favorite regiment had been terribly handled, and cut to pieces, he could contain himself no longer, but burst into an agony of tears.

What is said of the army after this defeat?

41. After this distressing defeat, our army retreated within their lines at Brooklyn, and were exposed to the greatest hazard; the troops fatigued and discouraged by defeat, a superior enemy in their front, and a powerful fleet about to enter the East river with a view of effectually cutting off their retreat; the care of Providence, and the wisdom and vigilance of Washington, preserved them from destruction.

What preserved it from destruction?

42. Having resolved to withdraw his troops from

their hazardous position, he crossed over to the Island on the night of the 29th of August, and in person conducted the retreat in so successful a manner, under circumstances the most trying, that it is considered a remarkable example of good generalship. A circumstance, which is remarked as manifestly providential, is, that a thick fog enveloped the whole of Long Island in obscurity about 2 o'clock in the morning, which at this season of the year is quite unusual, while the atmosphere on the opposite bank was perfectly clear.

1776

When and to what place did the army retreat?

What providential circumstance is remarked?

43. About 8 o'clock in the evening, the troops began to move in the greatest silence. A violent north-east wind, and the ebb tide, which rendered the current very rapid, prevented the passage. Many hearts beat anxiously, for much depended on this retreat. Suddenly and unexpectedly the wind veered to the north-west. They were immediately wafted over, and in a few moments landed in New York.

Describe their retreat.

44. Never was any movement more manifestly favored by Providence, and the Americans felt and openly acknowledged the especial care of God in so signally favoring their safe retreat. The wind seemed to change, at one time, exactly to their need, and at another, an unusual fog veiled them from an enemy so near, that the sound of their pick-axes was plainly heard.

What instances are given showing the interposition of Providence?

45. The field artillery, tents, baggage, and 9,000 men were conveyed over a river upward of a mile wide and landed at New York in less than 13 hours. Gen. Washington saw one regiment after another safely depart, and, notwithstanding the entreaties

**1776** of his officers, was the last to leave the shore. In a few minutes after the rear-guard had left the lines, they were entered by the British.

What message did Lord Howe send to Congress after this defeat?

46. Lord Howe, supposing that the hostile spirit of the rebels must have been humbled by this defeat, sent a message to Congress stating that his Lordship was desirous of a conference with some of the members as private gentlemen. The members did not consider themselves justified in doing this; but, ever desirous of establishing a peace on reasonable terms, offered to send a committee to inquire whether his lordship had any authority to treat with persons authorized by Congress for this purpose, and what that authority was, and also to hear such propositions as he should think proper to make.

What was the reply of Congress?

Who were appointed to meet Howe?

What was the proposition of Howe?

What was the reply of the committee?

47. Accordingly Dr. Franklin, John Adams, and Edward Rutledge, were chosen to meet with Lord Howe on Staten Island. The first proposition of his lordship was, that the colonies should return to their allegiance and obedience to the government of Great Britain. The committee replied, "It is not to be expected after the contempt with which our former humble petitions have been treated; and it was not till the last act of parliament, which denounced war against us, and put us out of the king's protection, that we declared our independence, and now it is too late for oppressed and indignant people to return to a dependent state." The committee conducted the business with great dignity and judgment.

48. Gen. Washington finding New York city an unsafe place, as he was in danger of being sur-



rounded, retired with his whole army about nine miles to the north. This also was a hazardous undertaking; but he was allowed by a protecting Providence to effect it—though under a heavy cannonade from the British shipping.

1776

What movement did Washington make, and why?

49. A circumstance occurred on the route which excited considerable interest. Major-general Putnam, at the head of 3,500 continental troops, was in the rear, and the last that left the city. In order to avoid any of the enemy that might be advancing by the main road, he chose another near the North river, and parallel with it. But at the same time he little suspected, while he was swiftly marching with his weary and dispirited soldiers, that a body of 8,000 British and Hessians was advancing on the same road. Most fortunately for the fate of the Americans, the British generals seeing no prospect of engaging our troops, halted their own and repaired to the mansion of Mr. Robert Murray, a firm friend to the cause of American independence. Mrs. Murray kindly offered them cake and wine, and they were induced to tarry there some hours.

What circumstance occurred?

At whose house were the British entertained?

50. In the mean time, the soldiers of Putnam reached the cross road, and thus escaped a encounter with a greatly superior force. Ten minutes more would have been sufficient to have brought them together, and thus cut off Gen. Putnam's retreat. Mrs. Murray was often afterward noticed in terms of high commendation.

51. The enemy immediately took possession of the city. A few days afterward a most destructive fire broke out and raged so violently, that about 1,000 houses were consumed. Some of the finest

What is said of the fire?

1776

edifices were destroyed. It was estimated, that about one-quarter of the city was laid waste. Some supposed the disaster was occasioned by American emissaries, and others maintained that it was purely accidental.

What had experience taught the Americans respecting short enlistments?

What is said of the discipline of the army?

52. It was found, by sad experience, that little dependence could be placed on an army of militia, whose terms of service were so limited, that they were continually passing from the camp to their farms. It had been the fond hope of the Americans, that the struggle for their independence would not be of long continuance, and thousands, after the battle of Lexington, rushed from their farms to the scene of action. Many of the soldiers were indulged in the privilege of choosing their own officers, who too frequently proved unqualified to discharge their duties in a manner advantageous to the public service.

53. After the unfortunate battle of Long Island, the militia deserted their colors by hundreds, and in some instances, whole regiments disbanded.

From what did these inconveniences arise?

These inconveniences proceeded, in some measure, from the inability of Congress to remunerate the troops for their expenses and toil during the war, but the state of affairs became alarming, and threatened a dissolution of the army.

What did Washington plainly assure Congress?

54. At this critical moment, the energetic mind of Washington strove earnestly to arrest this fearful spirit of disorganization. He plainly assured Congress, that unless furnished with a permanent army, to remain with him until the termination of the war, he must despair of success. Hitherto they had been unwilling to incur the expense of a stand-

ing force, but they now were aware of the absolute necessity of the case, and forthwith resolved to raise one of about 75,000 men, to serve for three years, or during the war.

1776

What did they resolve to do?

55. These troops were to be systematically arranged; and to encourage enlistments, each soldier was to receive a bounty of twenty dollars, besides his rations and wages, and one hundred acres of land if he served until the close of the war. The officers were to receive from two to five hundred acres—in proportion to their rank.

What bounty was each man to receive?

56. Some time must of necessity elapse before a better state of affairs could be brought about, and Washington endeavored to cheer the little band of ill-found and disheartened soldiers, by the hope of eventual success, when, in the enjoyment of a free government, they might enjoy the peaceful pleasures of home. Seeing around him a large and victorious army, eager to oppose him, he manœuvred with great dexterity without risking a general engagement.

How did Washington cheer his men?

57. On the 16th of September the Americans gained an advantage over the British, who had sought to obtain possession of two roads, leading east, from which Washington received his supplies. Major Leitch was mortally wounded at the head of his detachment, and the brave Col. Knowlton was killed. The Americans lost about fifty men, killed and wounded, and the enemy more than one hundred.

What advantage was gained by the Americans?

Who were among the killed?

58. On the 28th of October, a detachment of our army under Gen. Lee, opposing a large force under Gens. Clinton and De Heister, engaged in warm skirmishes near White Plains and the river Bronx.

What generals opposed Gen. Lee at White Plains?

**1776** Neither party could claim any advantage, and there was considerable loss on both sides. That of the British, by their own accounts, was 350 killed, and 670 wounded and prisoners. As a great number of the American militia retired from the field in disorder, the proper return of their loss was not exactly ascertained.

With  
what  
success?

59. A great number of Hessians and Waldeckers fell into the hands of the Americans, and, contrary to their expectations, received very kind treatment. The British, in order to increase their ferocity, had led them to believe that if they were taken prisoners, the Americans would most barbarously stick their bodies full of splinters and burn them to death.

What  
treat-  
ment did  
the Wal-  
deckers  
receive?

60. As a strong reinforcement of British troops under Lord Percy arrived, Gen. Washington left his unsafe position on the night of the 30th, and retired to North Castle, about five miles distant. He left here 7,500 men under Gen. Lee, and crossed the Hudson into New Jersey, and took post near Fort Lee, situated on the North river about ten miles from New York. Garrisons had been left here and at Fort Washington, opposite to Fort Lee, in order to preserve the command of the Hudson. About 2,700 men, under Col. Magaw, were stationed at Fort Washington.

Why did  
Wash-  
ington  
think  
best to  
retire to  
North  
Castle?

Why had  
garrisons  
been  
placed at  
Forts  
Wash-  
ington  
and Lee?

Who  
com-  
manded  
at Fort  
Wash-  
ington?

Describe  
the at-  
tack on  
Fort  
Wash-  
ington?

Why  
were  
they  
obliged  
to yield?

61. These were attacked on the 16th of November, by four divisions of the enemy in different quarters. The little band fought long and bravely, and several times drove back the enemy with great slaughter; their ammunition was nearly exhausted; one outpost after another was forced in, and they still refused the summons to surrender. But they

found it useless to withstand combined attacks in so many directions, and yielded on honorable terms. 1776

62. The British sustained the loss of about 1,200 killed and wounded. The Americans lost about 400 killed or wounded, and the remainder of the garrison was captured. It is said that General Washington was so situated, that he could have a view of the attack, and when he saw his brave men bayoneted while begging for quarter, he wept, and exclaimed bitterly against the savage deed.

What was the loss on both sides?

How was Gen. Washington affected by their cruel conduct?

63. Fort Lee was soon afterward evacuated by Gen. Greene, in order to save the troops from being captured, but they lost their stores, tents and baggage.

What is said of the evacuation of Fort Lee?

Gen. Washington's force was augmented by the garrison from Fort Lee; but even then it only numbered 3,000 men, destitute of tents, blankets, or even cooking utensils. With these troops he retreated to Newark with a steadfast heart and serene countenance.

What was the number and condition of Washington's army?

64. Ever relying on God for support and direction, he moved calmly forward amid the darkest storms, assured that even defeat in battle, insults of foes, or ingratitude and treachery in friends, would eventually work together for good to those whose cause was blessed of God. Here we still behold Washington in this darkest hour in American history, firmly trusting in an overruling Providence, calling on those around him to exercise the same faith, and cheering them in their toilsome marches.

On whom did Washington rely in all his trials?

65. Darker and darker grew the cloud above

1776

What is said of the situation and dreary prospect of the army?

What did many of the soldiers do?

them. Every day ushered in some unlooked-for calamity. In their retreat through New Jersey, they were exposed in an open country in mid-winter, without tents to shelter their scantily clothed forms—poorly fed, without instruments to intrench themselves, and in the midst of a population of Tories. Many of the soldiers, both militia and regulars, alarmed at the fearful prospect before them, deserted in bodies.

What route did Washington take in his retreat?

How many of the citizens of Philadelphia responded to the call for reinforcements?

66. Still Washington pressed onward, while exulting thousands of the enemy, well fed and confident, pursued. From Newark, Washington successfully retreated to Brunswick, then to Princeton and Trenton, and finally across the Delaware with the enemy often in sight. Here again a call was made for reinforcements from New Jersey and Pennsylvania, and to the honor of the latter, 1,500 of the citizens of Philadelphia came promptly to the aid of Washington. They cheerfully abandoned their comfortable fire-sides, and for the love they bore their country, were content to spend the nights in tents or barns, and oftentimes in the open air in mid-winter.

What is said of Washington during this retreat?

67. It was generally agreed, that in this distressing retreat through New Jersey and over the Delaware, under the most pressing difficulties, Washington displayed the talents and wisdom of a great military commander, endowed with unfailing resources of mind.

What proclamation was issued by Gen. Howe?

68. Gen. Howe, again availing himself of the forlorn condition of the Continentals, issued another proclamation, couched in haughty style, demanding submission to the king's authority within sixty

days from the date of the paper. Two of the members of the continental Congress, Mr. Gallo-  
way and Mr. Allen, accepted pardon, and submitted to kingly rule—but the greater part of the American people rejected the offer, though told that the gallows would be the alternative.

1776

How  
were its  
demands  
obeyed?

69. On the day that our army was driven over the Delaware, the British, with a fleet and 600 of the army, took possession of Rhode Island without any opposition, many of the inhabitants being friendly to the royal cause.

When  
did the  
British  
obtain  
possession of  
Rhode  
Island?

Congress resolved, on the 12th of December, that it be recommended to all the United States, as soon as possible, to appoint a day of fasting and humiliation, imploring God to show favor to them in this time of affliction.

What  
was re-  
solved  
in Con-  
gress on  
the 12th  
of Dec.?

70. They resolved also to retire for safety to Baltimore, knowing it to be the intention of the enemy to possess themselves of the city of Philadelphia. Washington, during his retreat, had ordered Gen. Lee to join him from White Plains with all possible speed, but Lee refused to move. Day after day passed by, and still no reinforcements appeared. At length he saw fit by slow marches to put his troops in motion, but on the route, as a just punishment for his disobedience, he was taken prisoner.

Why did  
they  
leave  
Philadel-  
phia?

What or-  
ders had  
Gen. Lee  
received  
from  
Wash-  
ington?

71. For some unaccountable reason, he had taken up his lodgings at a house three or four miles from his troops in the heart of a disaffected and tory country. Information of this astonishing fact was soon given, and a body of light-horse under Col. Harcourt surrounded the house, and made Gen. Lee prisoner. Here was another untoward disaster

How was  
he pun-  
ished in  
disobe-  
dience of  
his com-  
mand?

Describe  
the man-  
ner of  
his cap-  
ture.

**1776** for the Americans. The first major-general of their army hurried off as prisoner by a party of dragoons, without hat or cloak, to New York, in triumph.

**What was probably the reason of Lee's disobeying orders?** 72. Many suspicions were aroused by this singular event. Considering his protracted disobedience in the moment of the most critical danger to the army, and knowing the unbounded ambition of Gen. Lee, we have no doubt but he delayed, that Washington and his dispirited band might fall into the hands of the enemy, and the supreme command devolve on himself.

**What of Lee's military knowledge?** 73. Gen. Lee was a man of great military experience, had fought in European battles, and been a chosen friend and aid-de-camp of the king of Poland, and knew perfectly well what belonged to every subordinate officer, and that there could be no greater act of disobedience, than to refuse orders like those of Washington. We shall see in pursuing our history, how the wicked are punished from their own actions, while the good are rewarded by walking in accordance with the laws of God.

**Who now took command of his division, and what did he do?** 74. Gen. Sullivan now took command of Gen. Lee's division, and hastened to join the main army, thus augmenting it to 7,000 effective men. With these, Gen. Washington resolved, with all the energy of his mighty spirit, to make one fearful struggle. He dared not go into winter-quarters in the midst of such a season of gloom—almost of despair.

**What resolution did Washington take?** At Trenton, on the other side of the icy waters of the Delaware, were stationed 1,500 Hessians; while farther on, at different places, were several other detachments.

**Who were stationed on the other side of the Delaware?**



75. Headley says, that the noble form of Washington, on the night of the 25th of December, just at dusk, stood on the shore of the Delaware. His horse, saddled and bridled, was near him, while all around were heard the rumbling of artillery wagons, and the confused sounds of marching men and hasty orders. The deep, sullen stream went swiftly by, and the angry heavens betokened a cold and stormy night.

1776

What is said of Washington as he stood beside the Delaware?

76. As he stood thus and watched, there stole over his majestic countenance a look of inexpressible solemnity. Before the morning the fate of that gallant army would be fixed, and the next rising sun would shine down on his country lifted from its depth of despondency, or sunk still deeper in ruin. Events big with the fate of the army and the nation were crowding to their development, and his soul was absorbed in their contemplation.

Why did solemn feelings steal over him?

77. At length the boats were launched amid the floating ice, and were soon struggling in the centre of the stream. The night was dark and cold—the wind swept by in gusts, and amid the roar of the water and crashing of the ice were heard the loud words of command and shouts of the men.

Describe the passage of the river.

78. The boats, forced backward and forward by the icy fragments, became scattered in the gloom, and would have been thrown into confusion, but for the friend of Washington, Knox, who, standing on the farther shore, kept shouting through the darkness with his stentorian voice, thus indicating the point for which they were to steer. There too stood Washington, hour after hour, with that strangely calm, yet determined face, while his soul was racked with

What is said of Washington as he watched the movements of his men?

**1776** anxiety as the night waned rapidly away, and his distracted army still struggled in the midst of the icy stream. All night long did he stand there, on the frozen shore, urging on his weary troops—now looking anxiously at his watch, and now striving to pierce the gloom that covered the water.

After they had crossed the river, what routes did the several divisions of the army take, and what was their destination?

Dec. 26.

Describe their march.

79. At length, at four o'clock in the morning, the columns got under way, and pressed rapidly forward. Sullivan, with one column, took the road beside the river, while Washington, with Greene, took a parallel road, intending to enter Trenton in different points at the same time. It was still dark, and just then, as if in harmony with the scene, a storm of snow and hail arose, driving full in the soldiers' faces. Their clothes were soaked with wet, and the muskets, many of them, rendered unfit for use. Still, in reply to the fearful question, "What is to be done?" the disheartening intelligence was given, "*Advance and charge!*"

What is said of Washington?

80. Nearing the Hessian picket, Washington ordered the guns to be unlimbered, and the whole column to advance. Still riding in front, where the first volley must fall, his friends became alarmed for his safety, and again and again besought him to fall back to a place of greater security. But he rode sternly forward amid their guns, with the storm beating furiously on his noble brow, every lineament of his countenance revealing the unalterable purpose of his soul.

81. The thunder of cannon was now heard through the storm from Sullivan's division; and Stark, with the advance guard, had already broken into the streets, and with a battle shout

awoke the Hessians from their dream of security. 1776  
 The smoke of the artillery curled around the form of Washington, as, still beside them, he moved on and calmly pointed out the different objects on which the fire should be directed.

Describe  
the con-  
flict.

82. All now was confusion—the clattering of flying horsemen sounding through the streets, officers hurried to and fro to rally their men, and shouts and cries rung through the air in every direction. Just then, the enemy wheeled two cannon into the street up which the column of Washington was advancing. Young Monroe, afterward one of our presidents, and Capt. Washington, a relative of the commander-in-chief, immediately sprung forward with their men, charged up to the very muzzles, and took them, although the lighted matches were already descending on the pieces. When the smoke lifted, these two gallant officers were both seen reclining in the arms of their followers, wounded, though not mortally.

83. The Americans pressed onward, bearing down all opposition, until the enemy, confused and terrified, struck their flags. At a gallop Washington dashed forward, exclaiming to one of his officers, "*This is a glorious day for our country!*" Col. Rahl, the commanding officer, was mortally wounded, and seven other wounded officers were left on parole at Trenton.

What  
was the  
result of  
the bat-  
tle?

84. About 35 soldiers were killed, 60 wounded, and 948, including 30 officers, were taken prisoners, amounting in all to 1,048. Of our troops, not more than 10 were killed and wounded. Gen. Washington recrossed the Delaware the same day

What  
course  
did  
Wash-  
ington  
take af-  
ter the  
fight?

**1776** in triumph, bringing off six excellent brass cannon, 1,200 small arms, three standards, and a quantity of baggage. This was a brilliant achievement, and was every where considered a master stroke in the art of war.

What was done with the Hessian prisoners, and what did they call Washington?

85. The Hessian prisoners were allowed to retain their baggage, and sent into Pennsylvania with strict orders from Washington, that they should be treated with kindness. This was unexpected to them and called forth emotions of gratitude and veneration for Washington, whom they called a "*very good rebel*."

What were the feelings of the British on hearing of the battle?

86. The British were astonished, that an army, which they considered as on the point of annihilation, should dare to attack them. They were idly reposing, in the hope that one battle would forever crush the rebellion, as they termed our war. In their march through New Jersey, they had committed such outrageous ravages and indiscriminate plunder, as must be deemed disgraceful to any people. Hundreds of inoffensive inhabitants were stripped of their clothing, and exposed, in the midst of horrid insults and indecencies, to the inclemency of the season.

What cruelties had they committed in New Jersey?

What did Washington determine to do?

87. The cries of the oppressed were heard, and reinforcements of militia and troops enabled Washington again to cross the Delaware into New Jersey, and face the enemy under Cornwallis, who had been dispatched from New York with a large army to retrieve the heavy disasters of Trenton. Washington had 4,700 men, only 1,200 of whom were regulars, while Cornwallis was at the head of 8,000

What was the amount of the English and American forces?

veteran troops, well supplied with dragoons and 1776 artillery.

88. Detachments of the Americans were sent forward to harass the march of Cornwallis, with orders to dispute every inch of the ground. Bravely they obeyed their command, bearing up gallantly against the advancing host, until at sunset, the two armies, drawn up for battle, stood front to front, in terrific uproar from the cannon on both sides. Washington's situation was one of peril, with a superior enemy in front, and the Delaware river in the rear.

What orders were given by Washington?

Describe the meeting of the two armies.

89. A successful attack on our army would prove its ruin. But he relied on Providence, as he told his troops before facing the enemy—"Maintain every inch of your position till night, and trust to Providence for the rest." When the gathering shades of evening deepened, Cornwallis, contrary to the repeated remonstrances of his officers, commanded the attack to cease until daylight. Here was shown the kind care of Providence in which the Commander-in-chief trusted.

What was the situation of Washington, and what did he say to his troops?

How was the kind care of Providence shown?

90. Forthwith Washington began to extricate himself from this perilous situation, and here again we see the skill and address of a great general. In the evening he ordered a number of blazing fires to be kindled in his camp, leaving men to keep them burning, and to work on the intrenchments to deceive his antagonist.

1777  
How did Washington extricate himself from his perilous situation?

Jan. 3.

91. Rousing his weary men, he bade them silently move on by a circuitous route. The weather was very cold, and the night dark, but they cheerfully followed their general, without noise

What orders were given, and how were they obeyed?

**1777** or interruption of any kind, until 9 o'clock the next morning, when they attacked and routed three regiments of the British stationed at Princeton. The enemy lost about 500 men, by this well-timed manœuvre. Our loss was small numerically, but a beloved and gallant form lay prostrate in death, over whom many tears were shed.

What was the loss of the British?

What is said of Gen. Mercer?

92. Brigadier-general Mercer, finding himself in the hands of the enemy, submitted, but they, deaf to the cry for quarter, fell upon him with worse than savage cruelty. Not satisfied in their murderous thirst for blood, by stabbing him again and again with their bayonets, they disfigured his face with the butt-end of a musket in a most horrible manner.

What of Washington?

93. Washington, during the heat of the battle, seized a flag from a standard-bearer, and pushed forward in front, about thirty yards from both armies, regardless of danger, encouraging his troops to make a bold stand.

What preparations were the British making?

What is said of their surprise at our attack?

What is said of Cornwallis, and what movement did he make?

94. While the battle was raging at Princeton, the British were under arms preparing to subdue the Americans at Trenton. Little did they dream that their camp was evacuated, and baggage, artillery, and stores entirely beyond their reach. Cornwallis could scarcely believe the fact, and walking out to survey the grounds, was arrested by a heavy sound which, for an instant, he supposed to be thunder. But it was a clear bright morning in January, and the next time the fearful sound broke over his camp, he knew that it was caused by Washington's cannon.

95. Lord Cornwallis was ashamed of his vain boasts, when he found himself outgeneraled by

troops he scorned. Astonished at these bold movements, he instantly fell back with his whole force, and abandoned every post he held southward of New York, except Brunswick and Amboy. The exasperated inhabitants of New Jersey ever afterward remembered their sufferings and insults, and rose to arms in bodies to repel so remorseless an enemy.

How did the people of New Jersey act?

96. Washington had gained his point—his men were cheered, and on every side he was hailed as the one raised by God for the salvation of his country. He could now, with safety, retire for the winter. He took up his quarters at Morristown, where his army were nearly all inoculated with small-pox, which disease had proved fatal in some cases. Congress, fully sensible of the high military character of Washington, conferred on him more ample powers, investing him with full authority to reform and new model the army, as he judged proper.

What of Washington and his men?

What powers were conferred on Washington?

97. Aware of the importance of inducing the French to espouse the American cause, and relying on the enmity of France against Great Britain, they appointed as commissioners to the court of France, Benjamin Franklin, Silas Deane, and Arthur Lee. They were instructed to procure arms and ammunition, to obtain permission to fit out American vessels in the ports of France, to annoy the commerce of England. They directed them to solicit a loan of 10,000,000 francs, and to endeavor, by every means in their power, to prevail on the French Government to recognize the independence of the United States. The campaign was not ended until carried into the first month of the next year.

Who were sent to France as commissioners?

What were the commissioners to do?

## CHAPTER II.

## CAMPAIGN OF 1777.

1777

What is  
said of  
Gen.  
Wash-  
ington's  
attention  
to his  
suffering  
soldiers?

1. Gen. Washington showed himself, in all points, worthy the confidence reposed in him, by his energetic measures to enlarge the army and encourage the dispirited. Though his noble heart ached for the privations of his soldiers, he pressed onward, every where meeting them with words of kindness, oftentimes emptying his own purse to relieve their sufferings. Day after day he followed the tracks of their bleeding feet on the frozen ground, entered their huts, praised their constancy, visited the sick, and fervently besought the God of nations to espouse their cause. Morning after morning, with the same serene countenance, he was seen engaged in works of mercy to the suffering.

What  
treat-  
ment did  
Gen. Lee  
receive?

2. Gen. Lee, whose capture has been noticed, was kept in close confinement in the Provost prison, in New York, and received the most rigid and ungenerous treatment. Gen. Washington opened a correspondence with Gen. Howe, and made proposals for his exchange, which were rejected. But Gen. Lee was not the only imprisoned sufferer.

How is it  
expect-  
ed in all  
countries  
that pris-  
oners of  
war  
should  
be treat-  
ed?

3. From every part of the country arose the voice of lamentation. In all armies prisoners of war have a just claim on the humane; from the moment of their captivity it is expected that hos-



tilities toward them cease. Being disarmed, no arm can justly be raised against them ; and while they conduct in a manner becoming their captivity, they should be treated with lenity. Among savage tribes, captives are tortured ; but to the shame of the English it can be said, that treatment such as our prisoners received during the revolution, has scarcely been known in the annals of war.

1777  
What did the English seem to forget, in their conduct to prisoners ?

4. It would seem that the ties of countrymen were disregarded, and men speaking the same language, and acknowledging the same God, exhausted every means of cruelty to torture those whom they spurned as rebels. The following, taken from Gen. Washington's letter of complaint to Gen. Howe, is a brief summary of the systematic method adopted and practised for their destruction. "The prisoners were crowded into the holds of prison-ships, where they were almost suffocated for want of air, and into churches, and open sugar-houses, &c., without a spark of fire. Their allowance of provisions and water for three days was insufficient for one, and in some instances they were four days entirely destitute of food. The pork and bread, for they had no other sustenance, and even the water allowed them, were of the worst quality, and totally unfit for human beings."

Repeat the extract from Washington's letter.

5. He adds that a minute detail would only serve to harrow up the feelings of surviving friends ; suffice it to say, that in consequence of the most barbarous treatment, not less than 1500 American soldiers died within a few weeks. Thus perished, in the utmost wretchedness, brave young men, the pride and shield of their country, and the beloved

**1777** of many a devoted parent. After death had released the sufferers, their bodies were dragged out of the prisons, and piled up till enough were collected for a load, when they were carted out and tumbled into a ditch, and slightly covered with earth.

What became of their dead bodies?

What tantalizing things were told prisoners?

6. Prisoners were, in addition to this, constantly insulted and tantalized by the British officers, who told them with the most frightful profanity, that the treatment was too good for rebels, and they should get twice as much severity unless they returned to his Majesty's service. But they loved liberty, and chose death rather than subject themselves and their posterity to a tyrant's sway.

What indignity was offered Otho Williams and others?

7. In one instance, four of our wounded officers, of respectable rank, were put in a cart, and conveyed through the streets of New York, as objects of derision—reviled as rebels, and treated with the utmost contempt. Otho Williams, subsequently adjutant-general to the Southern army, and others, were seated on coffins, with ropes around their necks, as a farce to make them believe they were riding to the gallows.

Repeat the next extract.

8. To the foregoing unparalleled catalogue of criminal proceedings, we add others, taken from another writer. "The enemy wantonly destroyed the New York water works, an elegant public library at Trenton, and the grand orrery made by Rittenhouse, which was placed in the college at Princeton, a piece of mechanism that the most untutored savage, staying the hand of violence, would have beheld with wonder and delight. Thus they warred against liberty, virtue, and the arts and

sciences. To make war against learning and literature is only fit for the rudest savage." 1777

9. Gov. Livingston, in an elegant speech to the General Assembly of New Jersey, said, "They have plundered friends and foes; effects capable of division they have divided; such as were not they have destroyed; they have warred on decrepid old age and on defenseless youth; they have committed hostilities against the professors of literature and the ministers of religion; against public records and private monuments; books of improvement and papers of curiosity; and against the arts and sciences. They have butchered the wounded while asking for quarter, mangled the dead, weltering in their blood, and refused them the rites of sepulture; suffered prisoners to perish for want of sustenance; insulted the persons of females; disfigured private dwellings of taste and elegance, and in the rage of impiety and barbarism, profaned edifices dedicated to Almighty God."

What did Gov. Livingston say on this subject?

10. We do not wonder that the Americans refused to return to allegiance to a power allowing such treatment. We involuntarily shudder as we read their sufferings, and ask if all this was received from people, from whom we derived our origin? Reconciliation to such a power! A more dreadful curse could scarcely be denounced!

What are our emotions in view of all this suffering?

It is here worthy of observation, that the British and Hessian prisoners in our hands were treated in a manner directly the reverse of that just described, and they never found cause to complain.

How were prisoners in our hands treated?

11. The first attempts of the British during the campaign of 1777, were against the American

Where were the first attacks of the British directed in 1777?

**1777** stores collected at Courtland Manor in New York, and at Danbury in Connecticut.

What depredations did Governor Tryon's troops commit?

On the 25th of April, 2,000 men under Gov. Tryon, major of the Provincials or Tories, having passed the sound, landed between Fairfield and Norfolk. The next day, proceeding to Danbury, they forced the garrison to retire, destroyed 1,800 barrels of beef and pork, and 800 of flour, 2,000 bushels of grain, clothing for a regiment, and 1,790 tents. Besides this wanton destruction of food and clothing, they burned the town, and after murdering three inhabitants, threw them into the flames.

What was done by Generals Sullivan and Wooster?

12. Generals Sullivan, Wooster, and Arnold, happening to be in the neighborhood, hastily collected about 600 militia, and marched in pursuit for two miles, in a heavy rain. On the morning of the 27th, they divided the troops, Gen. Wooster taking about three hundred, and falling in the rear of the enemy, while Arnold took post in front at Ridgefield. Both parties conducted with distinguished bravery, but were obliged to retreat. Gen. Wooster was in his 70th year, and was mortally wounded.

Who was wounded in this retreat?

What is said of Arnold's conduct?

13. The next day the enemy set fire to Ridgefield, and were still harassed by Arnold, who fought with his accustomed bravery, almost amounting to recklessness. In the thickest of the fire, he was always to be seen galloping hither and thither, seemingly impervious to bullets, although his brave charger often sunk, being shot under him. Nothing daunted in such cases, he would mount another and on to the battle. The British despaired of gaining any of the inhabitants to their

What was the loss on both sides?

ranks, and being annoyed by Arnold, took refuge on board their ships. They had lost 170 men, and the Americans 100. 1777

14. Congress resolved that a monument should be erected to the memory of Gen. Wooster, and a beautiful horse properly caparisoned, was presented to Gen. Arnold, as a reward for his gallantry on this occasion. What was resolved by Congress?

The British had collected at Sag Harbor, on Long Island, immense magazines of forage and grain. Col. Meigs, who had been one of Arnold's brave associates in the expedition to Canada, with 130 men on the 23d of May, destroyed the stores, burned a dozen brigs and sloops, killed 6 of the enemy, took 90 prisoners, and returned in triumph, not having lost a man. What was done at Sag Harbor?

15. While these and similar events had been transpiring in America, the commissioners who had been sent to France, to procure assistance, were not idle. France wished us success, because it would avenge her for the loss of her colonies in this country, and humble the haughty bearing of her rival in the New World. Amid conflicting emotions in many hearts, there was at least one brave and noble soul, who espoused our cause from love for liberty. This was the young and gallant Lafayette. Why did France wish us success in war? What noble Frenchman espoused our cause from love for liberty?

16. He listened with enthusiasm to the story of our wrongs and oppressions, and forthwith exclaimed, "My heart espouses warmly the cause of liberty, and henceforth I shall think of nothing, but of adding my aid. The moment I heard of America I loved her; the moment I knew she was What did Lafayette say of America?

1777 fighting for freedom, I burned with a desire of bleeding for her; and the moment I shall be able to serve her in any part of the world, will be the happiest one in my life."

What exertions did he make in France to assist us?

17. He obtained an introduction to Silas Deane, who gladly gave him a letter to Congress, requesting his appointment as major-general in the American army. A vessel was ordered to be fitted out, but the sad news of one defeat after another seemed to render our cause hopeless. It was no longer possible to obtain a vessel. The difficulty only urged on the lover of freedom, and immediately he purchased a vessel which he intended fitting out with his own means, when the king, hearing of his plans, ordered him back, while his friends were loud in their censures of the interest he took in our cause.

With what success did he finally meet, and what is said of the voyage?

18. Finally, he disguised himself as a courier, and escaped to his vessel, in which, accompanied by the Baron de Kalb and eleven other officers, he set sail in safety. After a voyage of about fifty days, he reached Georgetown, in South Carolina, and having visited Charleston, and listened with delight to the story of Fort Moultrie, he presented the brave Moultrie with clothing and arms for 150 men, and repaired in haste to Philadelphia, traveling a weary route of 900 miles on horseback.

What notice did he take of Col. Moultrie and his men?

How was Lafayette received by Congress?

19. Here he presented his letters to Congress. They looked at him, as he stood before them only 19 years of age, and little dreamed of the value of the friend raised by God in our behalf. They looked upon him as a mere boy, and received him coldly—but he was not to be offended, and addressed a note to Congress, saying, "After the sacrifices

What note did he address to Congress?

I have made, I have the right to exact two favors; 1777 one is to serve at my own expense—the other is to serve at first as a volunteer.” Congress was moved by this magnanimity, and made out his commission. From the moment of his introduction to Washington, their friendship commenced, and in the whole course of our history, there is nothing more touching than the love which these men bore to each other.

How was Lafayette received by Washington?

20. Near the end of May, the American army, numbering about 18,000 men, moved from its winter-quarters at Morristown, and took post at Middlebrook; on which the British left their encampment, and Gen. Howe endeavored to induce Gen. Washington to meet him on equal ground. But Washington chose to continue his defensive system of warfare, and not to risk an open battle. Finding various feints and attempts ineffectual, he ordered a precipitate retreat to Staten Island. He then embarked 16,000 troops, and leaving Sir Henry Clinton in command at New York, put to sea, carefully keeping his destination a secret. On the 20th of August, the fleet entered Chesapeake bay, intending an attack on Philadelphia.

What movements did both armies make in the spring?

What did Gen. Howe finally do, and why?

21. The American army immediately crossed the Delaware, and directed its march toward the enemy's route. The people were impatient at what they considered indecisive movements, and delays, and demanded a general engagement for the defense of Philadelphia. Washington yielding to their wishes, with Generals Greene, Sullivan, Wayne, and Stirling, took position on the eastern bank of Brandywine creek, to dispute the passage

What was the next movement of both armies?

How were the people pleased with these changes, and what did they demand?

Who were the Americans?

1777 of the British, who were advancing in splendid array.

can Gen-  
erals, and  
what  
position  
did they  
take?

Who  
com-  
manded  
the Brit-  
ish  
troops?

What ar-  
range-  
ment did  
Wash-  
ington  
make?

22. These, under Cornwallis and Knyphausen, numbered 18,000 well drilled troops, and it seemed hazardous to risk such an unequal engagement. At last, Washington relinquished his own superior judgment, by risking a disadvantageous action. He, however, with acknowledged skill, planned the order of battle, and stationed regiments at different fords to guard the river, sending scouts out in various directions, on a strict watch for the approach of the troops. Gen. Sullivan commanded the highest and most important post up the river. Had he used all the precaution demanded of him, he might have saved much disorder and loss of life.

What  
false in-  
telli-  
gence  
was giv-  
en, and  
what ef-  
fect was  
produ-  
ced?

23. On the 11th of September, the British army moved forward in two columns, intending with one to occupy the attention of Washington, while the other should silently march round and attack the rear. Washington was prevented from executing a bold design of dividing the British army, and cutting off Knyphausen's regiment, by false intelligence from Sullivan, that Cornwallis was not approaching. By this, much time was lost in countermanding orders, and Cornwallis fell upon the Americans, when they were in some measure unprepared to receive him.

What is  
said of  
Lafay-  
ette's  
conduct  
during  
the bat-  
tle?

24. A destructive action ensued, in which Sullivan and his troops, in connection with all engaged fought with great bravery. Lafayette seeing two of Gen. Sullivan's aids killed, and the discomfited, general in vain trying to rally his shattered troops, leaped from his horse and marched among them



sword in hand, when he too fell wounded by a musket ball. Washington then came up with Greene's corps as a reserve. They fought bravely, for a while keeping the British in check—but nothing could now arrest the disorder, and they retreated after having contested the ground in the most determined manner.

1777

What is said of the termination of the battle?

25. The American loss in killed, wounded, and prisoners, was over 1,000; the British about half that number. Side by side with the Americans, were Lafayette, the Baron St. Ovary a brother Frenchman who was made prisoner, and the brave Count Pulaski, who was afterward rewarded with the rank of brigadier-general.

What was the loss on both sides?

What distinguished foreigners fought in this battle?

26. The Americans retreated through Philadelphia to Germantown, but Washington, notwithstanding the unfortunate event of the battle of Brandywine creek, determined to risk another attempt for the defense of the capital. He accordingly repassed the Schuylkill, and met the enemy near Goshen, about 18 miles west of Philadelphia. But a violent shower of rain compelled them to defer the engagement. Gen. Wayne had been detached with 1,500 men to annoy the rear of the enemy, but in the darkness of the night, his men were surprised, and about 300 killed.

To what place did the Americans retreat?

What movement did Washington take, and with what success?

What is said of General Wayne and his detachment?

27. Congress, deeming themselves insecure in Philadelphia, removed the public archives and magazines to Lancaster, to which place they adjourned. An easy access to Philadelphia was now given to the enemy, and on the 26th of September, they made a triumphal entry into the city without opposition. The main body of the British was sta-

Why did Congress adjourn to Lancaster?

What was then done by the British army?

**1777** tioned at Germantown, which is distant about 7 miles north-west from Philadelphia. Washington encamped at 18 miles distance from Germantown. Immediately after the occupation of the capital, Gen. Howe directed his attention to the reduction of some forts on the river Delaware, which forts rendered it unsafe for the British to navigate that river.

Where were the two armies encamped?

To what did Gen. Howe direct his attention?

Why were fortifications erected at Mud Island?

Why was Col. Stirling dispatched thither?

What is said of the battle of Germantown?

What was said by Gen. Washington in a letter to Congress?

28. The Americans hoped to prevent the enemy from receiving supplies of provisions by water, and for this purpose had erected batteries at Mud Island Red Bank, and Billing's Port, and had sunk ranges of frames in the river to obstruct the navigation. It was to remove these impediments, that Col. Stirling was sent with a detachment of the royal army. Washington seized this opportunity to attack the remainder of the army at Germantown.

29. This enterprise planned with great judgment promised success. On the morning of October 4th the enemy was surprised, and at one point a party was routed and 110 made prisoners, but they were afterward retaken. Nearly the whole force of the two armies was involved in the contest, in which both fought bravely. Gen. Washington, in a letter to Congress, says, "The morning was extremely foggy, which prevented our improving the advantage we had gained as well as we otherwise should have done. This circumstance by concealing from us the true situation of the enemy, obliged us to act with more caution and less expedition than we could have wished, and hindered our different parties from acting in concert."

30. In the midst of the most promising appear-

ances of victory, the troops suddenly began to retreat in spite of every effort made to rally them. The enemy were broken, dispersed and flying in all quarters, and we were in possession of their whole encampment, artillery, &c., but confusion at last ensued, and we were repulsed with a loss of 200 killed, 600 wounded, and 400 prisoners." The British lost about 100 killed and 500 wounded. Gen. Knyphausen was wounded, and Gen. De Heister's son and several other officers of rank were wounded or slain.

31. Washington was mortified at the repulse at Germantown, after an auspicious commencement, which indicated a speedy victory. Congress expressed their approval of his plan of attack, and spoke in high terms of the courage of most of the troops. The British, after this action, removed to Philadelphia, and Washington encamped about eleven miles from Germantown.

32. After considerable skirmishing and a protracted defense of the forts on the Delaware, the river was at last cleared, and a free communication opened for the British between New York and Philadelphia. The enemy flattered themselves that the possession of Philadelphia would soon prove decisive in the contest. The Americans were not disheartened. Notwithstanding they had gained little by the last battles, so much skill and bravery had been shown that their reputation was enhanced.

33. In the mean while Washington's army had received reinforcements from the North, and amounted to 12,000 continentals and 300 militia.

1777

What was the loss on both sides at Germantown?

What were the feelings of Washington on this repulse?

What did Congress express?

To what place did the English remove, and where did Washington encamp?

What finally took place on the Delaware?

What did the enemy flatter themselves?

Why were not the Americans disheartened by this battle?

What reinforcements did Washington

1777

receive,  
and what  
position  
did the  
two ar-  
mies  
take up?

With these, he advanced to White Marsh, within 14 miles of the capital. Gen. Howe marched within three miles, but finding Washington too prudent to leave his strong position, he thought proper to withdraw, and retire for the winter to Philadelphia.

Where  
did  
Wash-  
ington  
deter-  
mine to  
go into  
winter  
quarters?

34. Washington now gave orders that preparations should be made for winter-quarters, and York, Lancaster and Carlisle were named as proper places. But rather than leave a large and fertile region exposed to the enemy, he chose to march to Valley Forge, a deep dale, about 20 miles north-west of Philadelphia. Accordingly, on the 11th of December, he left White Marsh, and retired to Valley Forge. In this dreary place they passed one of the most rigorous winters ever experienced in the United States.

What is  
said of  
the suf-  
ferings of  
the army  
at this  
place?

35. The troops, scantily clothed, prepared to meet the rigor of that winter by erecting a number of log huts, filled in with mortar. The weather was so intensely cold, that before these barracks were completed, many a soldier was frozen to death. So destitute of necessary clothing were they, that the greater part were without a shirt—some with a remnant of a blanket, and many without a shoe or stocking. In the midst of sufferings to which the world can scarcely show a parallel, they were seldom heard to murmur. Relying on the justice of their cause, they pressed forward, crying, “We are fighting for Liberty—let us have freedom from oppression for ourselves and our children!”

Why did  
they not  
murmur?

36. While these events were transpiring in the

*Middle States*, scenes of thrilling interest were enacted in the North. To retain, as far as possible, a connected view of the war, we have chosen to leave our northern army unmentioned till this period. The young reader will, we trust, endeavor to go back in the order of time to the year 1775, and recall the situation of both armies at that period. To present the events of 1777, we will merely state, in review, that in the autumn of 1775, after Colonels Allen and Arnold had taken Ticonderoga and Crown Point by surprise, Gen. Montgomery reduced the fort of St. Johns, captured Montreal, and made an ineffectual, though desperate attack on Quebec.

1777

Why has the northern army not been mentioned?

What is stated in review?

37. On the return of spring, 1776, the American army gradually retired up the St. Lawrence, and after losing one post after another, in June they entirely evacuated Canada. These reverses did not at all dampen the ardor of the troops in this quarter, and preparations were busily made to meet an expected invasion from the enemy in the spring of 1777. A plan was concerted by which Burgoyne, who had superseded Carleton in the command of the British forces in Canada, was to penetrate the back settlements of New York, and form a junction with Gen. Howe at the metropolis, thus cutting off all communication between New England and the middle States, after which, they supposed both sections could easily be subdued.

On the return of the spring of 1776, what did the army?

What plan was adopted by Burgoyne to cut off communications between N. E. and the middle States?

38. By express orders of the ministry, Burgoyne immediately armed and secured the services of several tribes of Indians inhabiting the country between the Mohawk river and Lake Ontario, about

Whose services did Burgoyne secure?

1777

What place did he make preparations to attack?

2,500 French Canadians, and as many Hessians, exclusive of a corps of artillery and a large body of veteran troops from England. With this formidable army, on the first of July, he made preparations to invest Ticonderoga.

What proclamation did Burgoyne issue?

39. Before proceeding to the attack, Burgoyne made a great war feast for the Indians, and issued a most extraordinary proclamation, calling on the Americans to submit, or suffer the consequences of savage ferocity. After enumerating a string of titles in the most pompous manner, he threatens all who shall oppose his authority, saying, "I have but to give stretch to the Indian forces under my direction, and they amount to thousands, to overtake the hardened enemies of Great Britain and America." The British ministry, neither ashamed nor satisfied with the disgraceful expedient of hiring Hessian soldiers of low principles, resorted also to savages to aid in the subjection of a band of "half-starved and distressed rebels"—their own kinsmen.

What disgraceful expedients did the British resort to for reinforcements?

What movement did St. Clair make, and why?

40. Gen. St. Clair with about 3,000 men, had charge of Fort Ticonderoga. Deeming this force inadequate to maintain the post, not having provisions for more than twenty days, he perceived no safety for the garrison, except in a hasty flight. Accordingly he let his camp-fires go out, struck his tents, and amid the "profound silence of the forest and the night," retreated.

July 5.

What is said of the retreat?

41. He was soon discovered and as they approached Skeensborough, the British pressed on in hot pursuit. After various conflicts and losses, the remnants of the divisions reached Fort Ed-

ward, the head-quarters of Gen. Schuyler. In these combats, our men fought with desperate valor, and hundreds were left dead on the route. Stern necessity compelled this retreat.

42. Burgoyne had with him some of the best officers then in America; Major-general Philips, Brigadier-general Frazer, Major-general Reidesel, and others. From such generals and their hosts, Gen. Schuyler thought it prudent to retire along the Hudson to Saratoga. He, however, did every thing in his power to obstruct the progress of the British. He felled trees across the roads, destroyed the bridges, and in various ways greatly retarded their march. Burgoyne in pursuit, was obliged to construct forty bridges, and his batteaux were dragged from creek to creek by oxen. Schuyler's army was enlarged by some militia under Gen. Lincoln, and several detachments from the regular army accompanied by the Polish Gen. Thaddeus Kosciusko. His army was thus augmented to about 15,000 men.

43. Burgoyne finding his supply of provisions greatly reduced, and being in want of horses to mount his cavalry, formed a plan to draw resources from the honest farmers of Vermont. For this purpose he dispatched Col. Baum, a distinguished German officer, with 500 Hessians to seize some of the American stores of corn, cattle, &c., collected at Bennington. The instructions of Burgoyne are very curious, showing that the event of defeat never entered his mind.

44. Col. Baum marched off with a commission in his pocket, to "*scour the country for horses, car-*

What officers were with Burgoyne?

What was done by Schuyler in retreat, and how did it annoy Burgoyne?

What reinforcements did Schuyler receive?

Of what was Burgoyne greatly in need?

1777

**1777** *riages, and cattle, and make prisoners of all officers, civil and military, acting under Congress ; to tax the towns for whatever they wanted, and take hostages for the performance ; to bring all horses fit to mount the dragoons, with as many saddles and bridles as could be found ; to bring at least 1,300, the horses to be tied in strings of ten each in order, that one man may lead ten horses."*

What orders were given to Col. Baum?

What providential circumstance occurred?

Why did Col. Baum dispatch a messenger to Burgoyne?

45. It was a providential circumstance, that Gen. Stark\* was on his way to join Gen. Schuyler, with a reinforcement of 800 Green Mountain boys. A heavy rain coming on, prevented an immediate action ; several skirmishes took place with little loss on our side, but these were sufficient to alarm Col. Baum, who immediately dispatched a messenger to Burgoyne for a reinforcement. Fortunately its progress was much delayed, owing to the state of the roads, after the heavy rain, and it did not ar-

---

\* Gen. Stark had been in the old French and Indian war, and was at Bunker Hill and Trenton. At the brilliant charge at Bennington, he animated his brave band by shouting, with uplifted sword, " My fellow-soldiers, we conquer to-day or Mary Stark sleeps a widow to-night." His character as a private citizen is unblemished, and no neglect or wrong could turn him from the path of duty. Although he had reason to feel aggrieved at the treatment he received from Congress, in having inferior and junior officers appointed over him, he loved his country still, and fitted out his sons one after another for the field. Would that Arnold had possessed the virtues of this noble and incorruptible patriot. Amid all his perils through two long wars, and in many desperate battles, he never received a wound. He was the last surviving general of the Revolution, and died in 1822, at Manchester, New Hampshire, in his 94th year. A simple stone upon which is inscribed *Major-general Stark*, marks the soldier's resting-place—but his memory is fresh in many a heart.



rive until the Americans were victorious. A furious battle was fought for more than two hours, during which the Americans opposed, with singular bravery, a force nearly twice their number.

1777

What is said of the action?

46. Although the British were defended by breast-works, they were stormed by the Americans, and the troops finally obliged to surrender at discretion. The yells of the Indians when surrounded were terrific. The roar of the fire-arms resembled a prolonged thunder peal. Gen. Stark's troops had scattered in pursuit of plunder, when news arrived of the approach of the reinforcement of 1,000 men.

What is further said of the action?

47. At this critical moment, a regiment under Col. Warner arrived; the other troops rallied, and the whole were ordered to advance. They fought until darkness came on, when the enemy yielded a second time in one day to their Yankee conquerors. The whole number of killed, wounded, and prisoners, was 934. Col. Baum received a mortal wound of which he soon after died. Instead of bringing, in pursuance to the orders of Burgoyne, a train of necessary things, on their return, the troops were obliged to leave behind 1,000 stand of arms, 8 loads of baggage, 4 brass field-pieces, and several horses. The loss on our side was not more than 100.

What was the event of the battle?

What was the loss of the British?

Did Burgoyne receive his expected supplies?

What was our loss?

48. The victory at Bennington greatly encouraged the Americans, but as greatly mortified Burgoyne. An affecting incident occurred on the field at Bennington, which illustrates a point in the American character. An old man, whose five sons were engaged in the battle, was told that he had been unfortunate in one of his sons. With upraised hands and trembling voice, he exclaimed,

What affecting incident occurred at Bennington?

1777 "What has my boy done?" Then in rapid succession followed the anxious questions, "Has my boy misbehaved? has he deserted his post or shrunk from the charge?" "No, no," replied the informant, "but he is slain—he shrunk not from the hottest of the fire, but fell while nobly acting his part." "Ah!" exclaimed the good old man, raising his dimmed eyes, "my boy was honest—I am satisfied—bring in the corpse that I may once more embrace the darling of my soul."

What did our ancestors dread more than death?

49. With his own hands, he washed the gore and dust from his gaping wounds, rejoicing that so brave and noble a youth had gone, as he trusted, where the wicked cease from troubling. Our single-hearted ancestors dreaded dishonesty more than death. Our prayer is, that their posterity will gratefully remember their toils that we might be free, and, in God's strength, endeavor to imitate their integrity of purpose.

Who was sent against Fort Schuyler?

Who commanded at Fort Schuyler, and in what condition was the garrison?

50. While Burgoyne was moving down Lake Champlain to invest Ticonderoga, Col. St. Leger was dispatched with about 2,000 Canadians and Indians, by way of Oswego, against Fort Schuyler, situated on the site of the present village of Rome, commanded by the brave Col. Gansevoort, with a garrison of 700 almost as brave hearts as his own. They had but six weeks' provisions on hand, and a scanty supply of ammunition, and not even a flag to wave above the fort.

What message was sent by St. Leger, and what reply was given?

51. St. Leger sent a message to these brave men to surrender, threatening to give them over to the brutalities of the savages, should they refuse. They answered boldly, at the same time hoisting a flag

which they had made themselves, little heeding the horrid yells of 1,000 Indians, who, during the live-long night, at intervals, made the dark forest around the fort echo with their hideous warwhoop.

In the mean time Gen. Herkimer, assured of the desperate condition of the garrison, determined to march to their relief; he accordingly started, and on approaching the fort, he sent an express to Gansevoort, saying that he had reached the enemy's camp within 8 miles.

What did Herkimer resolve to do?

What intelligence was sent to Gansevoort?

52. As a signal that the express had reached him in safety, three cannon were to be fired, on hearing which Herkimer was to cut through the enemy's camp—while Gansevoort should assist him on the other side. Early the next morning, the signal awoke many of the soldiers to the march. Onward they passed in files of two deep, with an advanced guard to open the way. Suddenly, on all sides, sounded a terrific yell, as if his whole army was surrounded, and in another moment the dark woods glittered with tomahawks, and the quick flash of rifles.

Describe the march of Herkimer's troops.

53. An awful scene was then presented, which almost baffles description—on both sides men fell like the leaves of autumn, and the carnage and clamor were enough to appall the stoutest heart. In the midst of the battle, a tremendous thunder shower burst upon them, and the intervals of silence were said to be more awful than the loudest uproar. The contest was suspended for the time, and the “two armies seemed to have been suddenly turned to stone.” As the rain abated, the battle was resumed with greater fury, and although for six hours this

What then took place?

What is said of the attack after the rain?

**1777** murderous work had been going on, Herkimer and his men, though weary and fainting, determined to press forward to the brave men at the fort. At last, amid the tumult, the Indian cry of flight, "*Oomah, Oomah,*" sounded joyfully in their ears, and with it they joined the glad shout of "*Victory,*" sending a thrill through the wounded and dying.

What is  
said of  
this bat-  
tle?

54. This battle has been slightly noticed by historians, but a more bloody one, considering the numbers engaged, was never fought, and the Americans with all their disadvantages remained victorious. Many a soldier bled and died\* on the field of Oriskany. We again turn to the graphic page of Headley for a notice, in passing, of the scene after the battle.

What  
does  
Headley  
say of  
the bat-  
tle of  
Oriska-  
ny?

55. There lay, he says, white man and savage, near a thousand of them scattered around through the forest, part pale in death, others reclining on their elbows, or sitting up against the trees, moaning piteously for water. The bright uniform of the officer glittered beside the naked body of the Indian; and all around, thick as the leaves, were strewn shivered spears, broken muskets, and neglected swords. Here lay a pile of fifty together, and

---

\* Gen. Herkimer was so severely wounded at the battle of Oriskany, that it was found necessary to amputate his leg. The story is, that owing to the two surgeons who performed the operation being intoxicated, it was badly done and he bled to death. His wife attempted to staunch the blood, but Herkimer saw that soon its steady flow would stop the wheel at the fountain, and he bade her an affectionate farewell. After which he called for a Bible, and read aloud the 38th Psalm, and then calmly resigned his soul into His hands, in whom he trusted for pardon.

there a solitary warrior, stretched where the death shot had struck him. Two would be found side by side, with their bayonets in each other's bosom ; and near by a "white man and an Indian born on the banks of the Mohawk, their left hands clenched in each other's hair, the right grasping in a grasp of death the knife plunged in each other's bosom ;" *thus they lay frowning*. Days after the battle the bodies still lay unburied, many of them torn to pieces by wild beasts.

56. The Americans, though victors, had suffered too severely to think of cutting their way to the fort and retreated.

The fate of Fort Schuyler seemed now desperate. The reinforcement sent to its relief compelled to retreat—the garrison surrounded by foes—a scanty supply of provisions—all threatened death by sword or hunger.

Two Americans taken prisoners at Oriskany, were compelled to write to Gansevoort an exaggerated account of the numbers of the British, stating that Burgoyne had reached Albany, and that farther resistance would prove their ruin. Gansevoort told the officer who bore this letter, that *he would only surrender at the cannon's mouth*.

57. The officer then repeated the threat that the Indians would be let loose on the defenseless settlements if he persisted ; when Gansevoort, looking him full in the face, and throwing all the sarcasm in his tone he was master of, said, "*After you get out of this fort, you may turn round and look at its outside ; but never expect to come in again, unless you come a prisoner. I consider the mes-*

1777

What prospect had the garrison at Fort Schuyler?

What account was given by two American prisoners of the British?

What did Gansevoort reply?

What threat was made by the officer?

What did Gansevoort say?

1777 *sage you have brought a degrading one for a British officer to send, and by no means a reputable one for a British officer to carry. For my own part, before I would consent to deliver this garrison to such a murderous set as your army, by your own account, consists of, I would suffer my body to be filled with splinters and set on fire, as you know has, at many times, been practised by such hordes of women-and-children-killers as belong to your army."*

What is said of Schuyler?

What reply was made to his objections?

What did Schuyler finally say?

58. St. Leger, finding all attempts to terrify them into a surrender fail, prepared to sap the fort. Finally, Gansevoort, finding St. Leger within 150 yards of the fort, into which he constantly threw shells, determined, at midnight, to cut his way sword in hand through the enemy's camp. A protecting Providence, which has all hearts in its hands, was moving some brave ones in behalf of this garrison. The noble-hearted Schuyler, then at Albany, heard with much emotion of the defeat of Herkimer, and trembled for the fate of the garrison, unless relieved speedily. To all his entreaties to send troops thither, he was answered, that as Burgoyne was now moving rapidly down the river, it would be unsafe to send any of their forces away. Schuyler entreated, and still the same answer was given; when, in his agitation, turning fiercely round, and crumbling his pipe in his mouth as his teeth angrily closed on it, he exclaimed to the council of officers, "*Gentlemen, I shall take the responsibility on myself; where is the brigadier that will command them? I shall beat up for volunteers!*"

59. Arnold, still a friend to America, sprung to his feet, and with his usual promptitude, offered to lead the expedition. 800 men were found ready to start at the beat of the drum. Away they marched, with the greatest alacrity. Fearing, however, the same fate which befell Herkimer's men might be theirs, he had recourse to a stratagem, before attempting to fight his way through.

1777  
Who offered to command the expedition?

60. A spy, by the name of Cuyler, who had been taken, was brought before Arnold, and promised pardon on condition he would give such an exaggerated account of the American forces as to terrify the Indians into a retreat. Life was precious to the spy—he accepted the proposal, and the stratagem succeeded. To the utter surprise of Gansevoort, who knew nothing of the affair, the Indians and English, on the morning of the 23d of August, were seen in sudden flight, leaving their baggage and artillery. The stratagem of Arnold had the desired effect, and in a short time he was heard in the distance, at the head of his noble soldiers, making the woods ring with their joyful cheers, which were heartily answered by the relieved garrison at Fort Schuyler.

To what stratagem had Arnold recourse?

How did the stratagem succeed, and what effect was produced?

61. Burgoyne was confounded when the reports of the battle of Bennington and the failure of St. Leger, one after the other, came in, and was seriously perplexed as to his future course of action. The overthrow of these forces was the first in a grand series of events that finally involved in ruin the whole royal army. Burgoyne was in a wilderness, surrounded with enemies, greatly in want of provisions; and placing little confidence in his In-

How was Burgoyne affected with the news of these defeats?

What is said of Burgoyne's situation?

**1777** dian allies, he felt that he must soon either conquer or surrender. He accordingly collected his artillery and scanty store of provisions, and made a desperate effort to advance, and cut his way through to join Clinton. After constructing a bridge of boats, he passed his army over the Hudson, and on the 14th of Sept. encamped on the plains of Saratoga.

Where  
were the  
two ar-  
mies en-  
camped?

What  
had sent  
a thrill of  
horror  
through  
the land?

62. The American army was about four miles distant, and daily receiving reinforcements. The excesses of Burgoyne's army had roused the inhabitants to a full sense of their wrongs. With one accord they seemed to pour from every valley, hamlet, and hill-slope, to protect their fire-sides. The murder of Miss Jane McCrea\* by some Indians in Burgoyne's advance party, sent a thrill of horror through the land, and was one of a hundred inducements for every father and brother to rush to the conflict.

63. Schuyler's army, from a few disheartened soldiers, increased rapidly, and his heart beat with delight at the thought of a glorious victory. Just at this long wished for moment, news came which,

---

\* During the halt of the British at Fort Edward, an incident occurred which greatly increased the odium justly cast on the British ministry, because of their barbarous order for Burgoyne to form an alliance with the ferocious savages of the wilderness. A young lady named McCrea, represented as beautiful and accomplished, the daughter of an American loyalist, was, just previous to the war, affianced to a young English officer named Jones. Jones dispatched a party of Indians with a letter and a horse, to bring his intended bride in safety to the camp. On the way, two of the principal savages disputed about which should present her to her lover, when one of them killed her with his tomahawk, to prevent the other from receiving the promised reward of a barrel of rum.—LOSSING.



had he been less noble and firm, would have caused him to retaliate at the offered insult. After having gone through with untold drudgery, and shrunk from no hardship, endured complaints and angry speeches without retorts, he received a cold message from Congress, that he was to be superseded by Gates. His noble heart keenly felt the indignity—but for the example of youth we would notice his conduct, as one of the noblest triumphs of patriotism and virtue over envy and jealousy. We shall soon have occasion to notice him as a magnanimous man.

1777

What message did Schuyler receive from Congress?

How did he receive the insult?

64. Arnold, also, was treated with the same indignity, but the same god-like principle was not the ruling action of his life. Arnold was proud, and could not bear to be humbled—he was ambitious, panted for more fame, and could not forgive an insult. It was an outrageous insult on the part of Congress, when junior officers were promoted over persons as popular as Arnold, Stark, and Schuyler. We find no excuse for Arnold's subsequent conduct, but agree with the board of war, to whom he appealed, that he was "cruelly and groundlessly aspersed;" and with Washington, that both he and Schuyler, with St. Clair and Stark, received repeated and bitter insults after all the acts of self-denial they had freely performed.

How did Arnold behave under like treatment?

What did Washington think on this matter?

65. Although many were dissatisfied, at the time, with the manner in which the northern posts had been given up, the peculiar and trying circumstances under which our army was placed, rendered it imprudent to act otherwise. They were tried by a court-martial, and acquitted with the highest

1777

How can we see the hand of Providence in these events?

Did Burgoyne choose to retreat or advance?

What British officers were with Burgoyne?

What Americans were with Gates?

What is said of the contest?

What was the loss on both sides?

honor. We can now see an overruling Providence, that orders even afflictive dispensations for the benefit of those who trust in God. Burgoyne was led, under perplexing circumstances, farther and farther into the heart of the country, and suddenly, contrary to all his expectations, found himself surrounded by the enemy, he had regarded as vanquished. To retreat, he must abandon his expedition—to advance, seemed full of danger; but still he proudly chose the latter.

66. On the 17th of September, his army came nearly in contact with the Americans, when some skirmishing took place. About noon on the 19th, our army advanced and offered battle. Burgoyne was at the head of his army, and Generals Phillips, Reidesel, and Frazer, were actively engaged. Gates had under him the intrepid Arnold, and his brave companions, Morgan and Dearborn. The battle opened furiously, as if both hosts were determined to conquer or die.

67. The firing continued in one incessant roar and blaze for three hours, covering the field with wounded and dying. It was an obstinate and unyielding contest. At one time the British were overpowered, but being reinforced, the Americans were repulsed. The same ground was occupied successively, and the blood of both armies mingled in the death struggle. The victory was claimed by the British, but the advantages were decidedly on the part of the Americans. They were the assailants, they held their ground through the day, and retired without being pursued, having lost only 64 killed, and 255 prisoners and wounded.

The British lost 600 in killed, wounded, and 1777 prisoners.

68. The royal army lay all night on their arms on the battle field, strewed with the slain—while the soldiers in search of spoils stripped, indiscriminately, the bodies of the gay uniform of the English, or the plainer blue garb of the American. Both parties lay within sound of each other's voices for 16 days, and considerable skirmishing took place, resulting from the attempts of the British to forage. Burgoyne looked with the utmost anxiety for aid from Sir Henry Clinton, from New York, but finding starvation staring his army in the face, he determined to make a desperate effort to force his way through the American lines.

What was done by the soldiers of the royal army?

Why did Burgoyne determine to make a desperate effort to force his way through?

69. During this interval, a dissatisfaction arose between Gates and Arnold, because Gates refused to give Arnold even a tenth part of the praise due to him for his undaunted bravery at Stillwater. Gates was envious, because the whole army gave Arnold and his division the credit of the battle of the 19th, and falsely represented the affair to Congress in his official report. To crown the injustice of Gates, he took away Arnold's division from him and gave it to Col. Lincoln; so that now, on the eve of another battle, one of the bravest officers in the American army was without a command. His nature was too proud to bear this—he had never learned in childhood to brook an insult. How many hours of bitterness would have been spared Arnold, had he felt the beauty of the Saviour's example of humility and patience under insults.

Why was Arnold dissatisfied with Gates?

What is said of Arnold?

70. When the roar of the cannonade of the 7th

**1777** of October reached his ears, while sitting in his tent, he could no longer restrain his maddened feelings. He would enter the battle, and, for aught we know, he wished it might be his last. His conduct was frightfully daring, as, mounted on a beautiful horse, named Warren, after the hero of Bunker Hill, he rushed madly in the hottest of the fire, while his shout was heard above the horrid din of conflicting armies. Regardless of danger, he rode at one time from one extremity of the line to the other, exposed to the cross fire of the armies, followed by the loud huzzas of admiring troops.

What is said of Arnold's conduct on the 7th of October?

71. Gates, fearing lest this impetuous horseman should, by winning this battle, eclipse his own name, at this perilous moment, dispatched Col. Armstrong after him, with a command to retire from the field.\* The beloved general of the army, now without a command, was obeyed in an instant; and groups of veterans, who had followed him in many a toilsome march, crowded around him, eager for orders.

What command was sent by Gates to Arnold?

72. Pointing to the camp surrounded with a wall of armed men and cannon, he shouted to them as his quick eye recognized the scarred faces of his old comrades. “*You* will not fail me now—on to the fortress, my brave soldiers, *you* and *you*, on again—*you* know me well.” The black horse is urged forward amid the fierce blaze of a thousand guns, to the very sally port of the enemy. This position must be won, or the American cause was

What is said of the attack on the camp?

---

\* During the battle of Saratoga, Gen. Gates was quietly sitting in his room, conversing with a British officer. He fought both these battles like a European gentleman—in his camp.

dishonored. So shouted Arnold at the sally port. 1777  
 As the piteous screams of "*quarter, quarter,*" reached the ears of the Americans, the gallant charger which had borne the victorious general through scenes of blood and fire, fell pierced by many balls, and Arnold lay wounded and bleeding, shouting, "*The battle is ours, Saratoga is won.*"

73. This was Arnold's last battle for his still beloved country, and yet no tidings of his bravery, or of Morgan's came to Congress from the envious Gates. Arnold was carried bleeding from the field amid the deafening shouts of "*Victory, victory.*" The British lost several valuable officers, among whom none was more lamented than Gen. Frazer. Their entire loss was over 400 men; that of the Americans about 80.

What was the loss on both sides?

74. The British camp was evacuated during the night, and soon after an attempt was made to retreat to Fort Edward, but intelligence was brought that this fort was already in possession of the Americans, and every avenue of retreat was blockaded by the enemy. Still Burgoyne was too proud to submit to his fate, and yield all his bright visions of future fame and glory at once. He resisted until the last moment, as hope after hope proved vain, until worn out and weary he agreed, after much consultation, upon an honorable *surrender* of the relics of his once splendid army of 10,000 men.

Why did not Burgoyne retreat to Fort Edward?

What was Burgoyne finally obliged to do?

75. It was stipulated, that on the 17th they were to march out of their camp with the honors of war to the place assigned, where their arms and artillery were to be piled at the command of their own officers. That a passage should be allowed them to

What were the terms of surrender?

1777

What trophies were obtained by this great capitulation?

Great Britain on condition of their not serving again during the war. The trophies obtained by this great capitulation were, officers and soldiers, 5,791. \* The train of brass artillery and other ordnance was of immense value, consisting of 42 pieces of cannon, besides 7,000 muskets, with six thousand dozen cartridges, a vast supply of shot, shells, &c., a great number of tents and military stores, with clothing for 7,000 men.

How were the captured troops treated?

76. Every possible courtesy was shown to the officers, and our soldiers were not allowed to witness the surrender. We here see one of the most unexpected reverses of fortune, as ordained by divine Providence. The proud, presuming foe, the haughty commander, who threatened to lay waste our cities and expose our helpless women to the merciless Hessian and savage—who said his army should not retreat—was at last obliged to sue for terms of surrender to the very people whom he had treated with sovereign contempt. With the long and loud huzza of victory from an oppressed people, arose another cry over the land, of praise to Him who limits the extent of human power, and decrees in wisdom the destinies of nations.

What is here said of Burgoyne?

What was heard with the loud huzza of victory?

77. The testimony of several English writers is given to the magnanimity with which such foes as Burgoyne and his army had been treated. The magnanimous Gen. Schuyler, notwithstanding Burgoyne had in wantonness ordered his splendid country-seat near Saratoga to be destroyed, opened the old family town-mansion to the captive officers. Burgoyne learned a lesson on the beauty of forgiveness, and could not forbear saying to Gen. Schuyler,

What is said of Gen. Schuyler's treatment of Burgoyne?

“You show me great kindness, sir, though I have done you much injury.” To which the noble-hearted man replied, “*That was the fate of war, think no more of it.*” 1777

78. It is worthy of note, that at the very time that Burgoyne was receiving the most honorable and generous terms for himself and his army, acts of the most wanton barbarism were committed by the army of Clinton, on the North river. Clinton, on the 5th of October, while Burgoyne was anxiously looking for aid previously to the last battle of Saratoga, and only ten days before his surrender, had moved from New York, and under convoy of some ships of war, sailed up the river about forty-five miles, landing at Verplanck's Point.

79. This was done as a feint to deceive Putnam, stationed at Peekskill, who, supposing it to be Clinton's intention to push on northward to Burgoyne, drew away as many troops as could be spared from Forts Montgomery and Clinton, to oppose his progress. The feint succeeded, and immediately Clinton, taking advantage of their weakened state, marched two thousand of his men over the rugged range of the Dunderberg, and completely surprised both garrisons at once. They fought desperately, but at last were overpowered, and the forts fell into the hands of the British.

80. Part of the garrison escaped in the darkness of night, but about 250 men were left, including the killed and wounded. Gen. Putnam, having only a few men to guard some stores, was obliged to retire as the enemy approached—destroying

**1777** every thing in their route of cruelty and devastation. Gen. Vaughan, as if to consummate their barbarity, destroyed the beautiful town of Esopus, not sparing the church or any other building. The situation of Gen. Gates was now perilous in the extreme ; for, with Burgoyne on one side, and Vaughan and Clinton within a few hours' march and sail, he felt that what was "to be done 't were well that it were quickly done."

What acts of barbarism were committed by Gen. Vaughan?

What providential incident occurred about this time?

81. Here, too, another providential incident occurred. A spy, dispatched to Burgoyne, was taken, who, finding himself in danger of detection, was observed to swallow something taken hastily from his pocket. An emetic was administered, which, although it proved fatal to the spy, was considered a lucky escape for the Americans. A silver bullet was thrown up, which, being unscrewed, was found to inclose a letter from Sir H. Clinton to Burgoyne, dated Fort Montgomery, October 8, commencing, "Nous voici—and nothing between us but *Gates*," &c., &c.

Relate the account of the spy found in Putnam's camp?

82. In another instance, a man was seized in Gen. Putnam's camp, under suspicious circumstances, and on trial, was found to be in the British service. Gov. Tryon addressed a letter to Gen. Putnam, reclaiming the spy as a British officer, and threatening vengeance in case he should be executed. This drew from the witty Putnam the following characteristic reply :

"Sir: Nathan Palmer, a lieutenant in your king's service, was taken in my camp as a *spy*—he was



condemned as a *spy*—and you may rest assured, 1777  
sir, that he shall be hanged as a *spy*.

“I have the honor to be, &c.,

“ISRAEL PUTNAM.”

“To his Excellency, Gov. Tryon.

“P. S. *Afternoon.—He is hanged.*”

83. Immediately after the surrender of Burgoyne, Gen. Gates dispatched a body of troops to the relief of Putnam, on which Gen. Clinton ordered the immediate return of his troops to New York, having by fire and sword completely desolated the country, and spread ruin and death in many a peaceful family. About the same time, the British troops retired to Canada, and the northern department was once more restored to tranquillity.

Why did Clinton return to New York?

84. We have already given a statement of our army at the south, and have sighed over their reverses. They were men equally brave and true, but enfeebled by the detachments Washington generously sent to Gates. We left them in their huts at Valley Forge, and alluded to their deep necessities. No language can depict the sufferings of our ancestors at Valley Forge. Night after night, they sat shivering, nearly naked and starving, around their fires. Famine stared them in the face, and disease disabled hundreds of their number. During the day, amid sleet and snow, they performed the duty of pack-horses, and carried heavy loads of fuel on their naked shoulders, or yoked themselves together before rude vehicles of their own construction, drawing logs, while the snow was stained with the bloody tracks of their

What is said of our southern army?

What of our army at Valley Forge?

**1777** bare feet. When the night came on, their weary limbs ached for repose—the bleak and frozen hill-side was the only resting-place for hundreds; and as the cold increased, they dared not lie down, but slept, sitting in groups around the fires.

85. Washington's heart was often wrung with anguish, and he devised every means in his power to alleviate their sufferings. But even at this time of struggling and adversity, when his soul was rent with emotions of grief for their sufferings, a party arose in Congress, in concert with General Conway and others, endeavoring to remove the chief command from the beloved of the people, the only man who could keep a mutinous, naked, sick, and starving army together—the man selected by the God of the oppressed to break the chains of bondage.

What party arose in Congress at this time?

Who were the candidates named to supersede Washington?

86. The candidates named to supersede Washington were Gens. Mifflin, Lee, Gates, and Conway. Gen. Gates seemed to be the favorite candidate, and there is every reason to suppose that he did all he dared, in undermining the fair character of Washington. But Washington came out of the fire of persecution like tried gold. The evil deeds of his enemies fell on their own heads.

What is said of Gen. Conway?

87. Gen. Conway was afterward challenged by Gen. Cadwallader for some vile speeches against Washington, and received a wound which he supposed to be mortal. He afterward trembled at the remembrance of his treatment of Washington, and confessed that he had slandered him. In all his pain, and at the honest hour of death, as he supposed, he wrote a letter to Washington, saying,

among other expressions of sorrow for what he had done, "*You are in my eyes the great and good man.*" Truly he was a great and good man. Though his heart recoiled at such base insinuations and slanders, he chose to suffer contumely in god-like silence, feeling that God had all hearts in his hands, and could make even such enemies to be at peace with him. Besides, for his country's sake he was silent, for he knew that a public defense would expose many facts which an exulting enemy should not know.

1777

What was Washington's conduct under injuries?

88. On the 15th of November, 1777, a plan of confederation for the States was adopted, which, however, amounted to little more than a friendly league, and served to unite the colonies more closely in their common cause. The plan was proposed in the summer of 1775, by Benjamin Franklin, but obstacles to its execution arose, which could not easily be surmounted until the close of 1777.

What is said of the plan of confederation?

89. In December of this year, Baron Steuben, relying on the promises of the French Court for remuneration, arrived in this country, and was received by Congress with every mark of distinction. He was a man highly respected in Europe, had been aid-de-camp to the renowned Frederick, king of Prussia, and was singularly fitted by his previous life to aid and instruct our undisciplined army. Thus the same Providence that raised a leader eminently qualified for his work, gave us also friends to plead our cause among the princes of the earth. The noble foreigner hastened to Valley Forge, and forthwith commenced an active system of discipline which conduced greatly to our future good success.

What is said of the Baron Steuben?

1778

## CHAPTER III.

## CAMPAIGN OF 1778.

What is said of the treaty of alliance with the French?

1. In the spring of 1778, the French frigate, "La Sensible," arrived with the intelligence of the negotiation of a treaty of alliance between France and America. It was formed on the basis of perfect reciprocity of interest. In it Louis XVI. guaranteed our commerce and independence. Intelligence was brought that other European powers were favorably inclined to the Republican cause.

What proclamation was issued at Valley Forge?

Washington issued a proclamation from headquarters at Valley Forge, appointing a day of public thanksgiving to the Almighty Ruler of the universe, for having so propitiously defended the cause of the American United States.

Why did the English dispatch commissioners to America?

2. When the English Ministry were informed of this treaty, they immediately dispatched commissioners to America, to attempt a reconciliation; but their offers now could not be accepted: once, the colonists had humbly petitioned as just and loyal subjects for the very favors now offered, but were spurned from the throne, and their petitions treated with the utmost contempt.

How were their offers received?

What is here said of the Americans?

3. After the country had been deluged with the blood of its inhabitants, and after innumerable acts of violence and tyranny, the British meanly offered to give them what they asked for in humble terms. No, they said with one voice. Independence now, and Independence forever. Never would they return

to the mother country. They were firm in this resolve to the last. They had pledged their lives, their fortunes, and their sacred honors, to the cause of American independence. 1778

4. They felt the justice of their cause, and had a strong confidence in the overruling providence of God, and though deficient in many things necessary to carry on the war, and apparently incompetent for the contest, they determined to press onward. Assailed by offers of gold, by threats, still they were firm. One of the generals in the army, when tempted by one of the commissioners with the offer of £10,000 sterling, and any office in his Majesty's gift, to use his influence in uniting the colonies to Great Britain, replied, "*I am not worth purchasing ; but such as I am, the King of Great Britain is not rich enough to buy me.*"

In what had they a strong confidence?

What instance of attempt at bribery is here mentioned?

5. The pride of the British nation had been greatly humbled by the defeat of their favorite general, and the ministry received the loudest censures from the party which had opposed the war. They had little anticipated the ignominious result of Burgoyne's campaign, and were not prepared to act in view of such an event. They had now been foiled in their attempt at negotiation and bribery, and were at a loss what new method to adopt.

What was thought in England of Burgoyne's surrender?

6. The ratification of the treaty of alliance warned them that French soldiers would soon join heart and hand with Americans. Deeming Philadelphia a disadvantageous position, being too far from the sea, and liable to be blockaded, the ministry transmitted orders that it should be evacuated and the royal troops concentrated at New York.

Why was Philadelphia evacuated?

**1778** As Gen. Howe had resigned, Sir Henry Clinton was appointed commander-in-chief, and on him devolved the execution of these orders.

Who  
succeed-  
ed Gen.  
Howe?

7. He immediately set about the movement in the most secret manner, but it was discovered by the little band at Valley Forge. Washington immediately dispatched Lafayette with 2,000 men to watch the enemy, and guard the country against their marauding parties. He crossed the Schuylkill and took post on Barren Hill, mid-way between Valley Forge and Philadelphia, being about nine miles from either place.

Why was  
Lafay-  
ette  
detach-  
ed, and  
whether  
did he  
go?

What  
was done  
by Sir  
Henry  
Clinton  
on re-  
ceiving  
informa-  
tion from  
a spy?

Describe  
Lafay-  
ette's po-  
sition.

8. A spy brought information of his movement to Sir Henry Clinton. He immediately sent out a superior force against Lafayette to surprise him, and by cutting off his retreat, oblige him to surrender. Through the negligence or perfidy of one of Lafayette's piquet guard, he was nearly surrounded at night. At sun-rise the next morning a spectacle, which was sufficient to appall an older heart than Lafayette's, met his gaze. Between him and the Schuylkill lay the British troops strongly guarding one of the fords of that river, while a large number were so detached as to descend upon him, when he should attempt to move for the remaining passage.

What did  
Wash-  
ington do  
on dis-  
covering  
the ap-  
proach of  
the ene-  
my?

9. At the same moment, Washington from his camp discovered the approach of the enemy, and ordered the whole army to be in readiness to march to the relief of the detachment, if necessary. With his officers he mounted a hill, and with the utmost anxiety gazed through his glass, toward the Schuylkill.

10. Cool and collected, Lafayette hesitated not a moment. He dared not attack so large a body, but he would not surrender. He had recourse to a manœuvre which gave him great credit. Forming his little band partly in heads of columns which only extended beyond the woods, the British were led to suppose that the whole army was advancing against them and halted to give battle. In the mean time, beneath the very hill on which the British were posted, Lafayette was silently passing on his way, when at last, to the utter surprise of the enemy, the heads of the columns retreated with speed and the whole detachment reached Valley Forge, losing only nine men. Washington embraced his youthful friend, while the army from their gloomy huts received him with joyful shouts. The retreat at Barren's Hill has always been regarded as a most skilful achievement.

To what manœuvre did Lafayette resort?

Describe the retreat

11. The number of troops at Valley Forge in May of this year, was about eleven thousand, and the whole American force then in the field did not exceed fifteen thousand men. The British army in Philadelphia and New York amounted to thirty thousand, of which nineteen thousand were in the former place. Besides these there were nearly 4,000 at Rhode Island.

What was the number of the American force?

What the British?

12. On the 18th of June the English troops evacuated Philadelphia, and crossed into New Jersey, whither Washington speedily followed them. The country seemed filled with red-coated soldiers, and the baggage train alone covered twelve miles of road. On the 28th of June the two armies were warmly engaged at Monmouth, sixty-four miles

What movement was made on the 18th of June?

What took place at Monmouth on the 28th?

1778 from Philadelphia. The action was conducted with great skill on both sides, but although favorable to the Americans, was not a decided victory.

From what did the soldiers greatly suffer?

13. This battle was fought on the Sabbath day, and a fearful one it was. All day long they fought on the plains of Monmouth, the sun pouring down rays of intense heat, the thermometer being *ninety-six degrees*. Many of the soldiers died of the heat, and the cry for water was more awful than the moans of the wounded. An unfortunate retreat permitted by General Lee,\* nearly deranged the plan of operation, and but for the singular bravery of Gen. Washington, who commanded the troops in person, the battle would have been lost.

What is said of Washington when informed of Lee's retreat?

14. When word came to Washington, that Lee was in full retreat, the expression of his usually placid face is said to have been dreadful—with a burst of indignation, he sprang on his horse, and the cloud of dust alone told of his route. "*Long live Washington!*" the troops shouted as he galloped furiously on until reining up in Lee's presence, he demanded of him in tones of severity, whence arose the disorder and confusion.

What did he demand of Lee?

How did Lee receive the rebuke?

15. Rebuke from Washington was terrible to any one, but galling in the extreme to Lee. Not a moment was to be lost. Commands were given in quick succession and promptly obeyed. Order once more was restored, when Washington again rode up to Lee and in token of his forgiveness, exclaimed, "*Will you, sir, command in that place?*"

What request did Washington make?

---

\* Major-general Lee, who was captured in 1776, was exchanged in May, 1778, for Major-general Prescott, who was taken at Rhode Island by Col. Barton.



pointing to the front, exposed to the galling fire of the British. He sullenly replied, "Yes." "*I expect you to check the enemy immediately.*" "*Your orders,*" replied Lee, stung with mortification, "*shall be obeyed; I shall not be the first to leave the field.*"\* 1778  
What was Lee's reply?

16. A deadly fire was poured on them, and nobly they stood their ground. Hamilton was exposed to the hottest of the fire, and fearing lest Lee might again shrink under the heavy onset, exclaimed, "I will stay with you—I will die with you—let us all die rather than retreat." Wayne, too, showed distinguished valor on this fearful day. The batteries of Knox and Stirling were like sheets of flame, and every thing betokened the energy with which the battle was fought. Night only put an What is said of Hamilton?  
  
What other officers showed distinguished bravery?

---

\* Lee, incapable of brooking even an implied indignity, addressed two letters to the Commander-in-chief, couched in disrespectful language, and with an air of defiance solicited a trial for his conduct. He was immediately put under arrest, charged with disobedience of orders, misbehavior before the enemy, and disrespect to the Commander-in-chief. He was found guilty of all the charges, and was sentenced to suspension from any command in the American army for one year. From this moment his attacks on the character of Washington were more virulent and open, and his language at all times scurrilous and profane. He lived a wretched life, secluded from society, in a hovel without glass windows or plastering, until the autumn of 1782, when he took lodgings in a common tavern in Philadelphia. He was soon seized with a violent disease, which speedily terminated his life, Oct. 2, 1782. He was an infidel in principle, and hostile to every attribute of the Deity. In his will he requested not to be buried in any church or church-yard, or within a mile of any Presbyterian or Anabaptist meeting-house. What a contrast between such a death-bed scene and that of a Christian.

**1778** end to the incessant firing, and as the thunder of the guns died away, both armies, exhausted under the burning sun, lay down upon the ground.

What put an end to the battle?

What took place during the night?

How many perished from heat?

What was the loss on both sides?

What was thought of this victory?

What fleets were dispatched to America?

What is farther said of them?

17. The stillness of that awful Sabbath evening was broken by piteous cries for water, and the groans of the dying. The wearied Americans slept soundly, for at the dawn of day they perceived that the British after midnight had deserted their camp, and were already beyond their reach.

18. During this day no less than 59 British soldiers perished from the heat alone. The Americans lost eight officers and sixty-one privates killed, and about one hundred and sixty-one wounded, while the British lost, in all, three hundred and fifty-eight men, including officers. One thousand men deserted during the march, and one hundred were taken prisoners. This victory was celebrated with rejoicings throughout the United States, and Congress passed a vote of thanks to Gen. Washington and his army for their bravery.

19. Soon after the treaty of alliance had been ratified, France fitted out a fleet of twelve sail of the line under Count d'Estaing, to co-operate with our army. At the same time, the British government sent out a fleet to reinforce Admiral Lord Howe. Both fleets were delayed on the passage by contrary winds. In July, the French fleet arrived off the coast of Delaware, and not finding the British there, sailed for New York. Here they continued eleven days during which they captured twenty English merchantmen, when, with the advice of Washington, D'Estaing sailed for New port, with a view of co-operating with the Ameri-

cans in expelling the British from Rhode Island, 1778 of which they had held possession nearly two years.

20. Sullivan, at the head of ten thousand men, had crossed over to Rhode Island to co-operate with the naval force. Generals Greene and Lafayette were also sent with detachments, and on the 9th of August, it was agreed to attack Newport by land and water, but on that very morning Admiral Howe appeared with the British fleet. The French admiral in order to engage the enemy to better advantage at sea, set sail to attack him. A terrible storm commenced which raged violently and incessantly for three days, drenching the exposed forces of Sullivan, and carrying destruction with it on the ocean. The fleets were both disabled, and obliged to put into their respective ports to refit.

What were the movements of Sullivan?

Of Greene and Lafayette?

What were their plans, and what led to their change?

What effect did the storm produce on the fleets and the troops?

21. Gen. Sullivan no longer dared to remain, and after some skirmishing in which there was considerable loss on both sides, the army made a skilful retreat to the main-land. It was a fortunate action, for in a few hours Gen. Clinton arrived with four thousand men, and resistance from our little band would have been vain. Thus ended an expedition which had promised a great deal, and of which high hopes had been entertained. In November, D'Estaing sailed with his fleet for the West Indies, to attack the British dependencies in that quarter.

What did Sullivan do?

Why was it a fortunate action?

Where did D'Estaing sail in Nov.

22. During the summer of this year, a most harassing war was carried on by the Indians against the inhabitants on our western frontier, but an expedition under the intrepid Col. Clarke soon put an end to these outrages.

What occurred during the summer of this year?

**1778** The lonely and sequestered vale of Wyoming next became the theatre of one of the most horrid scenes ever witnessed.

What is said of Wyoming, its situation and settlement?

What is said of the inhabitants?

How many of the youths joined the army?

What is said of Whigs and Tories?

What did the Tories take advantage of, and what did they resolve?

What was the Indian force?

What is said of the beauty of Wyoming at this time?

23. Many years before the Revolution, a colony from Connecticut had commenced a settlement in this charming valley through which the Susquehannah flowed. The inhabitants were pious, and perhaps no spot on earth in so small a settlement, numbered so many happy souls. About one thousand families were gathered here, and industry and frugality added to their prosperity. When the Revolution broke out, one thousand brave youths of noble sires joined the army. There is not a spot on our guilty earth uncursed by evil. Party spirit arose and the inhabitants divided in two parties, as Whigs and Tories. The former had the majority and used some arbitrary measures, which so incensed the latter that they vowed to be revenged.

24. Taking advantage of the absence of the sons, they resolved on one of the blackest acts recorded on the historic page. Joining to their number several hundred Indians anxious to witness the annihilation of the whites—increasing their forces to about 1,600—they started on their demoniacal errand. Never did the valley of Wyoming present a more beautiful aspect, as far as nature's rich gifts blessed it; but a close observer could mark in the hurried step and quickened speech of the old men, and the anxious face and tearful eye of the women, that danger was apprehended.

25. Their fears were somewhat calmed by a message from Col. Butler, the Tory commander,

that he would not harm them, but would like to hold a parley with them. Accordingly Col. Zebulon Butler, a cousin of the commander of the savage horde, accompanied by nearly all of the men in the settlement, capable of bearing arms, went out to meet them. Instantly the work of murder commenced, and nearly every man was butchered in the most awful manner.

1778

What message did Butler send?

Who was sent to meet them, and what took place on their arrival?

26. The affrighted women and children fled to the forts, which had been hastily erected, and every possible means of defense was adopted by Col. Dennison, who was left in command of the remainder of the men. Soon, the horrid band came with yells and imprecations to the fort, and to make their errand known, they threw the bleeding scalps of 196 heads of their beloved ones into the fort. Feeling resistance to be vain, Dennison sent out to inquire the terms of surrender, to which Butler replied, "*The Hatchet.*" A few moments completed the horrid work. The men were murdered, and the women with their babes were locked in the houses and forts, and destroyed in one awful conflagration. Humanity sickens at the recital of such scenes.

Where did the women and children flee?

Describe the appearance of the band which attacked the fort.

Describe the completion of this work of butchery.

27. Wyoming was never more called the happy valley. The few who survived the massacre, had a bitter lot, and the grave received crushed and broken hearts, when at last their pilgrimage was ended. Similar acts of atrocity took place at Cherry valley in New York and at Tappan, but we forbear: the story of human beings engaging in such deeds, is painful to the heart. In all these instan-

What is said of Wyoming?

Where were similar acts perpetrated?

What is said of the cruelty of the enemy?

1778 ces "Quarter" was asked, and answered only with a plunge of the bloody knife.

What did the British resolve toward the close of this campaign?

28. Toward the close of this campaign, the British finding, after the capture of Burgoyne, nothing could be gained at the North, determined to change the plan of operations, and attempt the subjugation of the South.

What movement did Sir Henry Clinton make?

In November, Sir Henry Clinton dispatched Col. Campbell with about two thousand men to commence operations against Georgia, then one of the weakest States. The American forces under the command of their general, Robert Howe, were inadequate to resist the enemy. They fought bravely, however, but finally were overcome, and after a short contest the capital surrendered, and the whole of Georgia came into possession of the British. This was the only State in the Union in which a legislative body assembled, under the authority of Great Britain, after the Declaration of Independence.

What is said of the American forces in the South?

What of Georgia in the hands of the British?

What is said of this campaign?

29. Thus ended the campaign of 1778, the least important of any since the beginning of the war. Gen. Lincoln received orders from Congress to take command of the southern forces, and the army under Washington retired to winter-quarters near Middle-Brook in New Jersey.

What of the army?

1779

## CHAPTER IV.

## CAMPAIGN OF 1779.

1. Never had the finances of the country been in so low a state, as in the beginning of 1779. Never had party spirit and private jealousies been more rife in Congress, than at this moment. A gloomy prospect was presented to the American patriot. Here, again, the peculiar virtues and talents of Washington were exhibited in their brightest light. Attacked by misrepresentations and angry speeches, and loaded with a weight of troubles both in the camp and out, still hoping and confiding in the arm of Providence, onward he went in the path of duty, the "great and good man," imitating the meek and lowly One, who, when he was reviled, reviled not again.

What was the state of the finances in 1779?

What is here said of Washington under all his trials?

2. Washington spent some time in Philadelphia with Congress, maturing a plan for the campaign. It was concluded to hold the army entirely on the defensive, with the exception of visiting with con-dign punishment the Tories and Indians, who had committed such merciless ravages the preceding year. This defensive plan was necessary, from the exhaustion of the treasury. Efforts had been made to negotiate loans in Europe, but only small sums had been obtained. No other resource remained than to emit bills of credit, or paper money. In 1775 three millions of dollars were issued. As a circulating medium, these bills were exceedingly valuable.

What plan was prepared for this campaign?

What efforts had been made to raise money?

What is said of the emission of paper money?

1779

What was the consequence of such an emission of paper money?

3. At the commencement of 1779 the amount issued had risen to over one hundred millions of dollars, and during this year, the amount was doubled. A necessary consequence of such an immense issue of bills of credit, was a depreciation of notes to nearly a fortieth of their nominal value.

What resolution did Congress pass relative to the pay of the soldiers, and why?

4. The scanty provision made for the maintenance of the officers, induced many resignations, until Congress, after having been repeatedly warned by Washington, awoke to the true state of affairs. They resolved that half-pay should be allowed their officers, for seven years after the expiration of their services, and subsequently extended it to the duration of their lives.

What expedition was fitted out in New York, and what is said of it?

5. Throughout this year, little more was aimed at by the British in the North, than depredation and butchery. For this purpose an expedition was fitted out from New York against Virginia, in which private and public property was indiscriminately destroyed, and the most ferocious cruelty every where marked their path. In twenty-one days Portsmouth and Norfolk were seized, one hundred and twenty-seven vessels were taken or burned, and two and a half millions of property destroyed. It was an expedition only worthy of Goths—being undertaken merely for plunder.

What is here said of Gov. Tryon?

6. A similar expedition was made against Connecticut, under Gov. Tryon. In works of brutality he was often selected by Gen. Clinton. No act was too vile for him to perform—no place too sacred to desecrate. New Haven, Fairfield, and Norwalk were visited, and exhibited fearful scenes of plunder, conflagration, and distress. Before applying



the torch, the soldiers were allowed to break open trunks, closets, and places of deposit, and appropriate to their own use money, jewelry, or any other article they coveted. After these marauding incursions, females, frantic and starving, were found wandering in swamps and solitary places, whither they had fled for safety.

1779  
What  
was the  
conduct  
of Try-  
on's men?

7. Washington could do little to protect these places. He dared not divide his small army stationed on both sides of the North river, in the immediate vicinity of the enemy, as he would then subject the whole to be destroyed. Besides, in order to protect the inhabitants, he must have an army sufficiently large to cover the country, he therefore deemed it prudent to risk no more than was consistent with the general welfare.

Why  
could not  
Wash-  
ington  
send  
men to  
protect  
these  
places?

8. About this time General Putnam performed his celebrated feat of riding down the stone stairs at Horse Neck. He with 150 men was attacked by Gov. Tryon, with 1,500, and retarded the advance of the enemy, until he saw the infantry and cavalry preparing for a charge. He instantly ordered his men to retire to a neighboring swamp, and plunging his rowels in his steed, rode down the precipice to the utter consternation and chagrin of the British dragoons. A shower of balls were poured upon him. He remained unharmed, though one pierced his hat. After procuring a reinforcement, he faced about and pursued Gov. Tryon, taking about fifty prisoners.

Describe  
Gen Put-  
nam's  
celebra-  
ted feat  
of riding  
down the  
stairs at  
Horse  
Neck.

9. The campaign of 1779 will ever be memorable for the reduction of Stony Point, one of the most brilliant actions during the war. This post was on the west bank of the Hudson river, and was of

What is  
said of  
Stony  
Point?

**1779** vast importance to either army. It had been strengthened by every means of art. Situated on an eminence washed by the Hudson on two sides, while a swamp overflowed by the tide lay on the other side. Six hundred men guarded this fort, and a double row of abattis surrounded the entire hill. Washington committed this hazardous enterprise to the gallant Wayne.

Describe  
the  
march  
toward  
Stony  
Point.

10. On the evening of July 16th, after marching fourteen miles over lofty heights, through deep morasses and narrow defiles, with his band of twelve hundred, he approached the fort, within a mile. Every thing depended on silence, and he sternly ordered each man to march with unloaded musket and fixed bayonet. At midnight, dividing his men into two parties, and heading one division himself, orders were given for one party to enter the fortress at the right, and the other at the left. The tide had flooded the whole marsh, yet they stopped not for that.

Describe  
the  
attack.

11. An advance party of twenty men attacked the double palisade, when instantly the sentinels upon the fort shouted in hot haste, "The foe—they come, they come!" while from below Wayne sounded in startling accents, "On to the fort, my brave men, on to the fort!" A tremendous fire was poured upon them, but onward they marched through the morass, driven into spray by the grape-shot and balls, while the hissing, bursting shells fell around them in every direction. At last the heavy axes of the advance party or *forlorn hope* forced their way, and a shout of joy sounded through the air.

12. At this moment their gallant leader fell, **1779**  
 wounded in the head. Although wounded, he said  
 to his men, with enthusiastic tones, "*March on,*  
*and carry me to the fort, for I will die at the head*  
*of my column.*" They lifted him, and with his  
 head upon a faithful breast, they bore him onward  
 until the centre of the fort was reached, and both  
 parties met, when a deafening shout rent the air.  
 The point was gained. The fort was carried, and  
 the military stores, standards, and ordnance fell  
 into the hands of the Americans. The English  
 lost over six hundred, in killed and prisoners.

What is  
said of  
Wayne?

Were  
they suc-  
cessful in  
their at-  
tack?

13. The brave are scrupulous in the observance  
 of the laws of humanity toward a conquered foe.  
 Our honest soldiers abstained from pillage or dis-  
 order, and disdained to take the lives of those who  
 asked "quarter;" thus showing, as was said to  
 Wayne, that "bravery, humanity, and magnanimity  
 are the national virtues of the Americans."

What  
was the  
conduct  
of the  
victors?

Soon after, the British at Paulus Hook, opposite  
 to New York, were surprised by Major Lee, who  
 succeeded in storming the works and taking one  
 hundred and sixty prisoners.

What  
other  
post was  
taken?

14. While these events were transpiring at the  
 North, scenes of equal interest were enacted in  
 Georgia and South Carolina. The enemy were  
 encouraged by hope of a speedy victory, as the  
 country was weak through a scanty population,  
 numerous slaves and tories.

Why did  
the Brit-  
ish hope  
to subju-  
gate the  
South  
with  
ease?

As has been already mentioned, Gen. Lincoln  
 was dispatched to collect the army, scattered after  
 the battle of Savannah, in December of 1778, and  
 to defend the inhabitants as much as possible from

Why was  
Gen. Lin-  
coln sent  
South?

**1779** the marauding attacks of the British and tories.

What is said of the tories?

Many of these were men of infamous character, more solicitous for booty than for the interests of the king. They had been reinforced by troops from Florida, and Prevost received the chief command of the Southern British army, in the place of Campbell, who had returned to England.

Who succeeded Campbell?

What was the first object of the British?

15. The first object of the British was to get possession of Port Royal in South Carolina, but they were met by Col. Moultrie, of whom we have spoken, and repulsed with great loss.

Why did Gen. Lincoln send Gen. Ash against the enemy in Georgia?

Encouraged by this action, Gen. Lincoln sent an expedition of fifteen hundred men under Gen. Ash, to repress the incursions of the enemy in Georgia, and by driving them from their posts on the Savannah, confine them to the low and unhealthy country near the ocean. The British, as they approached, evacuated Augusta, and Gen. Ash pursued them as far as Briar Creek. Here he was suddenly and unexpectedly surprised by Prevost, who, with nine hundred veterans, by a circuitous march, had fallen upon his rear. One hundred and fifty of the Americans were killed by the first fire of the enemy, and in retreat, many were drowned in the Savannah river, or engulfed in the deep morasses on its margin. By this unfortunate surprise, Gen. Lincoln lost one-fourth of his army, and the British were again in full possession of Georgia.

What is said of the attack at Briar Creek?

What fears were now entertained?

16. Great apprehensions were now entertained for the safety of the adjacent States, and the brave Carolinians, defeated but not discouraged, gathered around the standard of Lincoln. John Rutledge, a man beloved and extensively known in that re-

gion, was elected governor, and invested with dictatorial powers. 1779

The condition of the southern States claimed the immediate attention of Congress, as Lincoln's army, except a few hundred continentals, consisted of inexperienced militia, and many of these were becoming impatient of absence from their homes. Washington sent a part of his own small band, and solicited D'Estaing, who was still employed in operations against the British in the West Indies, to proceed immediately to the southern States, to engage in the fall campaign.

17. D'Estaing at once accepted the invitation, and in September appeared off the coast of Georgia, to the great surprise of the British, and captured three frigates and a fifty gun ship. But the British concentrated all their forces at Savannah, and made diligent preparations for defense. D'Estaing proudly demanded a surrender of the town, which, after 24 hours' consideration, was refused by Prevost, saying he meant to hold out to the last. Immediately 37 cannon and 9 mortars, accompanied by 16 heavy guns from the fleet, opened a furious discharge. The garrison replied by a fire from nearly 100 cannon, and kept up an unceasing roar, day and night, for five days. Still no breach had been made, but the sufferings of the inhabitants were fearful.

18. At last D'Estaing and Lincoln determined on an assault, leading on their armies in three columns of the French, and one of the Americans. D'Estaing, at the head of the first column, brandishing his sword, marched boldly on, but was soon

What is said of Lincoln's army, and what measures were taken to enlarge it?

What is said of D'Estaing's arrival?

What did D'Estaing demand?

What was the reply of Prevost?

Describe the assault.

**1779** borne wounded from the field. A deadly contest ensued, in the midst of which two hundred horsemen came galloping to the place, with Pulaski at their head—but he was soon mortally wounded.

What is  
said of  
Pulaski?

Of Lau-  
rens?

19. Onward next came the gallant Laurens, in the hot fire, regardless of danger. It is said, when he found his brave band routed and in confusion, that in despair he “flung away his sword, and with his noble soul wrung with bitterest anguish, stretched forth his hands and prayed for death, and refused to stir till forced away by his companions.” Near him was the beloved of all who knew him, the simple-hearted, self-denying Jasper, grasping in death the standard presented to his regiment at Fort Moultrie. The British sustained a slight loss, but more than a thousand Frenchmen and Americans lay stretched on the field. D’Estaing,\* anxious to embark for Europe before the autumnal storms, refused to stay longer, and Lincoln was obliged to retreat across the Savannah into South Carolina.

Of Jas-  
per?

What  
was the  
loss of  
both par-  
ties?

Describe  
Sulli-  
van’s ex-  
pedition  
against  
the Tories  
and In-  
dians.

20. During the summer of this year, Gen. Sullivan was successful in his expedition against the Indians and Tories under the command of Brandt, Butler, and others, who were implicated in the massacre at Wyoming. He boldly pursued them to the very heart of their country, and burned forty Indian villages, destroying in his route more than 150 bushels of corn, and every vestige of their in-

---

\* The French fleet encountered severe storms on its return, and arrived at Brest in a very shattered condition. D’Estaing was one of the victims of the guillotine during the French Revolution.

dustry. After an absence of nearly two months he returned to Pennsylvania, about the middle of October, having lost but forty men. The Indians were intimidated by this severe chastisement, and the frontier settlements enjoyed repose for a time. 1779

21. This year was signalized by the victories achieved by our infant navy, under the command of the intrepid Paul Jones. The French government aided our commissioners at Paris in fitting out a squadron of three frigates and two smaller vessels, and Jones was the chosen commander. After capturing some vessels off the coast of Scotland, he fell in with a Baltic merchant fleet of 41 sail, under convoy of the British frigate *Serapis*, of 41 guns, and the *Countess Scarborough*, of 20 guns. The convoy immediately separated, but the two war frigates advanced to the battle with flowing sheets. The promontory of *Flamborough*, on the coast of England, about three miles distant, was covered with spectators.

For what  
was 1779  
signal-  
ized?

What is  
said of  
Jones  
and his  
fleet?

22. At the close of a beautiful September day, with the light of a full moon, the hostile vessels commenced their fire. The British having guns of superior metal, Jones ordered his ship to be lashed to that of the enemy. The action then became terrific—the muzzles of the enemy's guns touched theirs, and the gunners, in ramming their cartridges, often thrust their ramrods into the enemy's ports. Pearson, the British commander, endeavored repeatedly to cut the vessels loose. The details of this battle surpass any thing of the kind recorded in naval warfare. The "*Bon Homme*

Describe  
the bat-  
tle.

1779

What is  
said of  
Jones'  
vessel?

What  
took  
place  
when  
the ves-  
sel was  
found to  
be on  
fire?

What is  
said of  
Jones?

What is  
said of  
the Bon  
Homme  
Richard?

What  
was the  
value of  
Jones's  
prizes?

Richard" of Jones was old and rotten, and by the incessant firing had become almost unmanageable, and soon, only three guns were effective.

23. He then assailed the enemy with grenades, which set fire to the Serapis in several places. In the midst of the uproar a cry was heard that the Bon Homme Richard was sinking, and at the same awful moment the Alliance, another vessel of Jones' squadron coming up, and mistaking his vessel for the British, opened a broadside upon him. The water was pouring in in torrents, and in the confusion, a hundred English prisoners were released, and Capt. Pearson hailed to know if the colors were struck? Jones, undismayed when all around despaired, was enraged at the various accidents, and in a voice of thunder told Pearson he would never strike his colors! Immediately he ordered the hundred prisoners to the pumps, declaring they should sink with the vessel, if they refused to work. It is beyond the power of description to paint the frightful scene during these four hours. The Serapis, at length, as the fire rolled around her masts, struck her colors, and Jones was conqueror.

24. But the Bon Homme Richard was a shattered thing—riddled, and on fire in two places. Jones is said to have watched her with intense anxiety and a swelling heart, as he saw her last mast disappear, and finally the eddying waves close over her as she sunk with the three hundred victims of that fearful contest.

The value of his prizes during a short cruise of three months, was estimated at more than a quar-



ter of a million of dollars. Louis XVI. conferred on him the Order of Merit, and Congress gave him a vote of thanks, and presented him with a gold medal, to commemorate the victory. 1779  
How was he rewarded for his bravery?

25. The campaign of 1779 ended without any decisive results. The main division of the army went into winter-quarters at Morristown, while detachments were stationed at West Point and other posts on the Hudson. Whether did the army go for winter-quarters?

This campaign terminated in gloom. The Americans, with a feeble army, reduced in numbers, and an exhausted treasury, while Great Britain was redoubling her energies, having boundless resources at command. Parliament agreed to send one hundred and twenty thousand men to America, and voted fifty millions of dollars for the support of the war. Washington had not such resources at command—he saw with anguish a discontented, starving army on the verge of mutiny—Congress convulsed and weakened by dissensions—an inefficient ally in France, and, to use his own words, uttered in bitterness and grief, he declared that “friends and foes were combining to pull down the fabric they had been raising at the expense of so much time, blood, and treasure.”\* What was the state of our army at this time?  
  
What did Parliament agree to do?  
  
What did Washington say of our prospects at this time?

---

\* Washington's Letters.

1780

## CHAPTER V.

## CAMPAIGN OF 1780.

What was the state of feeling at this time, and why did the people long for peace?

1. Disaffection to the American cause was daily increasing at the South, while the adherents of the crown were becoming more numerous. The successive defeats of the Americans during a protracted war, and the numberless miseries accompanying such a state of affairs, made the people long for peace. Savannah, the chief town in Georgia, was in the hands of the British troops; and Sir Henry Clinton, taking immediate advantage of the departure of the French fleet, resolved to gain possession of the capital of South Carolina. Leaving the command of the royal army to Gen. Knyphausen, he sailed from New York, on the 26th of Dec., 1779, with about 8,000 troops, and a large amount of military stores.

What did Clinton do?

Describe the effect of the storm.

2. He had not proceeded far, when a violent storm arose, in which the fleet was driven far from its course. A vessel was lost, containing all the heavy ordnance, and nearly all the artillery and cavalry horses perished. The troops, after a dangerous passage, effected a landing in the last of January, and began to repair their losses among the tory population, preparatory to the siege of Charleston.

What is said of Lincoln?

3. Gen. Lincoln was at Charleston, doing everything in his power to prepare for a bold defense. He had only a small band, amounting to about

3,000 effective men and some armed citizens, to check the approach of 9,000 veteran troops. Clinton, with his well-fed and clothed army, might have entered the town in a few hours, but he chose to protract his operations.

1780

What is said of the movements of Clinton?

4. After remaining a month on the islands south of the city, he crossed the Ashley river on the first of April, and began the siege in form, by the erection of batteries within eight hundred yards of the American works. These works consisted of a chain of redoubts, lines, &c., stretching across the peninsula from the Ashley to the Cooper river, on which were mounted eighty cannons and mortars. A canal, filled with water, was in front of this, besides two rows of abattis and a picketed ditch. These defenses were constructed under the superintendence of the French engineer, Launay.

Describe the American works between the Ashley and Cooper rivers.

Under whose supervision were they constructed?

5. On the 9th of April, Gen. Clinton sent a summons to Gen. Lincoln, to surrender, which he promptly refused, and the siege went on for ten days, when a second summons was sent and rejected. After a vain and desperate struggle, day after day, and night after night, amid the most alarming discouragements, shut up by sea and land—all provisions, save a little rice, exhausted—Lincoln, at last, listened to the entreaties of the distressed inhabitants, and capitulated.

What is said of the siege, and why did Lincoln surrender?

6. On the 12th of May, his entire army laid down their arms, and South Carolina was given over to the exulting troops of a rapacious and sanguinary foe. There was scarcely a soldier in Georgia or South Carolina, who was not either in arms for the crown or a prisoner on parole. The number that

What is said of the capitulation?

**1780** surrendered was about 6,000, including 1,000 American and French seamen. The artillery amounted to about 400 pieces. The loss during the siege, on each side, was nearly equal; of the Americans, 254 were killed or wounded; of the British, 268.

What measures did Clinton adopt to secure possession of the State?

Describe the cruelties practised by Tarleton.

Were the terms of the treaty kept according to promise?

What proclamation was issued?

Who were the leaders of the partisan tribes?

7. Clinton immediately endeavored to gain the entire possession of the State, and dispatched three detachments to seize important posts. By these the country bordering on the Santee was scoured, Georgetown and Ninety-six seized, while the infamous Tarleton spread terror and death wherever he passed. When the helpless and dying sued for quarter, it was refused—whole bands of men, who, after fighting bravely, were obliged to surrender, asking quarter, were barbarously murdered.

8. Feeling satisfied with the state of affairs in South Carolina, Sir Henry Clinton embarked for New York, leaving Cornwallis with an army of 4,000 men to complete the subjugation of the South. In a short time the terms of the treaty signed at the capitulation were openly and grossly violated, and the people, who, under honest and kind treatment, would have quietly obeyed, arose indignantly at such treachery. Cornwallis had issued a proclamation, stating, whoever would not take an active part in securing his majesty's government, should be treated as rebels. Many suffered for a time, but the provocations becoming more insufferable, they formed themselves in small bands for partisan warfare. These, for a long time spread desolation among the tories. Among the leaders of these bands, and foremost for bravery and integrity of purpose, were Marion and Sum-

ter. Many a tale of boldness is recorded of these noble men, who, regardless of every thing like personal emolument, thought only of their country, and liberty for their children.\* 1780

9. These bands of patriots were without pay—they wore no uniform, and depended from day to day on chance for subsistence. Often they were destitute of ammunition, and were obliged to watch as their companions shot down the enemy, when they would instantly seize their muskets and cartridges. Saw-mills furnished them broadswords, and the patriot women, with their own hands, brought out their pewter dishes to be formed into bullets. At night, the cold earth, when they slept, was their resting-place, but frequently they marched during its live-long hours.

10. While Sumter, Marion, and their companions in suffering and toil, Colonels Cleveland, Campbell, Selby, Williams, and Sevier, with their equally brave men, were achieving a succession of gallant enterprise, a continental army, under Gen. Gates, who had superseded Gen. Lincoln in com-

What is said of them?

Who were associated with Marion?

August.

Where was Gen. Gates?

---

\* A British officer had been sent from Georgetown to negotiate an exchange of prisoners, and was taken to Gen. Marion's tent. An interesting interview took place, during which the officer partook with Marion of a humble dinner of roasted sweet potatoes. He was so affected by Marion's sentiments and ardent love for liberty, that on his return he resigned his commission and retired from the service, declaring that it was useless to fight against such men. He had little dreamed of the privations of our people, until he saw an American general and his officers, without pay, almost without clothes, dining on roots, and drinking nothing but water, and all these privations endured for liberty.

**1780** mand, was approaching Camden, about 110 miles north-west from Charleston.

What was  
with  
Gates?

11. The brave De Kalb was also with these troops, and had Gates listened to his prudent advice, we have good reason to suppose much blood might have been spared. He had been advised by De Kalb to proceed by a southern route, where he could obtain an abundant supply of provisions; but in rash haste, which was afterward changed to inexcusable tardiness, he took a straight road, leading through a dreary pine barren, and many of his men died on the route of disease, fatigue, and hunger. At length, arrived near the enemy, his haste seemed suddenly to leave him, and he spent four days in skirmishing, while, in the mean time, during his dilatoriness, the enemy received reinforcements. Still the royal troops amounted only to two thousand, while the Americans numbered four thousand.

What is  
said of  
the suf-  
ferings of  
the men?

What is  
said of  
Gates'  
tardi-  
ness?

What  
took  
place on  
the night  
of Aug.  
11th.

12. At midnight, on the 11th of August, both armies ignorant of the other's approach, found themselves almost in contact, and the gloom of night was illumined with flashes of musketry. Skirmishes took place during the night, in which the British had the advantage. De Kalb again ventured to advise Gates, as he was hemmed in between two swamps, to change his position, but he madly refused, insinuating that De Kalb's advice arose from fear. The day broke, and the engagement became general, but with the first furious charge of the British bayonets, the Virginia troops under Gates fled, while the confusion spread to the North Carolina militia.

What ad-  
vice did  
De Kalb  
offer  
Gates?

What  
took  
place in  
the first  
of the  
engage-  
ment?

13. All was disorder, save among the brave men under De Kalb, who, at their head, in the hottest of the fight, for a time withstood the advancing battalions. At last Tarleton with his dragoons at full gallop, came riding down De Kalb's men without mercy—there were no American cavalry to keep them in check. De Kalb,\* the noble friend of America, fell pierced with eleven wounds. His men, who loved him devotedly, surrounded his wounded form, exclaiming in bitterness, "Save the Baron de Kalb ! save the Baron de Kalb !"

1780  
What is  
said of  
De Kalb  
and his  
men ?

14. De Kalb had a presentiment, that he would fall in this battle, and had said, in reply to Gates' insinuations, "A few hours will prove who are the brave." These words were true. While De Kalb and his men were contending with the whole British army, Gates actually put spurs to his horse and fled with the utmost precipitation for eighty miles without stopping. His northern laurels had indeed turned to southern willows.†

What is  
farther  
said of  
De Kalb  
and  
Gates ?

15. The British lost five hundred in this engagement, but it is impossible to estimate the loss of

What  
was the  
loss of  
the Brit-  
ish ?

\* Individuals of both armies, struck with admiration at De Kalb's noble conduct, endeavored to shield his body, and some lost their own lives in the attempt. To a British officer, who tenderly watched the dying man, and endeavored with his aids to staunch the wounds, he said, "*I thank you for your generous sympathy, but I die the death I always prayed for—the death of a soldier fighting for the rights of man.*" His last moments were spent in dictating a letter to the brave men who supported him during the action, of whom he said, "*He had no words that could sufficiently express his love and admiration of their valor.*"

† Lee met Gates on his way to join the southern army, and, as if in prophecy of what took place at Camden, said, "Beware, your northern laurels do not turn to southern willows."

**1780** Americans, as no returns were made after the battle.

Why were the British checked in the pursuit of conquest?

Gates, with 150 men of his miserable army, retreated to Hillsborough. There remained no army to oppose Cornwallis, and sickness, arising from the pestilential air of a southern summer, checked the British in their pursuit of conquest.

How were hostilities carried on in the North?

Congress at last resolved to supersede Gates, and ordered an examination of his conduct. He no longer endeavored to supplant Washington.

In the northern States, hostilities were carried on by desultory operations, in which fifty houses in Springfield, a church and several houses at Connecticut Farms were burned, and various other places destroyed.

What is here said of the American women?

16. In proportion as misfortunes increased in every part of the United States, the oppressed people seemed in this, the darkest hour of their struggle, to have been animated with a renewed love for liberty. Even the females, who, under ordinary circumstances, would shrink from such scenes, came forward, in various ways assisting the sick and the dying, or procuring food for the starving. Denying themselves cheerfully many of the necessities of life, they joined, heart and hand, in this glorious cause. Many of the ladies of Charleston displayed much zeal in the cause of their country, and gloried in the appellation of *rebel ladies*.

What did France do to assist the Americans?

17. France determined to assist the Americans still farther; and, persuaded by Lafayette, who had returned for a short time to his native country, they dispatched, on the 10th of July, Admiral de Ternay, who arrived at Rhode Island, with a squad-



ron of 7 sail of the line, 10 frigates and armed vessels, besides 6,000 men under the command of the brave and experienced Count de Rochambeau. But before these generous allies had time to act, they were blockaded at Rhode Island by Admiral Arbuthnot, with 10 sail of the line. 1780

18. This was a deep disappointment to the Americans; but a deeper one was in store for them. They could brave all the horrors of war, the rigors of winter, scantily clad, and nearly starved—endure the absence from home and all its endearments, with few murmurs and with manly hearts—but a shudder of indignation and a heart-sickness overcame them when the *treason of Arnold* was brought to light.

What sufferings could the Americans endure without murmurs?

19. *Arnold a traitor!*—Arnold, loaded with the praises of a grateful country, a traitor! Saratoga's bloody field, and many others, came to their remembrance, and with hearts aching with mingled pity and shame, they again, in consternation, asked, *Is Arnold a traitor?* He who had been among the first to widen the breach between the mother country and the colonies—Arnold, with a maimed body, wounded in fighting valiantly for liberty, a traitor! From one end of the Union to the other, the news flew like lightning; and even little children ran with trembling steps and whitened lips, borrowing anxiety from their parents, lisping, *Arnold a traitor!*

What is said of their surprise on finding Arnold a traitor?

20. As a warning to youth, we dwell on the painful story—doubly painful, because we cannot forget all that he bravely suffered in the early struggles of our nation.

After the evacuation of Philadelphia by the British, in 1778, Arnold was stationed there as

What is said of Arnold while in Philadelphia?

**1780** military governor; his wounds at Saratoga, for a time, prevented his engaging in active duty. While in Philadelphia, he selected a wife from one of the disaffected or tory families. His wife is supposed to have been instrumental in weakening his attachment to his country. He hired a splendid mansion, furnished it in the most sumptuous style, and having expended most of his private fortune in the war, he found difficulty in meeting his expenses. Rather than retrench his extravagances, he resorted to dishonest means to procure money, and by a system of fraud and deceit succeeded in appropriating public treasure to his private use. At length he was arraigned before a court martial, and reprimanded with all possible delicacy by Washington, who was ever indulgent and forgiving to Arnold.

By what means did he procure money, and what was the consequence?

21. But he had determined to retrieve his fortunes, and gratify his passion for revenge under wrongs inflicted, and in an evil hour, he consented to barter away the liberties for which he had once so nobly fought. He was too proud to become a deserter, and gold he must have in some way. At last, he opened a correspondence with Sir Henry Clinton, and speedily after that, the infamous work proceeded. He had procured from Washington the command of the fortress at West Point,\* which, for its strength, had been called the Gibraltar of America. It was more important than any other post, as it commanded the whole extent of country from New York to Canada, and secured a commu-

What is said of West Point?

---

\* In the vaults of one of the forts was lodged the ammunition for its own defense, and the stock of powder for the whole army.

nication between the eastern and southern States. 1780  
For 30,000 pounds sterling and the rank of brigadier-general in the British army, Arnold at last agreed to betray his country, and place West Point in Sir Henry Clinton's possession.

22. Taking advantage of the absence of the vigilant Washington, who had gone to Hartford to meet Count Rochambeau, he resolved to finish quickly the foul deed, and for that purpose held a conference with Major André,\* the adjutant-general of the British army. All his plans were laid before André, and it was agreed to surrender the forts on the 25th. At a given signal from Arnold, the British transports were to sail up the Hudson, and land their troops, who, by manœuvring, were to obtain possession of West Point. All American children are familiar with the story; but perhaps they have not recognized the hand of Providence in thwarting the plans of André and Arnold.

With whom did he confer on this subject?

23. Sir Henry Clinton had enjoined it on André not to leave the sloop-of-war Vulture, in which he came up, and it was his own determination not to land; but here, in the first place, his plans were thwarted. Again he was disappointed in his inability to return by water, as the Vulture, on account of the firing from an American vessel, had moved down the river; then in the stubborn refusal of the man who brought him ashore, to take him back the next day—his unaccountable determination to change his route after parting with his guide—his confusion and loss of presence of mind

How were André's plans singularly thwarted?

Which events show the interposition of God in our behalf?

\* André, in Philadelphia, was a warm friend of Arnold's wife, and was favorably treated by Arnold.

1780 when arrested on the road by the the three\* Americans—are miraculous links in a chain of providential events, in which an interposing hand is plainly visible.

24. André was examined before a court martial at Tappan, and, agreeably to the law and usage of nations, was condemned as a spy to suffer death.

What is said of André's trial and execution?

Washington and his officers would gladly have saved the life of the accomplished and excellent André, but necessity required the rigorous enforcement of the punishment. He wrote a most pathetic appeal to Washington, that he might be shot, as a more honorable death; but this could not be granted according to the strict rules of war.

25. He was treated with the utmost kindness by Washington, who daily supplied him with food from his own table; and André acknowledged all the civilities he received, and throughout his trial manifested those elevated sensibilities which indicate greatness of soul. André was universally lamented both by the British and the Americans, and the spot of his sufferings and interment was consecrated by the tears of thousands.†

---

\* The captors of André were named John Paulding, David Williams, and Isaac Van Wart. Arnold's dispatches, plans, &c., found in André's boots, were evidences of his being a spy. He offered them his horse, watch, purse, and large rewards from the British government, if they would let him go. Although they were poor men, they were not to be bribed, and steadily refused—declaring that ten thousand guineas, or any other sum, would be no temptation.

† Much has been said by friends and foes on the death of André, while the death of the excellent Hale, under more painful circumstances, seems almost forgotten even by his own countrymen.

In 1776, when the British, by the retreat of Washington, were

26. Arnold escaped detection and death ; but his fate was more tragical than that of André. Doomed to perpetual banishment from his native land, branded as the only traitor in America, and scorned by those to whom he bartered himself, he dragged out a miserable existence, constantly stung with remorse ; and wherever he moved, he heard in burning words whispered, "*Arnold, the traitor !*"\* 1780

What is here said of Arnold ?

Sensible of the gracious interposition of Providence, and grateful for another signal evidence of His superintending care, a day of public thanksgiving was appointed on the 2d of November, throughout the State of New York.

Why was a day of thanksgiving appointed in New York ?

left in possession of Long Island, it became necessary to obtain information of the strength and future movements of the enemy. Hale, animated by an ardent love for his country, volunteered to undertake this hazardous enterprise. He passed in disguise to Long Island, examined every part of the British army, and obtained much valuable information. On his return he was apprehended, and carried before Sir William Howe. Being convicted, he frankly acknowledged who he was and what were his views. The next morning he was executed in the most unfeeling manner. He desired the attendance of a clergyman ; this was refused. He asked for a Bible ; this was also denied. Letters which, on the morning of his execution, he wrote to his mother, were destroyed, "that the rebels should not know they had a man in their army who could die with so much firmness."

His last words were—"I lament, I have but one life to lose for my country."

• To the memory of André magnificent monuments have been erected by his country, and the highest honors and liberal rewards bestowed on his family. *To the memory of Hale not a stone has been erected, nor an inscription to preserve his ashes from insult.*"

\* The contempt that followed Arnold through life, is illustrated on an occasion when Lord Surrey, since Duke of Norfolk, rising to speak in the House of Commons, perceiving Arnold in the gallery, sat down with precipitation, exclaiming, "I will not speak while that man," pointing to him, "is in the house."

1780

What cheering event took place at this time?

27. Toward the close of the year, Holland declared herself the open enemy of Great Britain and a friend to America. This event revived the drooping spirits of the Americans, and they began, in the darkened future, to see dawnings of a brighter day. Congress listened to Washington's appeal for more troops, and orders were issued for enlistments during the war. It was resolved that all officers should have half-pay for life.

The two armies went into winter-quarters in nearly the same position occupied by them in 1779.

## CHAPTER VI.

### CAMPAIGN OF 1781.

What is said of some of the Pennsylvania troops in 1781?

1. At no period during the war were the prospects of the Americans more gloomy than at the commencement of 1781. On the first of January, 1,300 Pennsylvania troops, rendered desperate by their sufferings, and contending, that they were detained beyond their time of service, declared their intention to march in a body to Philadelphia, and demand redress for all their grievances. They quitted, because their sufferings were intolerable, and to show that they were still firm friends to their country, they cheerfully returned to duty when their grievances were only in part redressed. Sir Henry Clinton offered them remuneration, if they would join his forces, but they indignantly scorned his

What did Sir Henry Clinton offer them?

offers, and delivered over the emissaries sent from his camp to Wayne, who executed them as spies. 1781

2. A similar mutiny was undertaken by the New Jersey troops, and as this state of things became alarming, Washington determined to punish them severely, as a warning to others. Two of the ring-leaders were shot by the most guilty of the mutineers. This was a most painful task; being culprits themselves, they were greatly distressed, and when ordered to load, many of them shed tears. It was important that the spirit of revolt should be effectually repressed, or the ruin of the army was inevitable.

What is said of the New Jersey troops?

How were they punished?

What efforts were made to raise money?

3. Congress now felt, that the sufferings of the troops were indeed pitiable, and unprecedented efforts were made to raise money and supply the wants of the army. Taxes were imposed, and cheerfully acquiesced in. A commissioner was sent to Europe to negotiate loans of money, and a large amount of gold and silver was introduced by a beneficial trade with the Spanish West India Islands. During the year, the Bank of North America, the oldest moneyed institution in the United States, was established by a charter from Congress, under the supervision of Robert Morris. To this distinguished patriot the army was greatly indebted, for he used his own ample private fortune and his personal credit, without hesitation, to sustain the government. The issuing of paper money was now discontinued, and the old continental bills ceased to circulate. Two hundred millions of paper dollars were made redeemable by five millions of silver, and this, with every other arrangement, was sub-

What is said of Robert Morris?

What arrangement was submitted to by the people?

**1781** mitted to without murmur, in the hope of a happier future.

Where did the British carry on hostilities?

4. The British enlarged their plan of operations, and hostilities raged not only around their headquarters, at New York, but in Georgia, North and South Carolina, Virginia, and Connecticut. In the latter places, the traitor, Arnold, became notorious for his plundering achievements as an incendiary and robber. Even in his native State, in the very spot of his boyhood's home, he rested not in his work of destruction.

What was done by Arnold?

X 5. The British, encouraged by their good fortune in the reduction of Savannah and Charleston, determined to advance into North Carolina. After the unfortunate battle of Camden, Congress thought proper to appoint Gen. Greene as successor to Gen. Gates. Washington spoke in high terms of commendation of Gen. Greene, but added, what can a general do, without men, without arms, without clothes, stores, or provisions? The southern army was at this time reduced to two thousand men, more than half of whom were militia. Although Gen. Greene's men were scantily clad, half-starved, and dispirited, destitute of arms and ammunition, the officers under his command were as brave men as ever followed a leader. Morgan, Lee, Marion, Sumter, and Col. Washington, formed a group to which the British army could furnish no parallel.

Who succeeded Gates?

What is said of the state of the army?

Why was Gen. Morgan detached?

6. In order to procure subsistence for his army, as well as to distract and harass the enemy, Gen. Greene was constrained to divide his army, by dispatching Gen. Morgan to the western frontier of South Carolina. Morgan soon found employment.



Lord Cornwallis had made preparations for invading North Carolina, and was unwilling to leave an enemy in the rear. He therefore sent Tarleton, at the head of 1,100 men to dislodge him, and "*push him to the utmost.*" They met at Cowpens, on the 17th January, and after one of the severest conflicts witnessed in the war, Tarleton was defeated with the loss of 300 men, killed and wounded, besides 500 prisoners, his artillery, and baggage. The Americans had only 12 killed and 60 wounded. The defeat of Tarleton was mortifying to himself, and a surprise to Cornwallis; and the loss of the light infantry crippled his movements during the campaign.

1781

What orders did Tarleton receive?

What is said of the battle of Cowpens?

What of the defeat of Tarleton?

The battle of Cowpens, it has been justly remarked, proved, in the end, nearly as disastrous to Cornwallis as that of Bennington did to Burgoyne.

7. Cornwallis now determined to take the field in person, and, by vigorous exertion, he expected soon to subdue the whole country south of Virginia.

What movement was made by Cornwallis?

On the 19th of January, having destroyed all his superfluous baggage and all the wagons, except a few for necessary purposes, he commenced his remarkable pursuit of Morgan, who had moved off to Virginia with his prisoners. He marched with such rapidity that he reached the Catawba the evening of the same day on which Morgan had crossed. Cornwallis, not doubting his ability to overtake the adversary, halted for the night; but, before morning, the rain fell in torrents, the river was impassable without boats, and these, the Americans had carefully removed to the other side.

Why was Cornwallis unable to cross the Catawba?

1781

How was the swelling of the river regarded by the Americans?

8. The swelling of the river was regarded by the latter as a gracious interposition of God, as by it, the enemy were delayed about two days. During this time, Gen. Greene hearing of Morgan's victory, and afterward of the rapid pursuit by Cornwallis, ordered the remainder of his troops to march to their relief, while he, himself, with only two or three attendants, after a ride of 150 miles, arrived in Morgan's camp on the 31st of January.

Describe the ground over which this retreat was made.

9. To understand the ground over which this remarkable retreat was performed, it is necessary only to glance at a map. Three large rivers rise in the north-west parts of North and South Carolina, and flow in a southerly course. The most southern is the Catawba. Greene and Morgan were now across the Catawba, approaching the Yadkin, which they passed on the evening of Feb. 2d, partly by fording, and partly by flats and boats, which were secured on the other side. Here, again, it happened as at the Catawba—the swelling of the river presented a barrier to obstruct the enemy. This second interposition in their behalf inspired them with fresh enthusiasm in that cause which seemed to be the peculiar care of God.

What obstructed their passage at the Yadkin?

What is said of the toils of the Americans?

10. Cornwallis still determined to pursue, but the Americans toiled on, day after day, and night after night, without a murmur, although many of them were only allowed three hours' sleep out of twenty-four, and but one meal a day. Pressing on through the wintry storm, most of them bare-foot, and with only one blanket for four men at night, drenched by the rains, and chilled by the water through which

they waded, they were obliged to dry their clothes by the heat of their own bodies. 1781

11. Cornwallis determined to pursue still, hoping to overtake the Americans before they reached Virginia; but, arriving at the Dan, which separates North Carolina from Virginia, he found the Americans had already passed, and a third time his army was delayed; the boats had been taken over and the river was unfordable. So clear an interposition of Providence was this, that the whole country regarded it as a special mark of favor to the American cause, and their hearts were cheered, as they thought of the future. So firm was their belief in this, that, although enduring severe sufferings during a retreat of more than 200 miles, not a single man deserted.

Why was Cornwallis delayed at the Dan?

How was this regarded by the Americans?

12. As soon as Greene had rested, he recrossed the Dan with an army of about 4,500 men, and on the 15th of March reached Guilford Court-house. It was a lonely spot, not another house being in sight, and a boundless forest on every side. On the day of Greene's arrival, Cornwallis attacked him. The battle was desperately fought for two hours, and all the advantages of victory were on the side of the Americans. They lost about 400 in killed and wounded; the British nearly 600. Notwithstanding Cornwallis claimed the victory, he retreated, closely pursued by Gen. Greene.

Describe the battle of Guilford Court-house.

What was the loss on both sides?

13. Cornwallis avoided a battle, and retreated to Wilmington, where, after remaining three weeks, he left the State and proceeded to Petersburg, in Virginia.

Whither did Cornwallis go?

Gen. Greene moved toward South Carolina, to

1781

What is  
said of  
the ac-  
tion at  
Hob-  
kirk's  
Hill?

drive the British from their posts. At Hobkirk's Hill, near Camden, the Americans were attacked by nine hundred men, under Lord Rawdon. In the beginning of the action, victory inclined toward the Americans, but they were at last compelled to retreat. Each army sustained an equal loss.

What  
posts fell  
in the  
hands of  
the  
Ameri-  
cans?

14. During April and May, several British posts fell in the hands of the Americans. Marion and Lee invested Fort Washington on the 15th of April. Though provided with muskets and rifles only, they were successful, and one hundred and fourteen men surrendered, after a resistance of eight days. In rapid succession post after post surrendered to small bodies of troops, led on by Marion, Sumter, Lee, and Pickens. On the 3d of June, the British were confined to three posts, Ninety-six, Eutaw Springs, and Charleston.

Sept- 8.

What is  
said of  
the bat-  
tle of Eu-  
taw  
Springs?

15. Lord Rawdon now resigned his command to Col. Stewart, and soon after returned to England. In the beginning of September, Col. Stewart took post at Eutaw Springs, about 50 miles from Charleston. Greene, being joined by Marion, resolved to attack them at once. The contest lasted nearly four hours, and great bravery was exhibited on both sides. The British were driven in confusion from the field, with the loss of eleven hundred men in killed, wounded, and prisoners. The Americans lost over five hundred, of whom sixty were officers.

16. The battle of Eutaw Springs was the last general action in South Carolina; the British abandoning the open country, retired to Charleston.

Cornwallis left North Carolina in April, and arrived at Petersburg, in Virginia, on the 20th of May. Having received several reinforcements, and formed a junction with the forces under Arnold and Phillips, he flattered himself he should soon subjugate this section of the country. Lafayette had been dispatched with a small detachment from the main army to watch the motions of the British. They were unable to hinder the enemy from destroying much valuable property.\*

1781

What is said of Cornwallis and his army?

Why was Lafayette dispatched to Virginia?

17. Cornwallis soon after fortified himself at Yorktown, on the south side of York river. Gloucester Point, opposite Yorktown, was occupied by Tarleton. The British force in Virginia, at this time, was about seven thousand men.

What was the number of the British in Virginia?

Washington had made active preparations to form a junction with the French army, for the purpose of making a combined attack on New York. A letter was received from Count de Grasse, informing Washington that he was about to leave France with his whole fleet and about three thousand two hundred land troops, for the Chesapeake. Washington immediately resolved to proceed to Virginia.

July 6.

Why did Washington change his plan of attacking New York?

July 19.

18. This movement met with the cordial co-operation of De Rochambeau, who was eager for a decisive action. They took with them the whole French army, and as many Americans as could be spared from the posts on the Hudson. A show

What troops accompanied Washington to Virginia?

\* It was estimated that in the course of the invasion of Cornwallis, Arnold, Phillips, Leslie, and Collier, about 30,000 slaves were carried off from Virginia, and property destroyed to the amount of \$15,000,000.

**1781** of an intention to attack New York was still maintained, and so completely was Sir Henry Clinton deceived, that it was not until the whole army had crossed the Delaware, that he suspected the real object of the Americans. Clinton hoped still to draw off a part of their troops, and perhaps cause Washington to return.

What intelligence cheered them at Chester?

When did the troops reach Yorktown?

What was the number of the allied troops?

Oct. 6.

What is said of the siege of Yorktown?

19. For this purpose he sent Arnold on a plundering expedition to Connecticut; but this manœuvre did not effect its object. Washington and De Rochambeau pressed forward with the utmost alacrity. At Chester, their spirits were greatly cheered, by the intelligence of the arrival of Admiral de Grasse, who, with a large fleet, blockaded the Chesapeake, and prevented the escape of the British by water. On the 25th of September, the combined troops reached Lafayette's head-quarters at Williamsburgh,\* and on the 30th they marched in a body to invest Yorktown and Gloucester.

20. The allied army consisted of about sixteen thousand troops. As the British force did not amount to half that number, Cornwallis would probably have abandoned Yorktown before its investment, had he not confidently expected reinforcements from Clinton.

A close siege was commenced, and carried on vigorously by the combined forces. During the siege, which lasted 17 days, two redoubts were stormed simultaneously—one by a party of light infantry, headed by Lafayette and Col. Hamilton;

---

\* So complete was the discipline of this army, that during their march of 500 miles, scarcely an apple or peach was taken without the consent of the inhabitants.

the other by a detachment of French grenadiers, 1781  
under De Viomenil.

21. Finding his situation a desperate one, and farther resistance of no avail, Cornwallis was obliged to surrender his whole army, amounting to seven thousand. The British lost nearly six hundred killed; the Americans three hundred. On the 19th of October, the articles of capitulation were signed, and Gen. Lincoln was selected by Washington to receive the sword of Cornwallis, on the same terms which the latter had, eighteen months before, received Lincoln's submission, at Charleston.

What was Cornwallis obliged to do?

On what terms did he surrender?

22. About 12 o'clock the combined army was drawn up in two lines, extending more than a mile in length, the Americans on the right side of the road, with Washington at their head, and the French on the left, headed by Count Rochambeau. A concourse of spectators assembled from the country, in numbers equal to the military. Every face beamed joy, but universal silence prevailed. About two o'clock the captive army advanced between the lines, with slow step, shouldered arms, and colors cased. Cornwallis, vexed and mortified, was unable to endure the humiliation of marching at the head of his garrison, and made Gen. O'Hara his substitute. Tarleton's troops, at Gloucester, surrendered at the same time to the command of the French general, De Choise.

Describe the scene of the capitulation.

23. The amount of artillery and military stores captured was very considerable—75 brass and 169 iron cannon, 7,794 muskets, 28 standards, and 2,113 pounds sterling taken from the military chest.

What amount of military stores was taken?

**1781** Lord Cornwallis and his officers, after their capitulation, received many civilities from Washington\* and other general officers, for which they returned grateful acknowledgements.

What was gained by the surrender?

How was this news received by Congress?

24. The surrender of Cornwallis sent a thrill of joy through the country, and was the most decisive event in our glorious war. The territory of the thirteen States was now restored to the jurisdiction of Congress, and the contest decided in favor of America. When intelligence of this brilliant success was received by Congress, the aged doorkeeper fell down and expired through excess of joy. Gen. Washington ordered divine service to be performed in the different brigades of the army, and the Members of Congress marched in procession to church, and there publicly offered up thanksgiving to God for the signal success of the American arms.

What proclamation was issued?

What was publicly affirmed?

25. A proclamation was issued for religiously observing throughout the United States the 13th of December as a day of thanksgiving and prayer. The many instances in which God's interposing hand was clearly seen were recounted. They publicly affirmed that "it was God, whose voice commands the winds, the seas, and the seasons, who formed a junction at the same time between a formidable fleet from the South, and an army rushing from the North like an impetuous torrent. Who but He could so combine the circumstances which

---

\* On one occasion, while in the presence of Gen. Washington, Lord Cornwallis was standing with his head uncovered, his excellency said to him politely, "My lord, you had better be covered from the cold." His lordship, applying his hand to his head, replied, "*It matters not, sir, what becomes of this head now.*"



led to success? ‘The unparalleled perseverance of the armies of the United States through almost every possible suffering and discouragement, for the space of eight long years,’ Washington declared to be ‘little short of a startling miracle.’” It has been estimated that the loss of life during the war, in the United States armies, was not less than seventy thousand. The number who died on board the prison ships of the enemy cannot be calculated. No less than *eleven thousand* died on board the *Jersey prison-ship*! These facts, with the whole story of our American revolution, should be handed down to posterity, that they may know the high price their fathers paid for freedom.

26. The people of Great Britain became clamorous for peace, and, at last, after much hesitation and discussion on the part of the British Government, they concluded to abandon the attempt to subjugate the United States.

What did Great Britain finally conclude to do?

Much firmness and wisdom were shown by Messrs. Jay, Franklin, Adams, and Laurens, our Commissioners, and through their negotiations, the preliminary articles of peace were settled at Paris, on the 30th of November, 1782, and in September, 1783, a formal treaty was signed. By this treaty Great Britain acknowledged the *independence and sovereignty of the United States*.

What is said of our commissioners, and when and where was the treaty of peace signed?

1783.

27. Thus the Americans obtained a high reward for their toils, and a sanctuary sacred to civil and religious liberty, was opened in the western hemisphere.

The *patriot army* was now to be disbanded. Once more, fathers and husbands were free to re-

What is said of the condition of the army at this time?

**1783** turn to their own fire-sides, but they must go in extreme poverty. Many of them had not received any compensation for five years. Anonymous letters were circulated tending to inflame their minds and induce them to insist on a forcible redress of grievances. Washington soothed them by kind words and promises, and in his farewell address appealed to the nobler sentiments of the heart. On the 3d of November, still glowing with patriotism, they separated, resolved to endure all necessary privations.

What means were taken to promote their discontent, and how were their feelings changed?

When did the British evacuate N. York?

28. On the 25th November the British evacuated New York.

When did Washington take leave of his officers?

On the 4th of Dec., Washington, with a heart full of love and gratitude, bade his officers adieu. It was a deeply affecting scene, and men, who had braved the horrors of many a battle, now, as they approached Washington, were melted to tears, and incapable of utterance.

Describe the scene.

What did Washington then do?

Washington then proceeded to Annapolis, the seat of Congress, to resign his commission as commander-in-chief of the armies of the United States.

What was the condition of the country at the close of the war?

29. At the close of the war, the debt of the United States was estimated at forty millions of dollars. They were not able to pay the interest, and many incurred great losses. Congress had not the power to provide means for discharging debts, incurred during the war. During this disorganized state of the general government, attempts were made in some of the States to satisfy their creditors. The attempt of Massachusetts to effect this by levying a heavy tax produced an insurrection among the peo-

What of Shays' rebellion?

ple, usually styled *Shays' insurrection*, from the leader of the insurgents, Daniel Shays. 1787

30. In May, 1787, deputies from each of the States, except Rhode Island, assembled at Philadelphia, for the purpose of forming a new constitution. After four months' deliberation, they presented the Constitution to the several States, and finally it was adopted.

When  
and  
where  
was the  
new con-  
stitution  
adopted?

The blessings of civil and religious liberty are guarantied to the people, and one of its chief excellences is, that it contains a provision for future amendments. The executive power is vested in a President and Vice President, and the legislative in a Senate and House of Representatives, all chosen by the people.

What  
were  
some of  
its fea-  
tures?

31. The same Providence that granted victory to our fathers in the hour of battle, gave them wisdom, in a day of peace, to devise means of securing to their children the independence they had won. May their posterity, to the latest generation, daily look to the Giver of every good and perfect gift for wisdom, that they may enjoy the blessings of a free and happy people, whose God is the Lord.

What are  
the con-  
cluding  
remarks?



GEN. GEORGE WASHINGTON.

**1789**

## **PART III.**

FROM THE FORMATION OF THE FEDERAL CONSTITUTION TO THE CLOSE OF THE HISTORY.

### **CHAPTER I.**

**ADMINISTRATION OF WASHINGTON,**

FROM 1789 TO 1797.

When  
and  
where  
was  
Washington  
born?



HE name of George Washington calls up many thrilling emotions in the mind of every American citizen. He was the third son of Augustine Washington, born on the 22d of February, 1732, near the banks of the Potomac, in Westmoreland county, Virginia.

2. His father, in 1730, married, for his second wife, Miss Mary Ball, by whom he had four sons, George, John, Samuel, and Charles, and one daughter, Betty. His great grandfather, John Washington, emigrated from the north of England about the year 1657, and settled on the place where Washington was born.

1789  
What is said of his family?

3. At the age of ten he lost his father. His mother now became his sole guardian, and early instilled into his mind those principles of religion and virtue which formed the solid basis of a character that has been the admiration of statesmen and philosophers wherever the name of the American republic is known. It was the teaching of that sainted mother, which prepared his mind for those scenes of strife and turmoil, through which he had to pass, and which made him a fit instrument in the hands of Providence, for sundering the chains of slavery, and guiding his country over the stormy sea of war into the harbor of peace and liberty. He was remarkable, in his younger years, for his strict adherence to truth, and for the fond affection which he bore to his mother.

What is said of the teachings of his mother?

For what was he remarkable?

4. Stimulated by the enthusiasm of military genius, at the early age of fifteen, he had obtained a midshipman's warrant to enter the English navy. His trunk was already in the boat, but as he went to give his mother a parting kiss, he saw the tears roll down her cheeks; he ordered his trunk back, and determined not to go. Four years after, he was appointed adjutant-general of Virginia, with the rank of major. From that time, his history is the history of his country. General Washington's elec-

What prevented him from entering the English navy?

What of his life to the time of his election to the presidency?

**1789** tion to the office of chief magistrate of the United States, was announced to him at Mount Vernon, on the 14th of April, 1789.

When and where was he inaugurated?

5. On the 30th of April, he appeared before Congress, then assembled in the City of New York, and taking the required oath of office, was proclaimed President of the United States.

What did he say in his address on that occasion?

In an impressive address to both Houses, he expressed a sense of his own unfitness for the high office to which he had been called. He declined all pecuniary compensation for his presidential duties, and concluded by invoking the blessing of that Almighty Being who rules over the universe, praying that He would consecrate to the liberties and happiness of the people of the United States, a government instituted by themselves, and that He would bless all engaged in its administration.

What did Congress do after the address?

6. After the address, both Houses adjourned, and, with the President, attended divine worship. They felt that God had carried them through a long and arduous war, and to Him they must still look for support and protection.

In what was Congress principally engaged during the first session?

Congress was principally employed, during its first session, in providing revenues for the exhausted treasury, and in establishing and arranging the different public offices. Three executive departments were organized to assist the president in carrying out the plans of government. These were a secretary of state, of the treasury, and of the war department—the offices to be filled by appointment of the president. Thomas Jefferson was appointed to the state department, Hamilton to the treasury, and Knox to the war.

How many departments were organized, and who was appointed to each?

Of what did the judiciary consist?

7. A national judiciary was constituted, consisting of a supreme court, having one chief justice and several associate judges. John Jay was appointed chief justice, and Edward Randolph attorney-general. 1789

Several amendments to the Constitution were proposed, and subsequently ratified by the States, making it acceptable to all. North Carolina and Rhode Island, shortly after, adopted the Constitution, forming the thirteen original States.

How were the amendments to the Constitution received?

8. To provide a revenue, duties were laid on the importation of merchandise and the tonnage of vessels.

How was a revenue provided?

The second session of Congress commenced Jan. 8th, 1790. Mr. Hamilton, Secretary of the Treasury,

proposed that government should not only assume its own foreign and domestic debts, amounting to more than fifty-four millions of dollars, but also that which several States contracted during the war, estimated at twenty-five millions.

What proposition was made at the commencement of the next session of Congress?

9. The plan of Mr. Hamilton was finally adopted. To cancel these several debts, the proceeds of public lands, lying in the western territory, were directed to be applied, and the president was authorized to contract a loan of two millions of dollars.

What plan was adopted to cancel these several debts?

10. This measure laid the foundation for that unrivaled prosperity, which the United States enjoyed in subsequent years.

What did this measure do?

On the 18th day of February, 1791, Vermont, by consent of Congress, became one of the United States, and on the 1st of June, in the succeeding year, Kentucky, then part of Virginia, was also admitted into the Union. 1791.

When were Vermont and Kentucky admitted into the Union?

11. In this year, a bill for the establishment of a

**1791** national bank was introduced into Congress, which passed after a strong debate. The bank was to be situated at Philadelphia, the capital stock to be ten millions of dollars, two millions to be subscribed for the benefit of the United States, and the residue by individuals. This year the first census of the inhabitants of the United States was taken. They amounted to 3,921,326.

What important bill passed this year, and what were its provisions? What was the population of United States at this time?

Who was dispatched against the Indians, and with how many men?

What was the result?

1790.

To whom was the command then given, and what success did he meet with?

1791.

After this defeat who took command, and how did he succeed?

12. While matters of high importance were occupying the attention, and party strife was filling the councils of Congress with agitation, an Indian war broke out upon the north-western frontier. Pacific overtures being rejected, General Harmer was dispatched against the Indians with an army of 1400 men. Having burnt a number of Indian villages, he was finally defeated in two successive battles, near Chillicothe, in Ohio.

13. Additional troops were raised, and the command of the whole given to Gen. St. Clair. With 2,000 men, he marched, in October, into the wilderness. On the 3d of November, he was surprised in camp, near the Miami, and defeated with great slaughter, leaving nearly 600 men dead on the field.

14. After the defeat of St. Clair, Gen. Wayne was appointed to carry on the war. On the 20th of August, 1794, with an army of 3,000 men, he met the Indians near the rapids of Maumee, and completely routed them, and laid waste their country. In 1795 a treaty was completed at Grenville, which gave peace to the inhabitants.

In the autumn of 1792 Gen. Washington was re-elected president, and inducted into office in March, 1793. Mr. Adams was re-elected vice president.



15. About this time the revolution, which had for some time convulsed France, resulted in the fall of the monarchy, and the establishment of a republic-government on its ruins. 1793

16. M. Genet, the minister of the new government, arrived at Charleston in April of this year. Our citizens, grateful for the kindness of his nation, received him with the most extravagant marks of public attachment. Flattered by these demonstrations of regard, he fitted out privateers from our ports to cruise against the enemies of France, and sought to embark the American people in the cause of his country, whatever might be the determination of government. As he persisted in his endeavors, in opposition to the remonstrances of the administration, France, at the request of the president, annulled his powers, and he was succeeded in the following year by M. Fauchet.

17. About this time, a war was apprehended between the United States and England. The Americans were accused of preventing loyalists from regaining possession of their estates, and the English of making illegal seizures of American property at sea, and of holding possession of military posts, on the western frontiers. Mr. Jay was sent to England, where he concluded a treaty with the British government. In the spring of 1795 he returned.

18. His treaty, which was adopted by the government, provided that the western posts be surrendered to the United States; compensation be made for illegal captures of American property, and British creditors were to be secured the means of collecting debts, contracted prior to the revolution.

When did the French minister arrive, and how was he received?

What did he endeavor to do?

Why was he recalled?

1794.

Why was a war apprehended between England and America at this time?

Nov. 19.

Who was sent to England to negotiate a treaty?

1795.

June.

What were the provisions of this treaty?

1797

With  
what  
other  
powers  
were  
treaties  
entered  
into?

Treaties were also made with the western Indians, with Algiers, and with Spain. By the latter, the Mississippi was made the western boundary, but a right to its navigation, and the use of New Orleans, as a place of deposit, secured to the United States.

When  
was Ten-  
nessee  
admitted  
into the  
Union?

Why did  
Wash-  
ington  
wish to  
retire to  
private  
life at the  
close of  
his term  
of office?

19. In June, 1796, Tennessee was admitted into the Union. As the period for a new election of president of the United States drew near, Washington signified to the nation his determination of retiring into private life. He longed for that repose in the seclusion of Mount Vernon, far from the cares of public life, to which, for so many years, he had been a stranger.

What is  
said of  
his fare-  
well ad-  
dress?

20. His farewell address, on his retiring from the presidential chair, breathed the warmest affection for his country. He besought them to frown indignantly on any attempt at the separation of the Union, to discard local attachments and sectional animosities. The candidates for the office of president were John Adams and Thomas Jefferson. The result was the choice of Mr. Adams as president, and Mr. Jefferson as vice president. Mr. Adams was inaugurated on the 4th of March, 1797. Washington retired to Mount Vernon, there to spend in rest and quiet the remainder of his life; but that life which had been devoted to his country was drawing near its close. Only two years of repose were allowed him, when he was taken away to that eternal rest prepared for the good.

Who  
were the  
candi-  
dates for  
presi-  
dent, and  
who was  
elected?

How  
long did  
Wash-  
ington  
live after  
retiring  
from  
office?

How did  
he con-  
tract his  
disease?

21. Riding out one day, on horseback, to visit his farm, he was overtaken by a storm, which chilled him through. A cold followed, which, settling in

his throat, hurried him rapidly to the grave. The efforts of his physicians to arrest the disease were powerless, and it was soon evident to all, that his hours were drawing to a close. His breathing became laborious, yet he bore all with Christian resignation. "*I die hard,*" said he, "*but I am not afraid to die.*" I believed, from the first, that I could not survive it. My breath cannot last long." Some hours before his death, after repeated efforts to be understood, he succeeded in expressing a desire that he might be permitted to die without interruption.

1799

Describe  
its pro-  
gress.What is  
said of  
his last  
hours?

22. He sunk gradually away, and on the night of the 14th of December, 1799, two days after his attack, he ceased to breathe. Not in the delirium of fight, upon the battle field, did his soul take its flight, but calmly departed amid the lamentations of a heart-broken people.

What is  
said of  
the man-  
ner of his  
death?

23. Solemn ceremonies attended the funeral, and thousands followed the slow procession, but the mourners were not all there—they were scattered on every hill and along every valley of the land. Minute guns were fired, as his body was borne to the place of burial, and his old war-horse, saddled and bridled, walked riderless beside the coffin. That noble steed he could mount no more, and to that cold cheek, the loud-pealing cannon could never again send the blood, as of yore. His work was done, his fierce battles over, and, crowned with the noblest laurels ever worn by created brow, the more than kingly sleeper was laid in his last resting-place. The land was hung in crape, and one convulsive sob shook the heart of the nation.

What  
was the  
effect it  
produced  
on the  
nation?

**1799** No people ever mourned a leader so, and no leader was ever worthy such sorrow. Even the young republic of France, then wading in blood, put on crape, and imposing ceremonies were decreed in his honor by the young Napoleon.

What did France do on hearing the intelligence?

What are the concluding remarks?

24. I would speak of his many noble acts, but his whole life was noble. Criticism was baffled, slander struck dumb, and even emulation rebuked in his presence. I would speak of his boyhood—but he was one of those great minds, that never had a boyhood. Morally and intellectually, he was a man from his youth up. Can it be that Washington is dead? No!

“The woods are peopled with his fame;  
His memory wraps the dusky mountain,  
His spirit sparkles o’er the fountain;  
The meanest rill, the mightiest river,  
Roll mingling with his name *for ever!*”

## CHAPTER II.

### ADAMS' ADMINISTRATION.

FROM MARCH 4TH, 1797, TO MARCH 4TH, 1801.

When and where was Adams born?

1. John Adams was born at Quincy, in Massachusetts, on the 19th of October, 1735. He was the son of John Adams, and the fourth in descent from Henry Adams, who fled from persecution in England. In 1755, he graduated at Harvard College, and four years afterward commenced the practice of law in Braintree. In 1764, he married the daugh-

What is said of his early studies, and his family?

ter of Rev. Wm. Smith, of Weymouth, by whom 1797  
 he had four children, only one of whom, the Hon.  
 John Quincy Adams, is now living. He early  
 manifested a strong interest in the welfare of the  
 colonies.

2. He was a delegate to the first general Congress, and was re-elected to the second. On the 6th of May, 1776, he introduced a resolution into Congress, which was in fact a declaration of independence. Near the close of the war he was appointed minister to England, and succeeded in negotiating a peace. He then returned to his country, and was elected for two successive terms to the office of vice president, when he left that chair to fill the presidential.

3. Shortly after the commencement of Mr. Adams' administration, the French Directory, displeased with the strict neutrality which this country had observed during its war with England, and also on account of the treaty of peace, which had been recently entered into between England and the United States, adopted resolutions highly injurious to the American commerce, and refused to receive Mr. Pinckney, the American minister, until the United States complied with their demands.

4. On the receipt of this intelligence, the President issued his proclamation to convene Congress on the 15th of June. In his speech on that occasion, he stated the unprovoked insult of the French government, yet still manifested a desire for peace. Three envoys were accordingly sent to France, but the French Directory refused to receive them, and ordered two of them to leave the country.

Give the leading events in his life till his election as president.

What disturbance arose with France about this time?

What proclamation did the president make?

What steps were taken to bring about a peace?

How did they succeed?

1797

How was  
our flag  
regarded  
by  
France?

1798.

What did  
Congress  
at length  
resolve  
to do?

5. During these transactions, open war continued to be made by the cruisers of France on American commerce, the flag of the United States being considered a sufficient justification for the capture of any vessel over which it waved. Congress at length, after these repeated insults and injuries, determined to place the country in a state of defense. General Washington was appointed commander-in-chief of the land forces, the capture of French vessels was authorized, and all treaties with France declared void.

1799.

6. The French government witnessing these preparations for war, signified to the President their willingness to accommodate difficulties on reasonable terms. Three envoys were accordingly appointed, who proceeded to Paris; but on their arrival there, they found the government in the hands of Bonaparte. With him they commenced negotiations, which terminated in a treaty of peace, Sept. 30th, 1800.

When  
did  
Wash-  
ington  
die?

What  
resolu-  
tion did  
Congress  
adopt?

7. On the 14th of December, Gen. Washington breathed his last at Mount Vernon, in Virginia. On the arrival of the news of his death at Philadelphia, Congress immediately adjourned. On the following day it was resolved, "that the President be requested to write a letter of condolence to Mrs. Washington; that a monument be erected by the United States, at the city of Washington, and that it be recommended to the citizens of the United States to wear crape on the left arm for thirty days." These resolutions passed unanimously, and the whole nation appeared in mourning. The funeral procession at the city of Washington was grand

and solemn, and the eloquent oration delivered by **1800**  
Gen. Henry Lee, was listened to with the deepest  
interest.

8. In the summer of 1800, the seat of government **1800.**  
was removed to the city of Washington, and in the **What**  
same year the western portion of Georgia was **occurred**  
erected into a district government, and called the **in 1800?**  
Mississippi Territory.

9. On the return of the period for the presidential **Who**  
election, the nation was divided into two great po- **were the**  
litical parties, the republican and the federal. The **candi-**  
federalists supported Mr. Adams and Gen. Pinck- **dates for**  
ney; the republicans Mr. Jefferson and Col. Burr. **president**  
After a warmly contested election, the republican **at the**  
candidates obtained a majority; but, as Mr. Jeffer- **next**  
son and Col. Burr received the same number of **election?**  
votes, the choice of president devolved on the  
House of Representatives. After thirty-five trials,  
during which the nation felt the most intense solici- **Who was**  
tude, Mr. Jefferson was chosen. Col. Burr, by a **elected?**  
provision of the Constitution, became, of course,  
vice president.

10. Mr. Adams retired from the arena of public **What is**  
life to the quiet of his home in Quincy. He lived **said of**  
long enough to see his son raised to the high- **the**  
est office in the gift of a free people, and during **closing**  
his administration died. The 4th of July, 1826, **history**  
the day on which he breathed his last, completed **of Mr.**  
half a century since he had set his name to that **Adams?**  
Declaration, which was to bring peace to his coun-  
try or a halter to his own neck. Only two, besides  
himself, of that band of heroes then lived. Being re-  
quested, a few days before his death, to give a toast

**1801** for the 4th of July, he gave "Independence for ever."

Describe  
his  
death.

11. As the morning was ushered in by the ringing of bells and the pealing of cannon, he was asked if he knew what day it was. "Oh yes," said he, "it is the glorious fourth of July. God bless it, God bless you all." His last words were, "Jefferson survives;" and at about one o'clock his spirit took its flight. He was a man of strong powers of mind, and an ardent lover of liberty. In early life he devoted himself to the cause of his country, and his declining years were cheered with a view of that country's happiness and prosperity.

## CHAPTER III.

### JEFFERSON'S ADMINISTRATION.

FROM MARCH 4TH, 1801, TO MARCH 4TH, 1809.

What is  
said of  
his early  
sentiments?

1. Thomas Jefferson was born on the 2d day of April, 1743, at Shadwell, in Albemarle county, Virginia. He was educated at the college of William and Mary, in Williamsburgh. At the age of twenty-one he was admitted to the bar, and in the following year chosen a representative to the provincial legislature. From early youth his mind was imbued with liberal political sentiments. On one of his seals he had engraved, "Resistance to tyrants is obedience to God."

2. On the 21st of June, 1775, Mr. Jefferson took



his seat in the general Congress, then in session at Philadelphia, and immediately became one of its most distinguished members. In the following summer, the various expressions of public sentiment showed, that the time had arrived for a final and entire separation from Great Britain. Mr. Adams and Mr. Jefferson were appointed to draft a declaration to that effect. The Declaration of Independence, at the urgent solicitation of Mr. Adams, was prepared by Mr. Jefferson, and so faultless was it found, when it came from his hands, that, with one or two alterations, it was adopted on the 4th of July, 1776.

What is said of Jefferson in the general Congress, 1775.

Who were appointed to draft a declaration of independence?

Whose declaration was adopted?

3. In June, 1779, he was elected governor of Virginia, and re-elected the next year. In 1783, he was again elected delegate to Congress from Virginia, and, in the following year, appointed, in connection with Mr. Adams and Dr. Franklin, minister plenipotentiary, for the purpose of negotiating treaties. Returning to the United States in 1782, he was appointed secretary of state by General Washington. At the next presidential election, he was elected vice president, and on the succeeding one, president of the United States.

What public offices did Mr. Jefferson fill?

What change was made in the principal offices of government at the commencement of this administration?

4. At the commencement of Mr. Jefferson's administration, the principal offices of government were transferred to the republican party, and many unpopular acts, passed during the previous administration, repealed.

5. In 1802, the State of Ohio was admitted into the Union. Slavery was entirely excluded from this extensive region. In the same year Spain ceded Louisiana to France, and the Spanish intend-

When was Ohio admitted in the Union?

What is here said of Louisiana?

**1802** ant announced to the United States that they could no longer deposit their merchandise, &c., in the port of New Orleans. Great was the excitement throughout the western States on this violation of a solemn engagement. They apprehended a destruction of their commerce, and advised a resort to arms. But a more pacific course was adopted, and in 1803 the whole territory of Louisiana was purchased of France for \$15,000,000.

1804.  
What  
sad event  
occurred  
in 1804?

Who  
were  
elected  
president  
and vice  
president?

6. In 1804 Gen. Alexander Hamilton was killed in a duel, fought with Aaron Burr, Vice President of the United States. His death caused a deep sensation among both his personal and political friends. In the fall of this year Jefferson was re-elected president, and George Clinton, of New York, was chosen vice president.

What is  
said of  
Tripoli?

7. Since 1801, a war had existed between the United States and Tripoli, one of the Barbary powers. These powers were nations of professed pirates, respecting no flag, capturing vessels of every nation, excepting those which paid to them an annual tribute. This tribute had long been paid by the United States, with many other nations, but, at length, the American republic determined to resist, and declared war against Tripoli.

Oct. 31.

Who  
were  
sent  
against  
the Tri-  
politans?

With  
what  
success?

8. In 1803, a squadron, under Commodore Preble, was sent to the Mediterranean to bring the corsairs to submission. Capt. Bainbridge, in the Philadelphia, joined Com. Preble; but, in chasing a cruiser into the harbor of Tripoli, grounded his vessel, and he and his crew were taken prisoners. The officers were treated as prisoners of war, but the crew chained and compelled to labor as slaves.

9. The Tripolitans, soon after, got the Philadelphia afloat, and warped her into the outer harbor. In this situation, Lieut. (afterward Commodore) Decatur conceived the daring plan of setting her on fire. Choosing twenty men, and a pilot, who understood the Tripolitan language, he approached the Philadelphia under the cover of evening, and, at the first onset, swept the deck of every Tripolitan, set the ship on fire, and, under a heavy cannonade from the surrounding vessels and batteries, escaped out of the harbor without the loss of a single man.

1804

1804.

Feb. 3.

What daring feat was performed by Lieut. Decatur?

10. In consequence of the burning of the Philadelphia, the sufferings of the Americans in Tripoli were greatly increased. To compel the Bashaw to release them, the government authorized Capt. William Eaton to unite with Hamet, an expelled bashaw, to assist him to regain his former station.

How was this received by the Tripolitans?

Who was sent from the United States on this matter?

1805.

11. With a small force, consisting of seamen from the American squadron, the followers of Hamet, and some Egyptian troops, Gen. Eaton and Hamet, with incredible toil and suffering, passed the desert of Barca, and took possession of Derne, the capital of a large province belonging to Tripoli. The success of Eaton struck the reigning bashaw with terror. Trembling for his fate, he offered terms of peace, which were accepted by Mr. Lear, the authorized agent of the United States.

What was done by Gen. Eaton and others?

What effect was produced by his success?

12. For a time, Col. Burr, notwithstanding his brilliant talents, had sunk into merited obscurity; but his ever-scheming mind was constantly in action, and, in 1806, he was detected in a conspiracy, the design of which was to form, in the valley of

In what conspiracy was Col. Burr detected?

1806.

**1806** the Mississippi, a separate government, of which he should be the ruler, and New Orleans the capital; or, to invade the rich Spanish provinces of Mexico, and found an empire there. In 1807, he was arrested and brought to trial on the charge of treason; but for want of sufficient evidence was acquitted.

What was the state of Europe at this time?

13. Europe at this time was convulsed with war. The nations, which had combined against the French republic, now trembled before the victorious troops of Bonaparte. France was a nation of soldiers, and on land, the flight of her eagle was ever toward victory. But on the sea, the fleets of England rode in triumph.

May 16.

How did England attempt to injure France?

14. England, anxious to injure as much as possible France, her enemy and rival, declared several ports under her control to be in a state of blockade. American vessels attempting to enter those ports were captured and condemned. France in retaliation, declared the British islands in a state of blockade, and authorized the capture of neutral vessels attempting to trade with those islands. Both

Nov. 21.

How did France retaliate?

What is said of these decrees?

of these decrees by which the commerce of the United States suffered severely, were contrary to the laws of nations, and highly insulting to neutral powers.

What right had England for a long time claimed?

15. England, to man her numerous fleet, had been compelled to resort to impressment. For a long time, she had claimed the authority of searching American vessels for British seamen, and in this way, frequently carried off American citizens, and compelled them to perform the degrading duties of the English navy.

16. In June, the frigate Chesapeake, while near the coast of the United States, was fired on by an English ship; and three of her men killed and eighteen wounded. Being unprepared for action, she struck her colors, and was then boarded and four of her men carried off on the pretence, that they were British seamen. It was afterwards proved, that three of them were American citizens.

1807

Describe the attack on the Chesapeake.

17. This insult to the nation was followed by a proclamation of the President, prohibiting British ships of war from entering the harbors of the United States. He also summoned Congress to meet, and decide what measures should be adopted. Instructions were given to the minister in London to demand satisfaction for the insult.

What proclamation was issued by the President?

18. In November, England issued a decree prohibiting all neutrals from trading with France or her allies, except on the degrading conditions of paying a tax to her. This was followed in a few weeks by a decree from Bonaparte, which declared that any neutral vessel, which should submit to be visited by a British ship, or pay the tribute on entering any of her ports, should be confiscated. Thus almost every American ship sailing the ocean was liable to be captured.

What decree was issued by England?

What did Bonaparte then do?

19. Congress, to retaliate on France and England, decreed an embargo; but this being ruinous to our commerce, was repealed in 1809; but commercial intercourse between France and England interdicted. Thus was our nation standing on the verge of war, when Jefferson's administration closed. At the next election, James Madison was chosen president, and George Clinton, vice president.

Dec. 22.

How did Congress retaliate upon France and England?

Who was chosen president?

1807

What is  
said of  
Mr. Jef-  
ferson's  
last days?

20. Mr. Jefferson on the 3d of March, 1809, at the age of sixty-five closed his political career, and retired to the quiet of his home at Monticello. Here he lived until the time of his death, enjoying the love and respect of his country. At the age of eighty-three years, on the 4th of July, 1826, he expired without a murmur or a groan.

What  
singular  
coinci-  
dence  
took  
place?

It is a singular fact, that Adams and Jefferson, two men, who had stood by their country in its darkest hours, and side by side had placed their names upon the Declaration of Independence, should both have died upon that day.

What is  
said of  
Mr. Jef-  
ferson?

21. Mr. Jefferson was gentlemanly in his appearance and intercourse with others. Possessed of kind feelings and extensive information, he was a Goliath in debate, and the interesting and amusing companion in the social circle.

## CHAPTER IV.

### MADISON'S ADMINISTRATION,

FROM MARCH 4TH, 1809, TO MARCH 4TH, 1817.

1. James Madison was born on the 5th of March, 1751, at the dwelling of his grandfather, in Port Royal, Virginia. In 1771, he completed his collegiate education at Princeton College, New Jersey; but continued a course of miscellaneous reading for a number of years afterward. After having filled several important offices in his own State, in 1779

he was elected to the Congress of the revolution. 1810  
 From this time to his election to the presidency, we find him in Congress and in the different conventions for drafting and amending the constitutions, where he had ample room for the display of his talents.

2. Shortly after the commencement of Mr. Madison's administration, a treaty was concluded with the English minister, which engaged, on the part of Great Britain, that the orders in council, so far as they affected the United States, should be withdrawn. Acting on this arrangement, he immediately issued his proclamation renewing commercial intercourse with England; but when the British government disavowed the acts of her minister, the act of non-intercourse with England was revived.

3. In 1810 France repealed her decrees, and on the 2d of November the President issued a proclamation, allowing unrestrained intercourse with that nation. Great Britain, determined to persist in her hostile plans, had stationed men of war before the principal harbors in the United States, to impress seamen from our merchant vessels, and insult our national flag.

What occurred with France in 1810?

What did Great Britain do?

4. In one instance, however, their insolence was deservedly punished. Com. Rogers, sailing in the frigate President, met in the evening, near the coast of Virginia, the British sloop of war Little Belt, and hailed her. A shot was the only reply. The fire was instantly returned by the Commodore, and continued until the enemy's guns were silenced.

1811.

May 16.

How was their insolence in one instance punished?

**1811**

Thirty-two of the English were killed, and the brig much shattered.

What was transpiring on the western frontiers?

5. While these events were indicating a war with England, others of no less interest were transpiring on our western frontiers. Tecumseh, a celebrated chieftain of great eloquence, and Ol-li-wa-chi-ca, his twin brother, generally called the Prophet, were stirring up the different Indian tribes against the whites. Tecumseh, by his eloquence, and the Prophet, by his cunning, at length obtained complete ascendancy over the minds of the Indians, and united them together in a firm compact against the United States.

What of Tecumseh and his brother?

Who was sent against the Indians?

6. Gov. Harrison, of the Indian territory, was directed to march against them with a small force, to reduce them to submission. On the 6th of November, he encamped at Tippecanoe, where he met messengers from Tecumseh, who agreed that hostilities should be deferred until the following day. Harrison, however, fearing the treachery of the Indians, drew up his men in battle array, and ordered them to repose on their arms. The result proved that this precaution saved the troops from complete destruction; for, just before the break of day, the savages, with their fearful war-whoop, rushed upon them. An obstinate and bloody fight ensued, which ended in the complete rout of the Indians, with great slaughter on both sides.

What occurred on his arrival at Tippecanoe?

What precaution did Harrison take?

Describe the Indian attack.

What provisions did Congress now make?

7. Such was the state of our affairs, at this time, with Great Britain, that provisions were made to increase the army to thirty-five thousand men, and to enlarge the navy. The President was authorized to borrow eleven millions of dollars, and the



duties on imported goods were doubled. On the 19th of July, 1812, war was formally declared against Great Britain. 1812

## CHAPTER V.

### CAMPAIGN OF 1812.

1. America was again to enter into a contest with that nation whose haughty power she had once humbled on the ocean-wave and on land, and with strong hand had torn her liberties from its iron grasp. The situation of the country, at the commencement of the two wars, was entirely different. In 1775, the Americans were a warlike people, but their military ardor had cooled, and they had become enervated by a peace of forty years. But little difficulty, however, was experienced in rousing the people to action. Henry Dearborn, one of the surviving officers of the revolution, was appointed commander-in-chief of the American army.

What is said of America at the commencement of this war?

Who was appointed commander-in-chief?

2. The plan of the campaign was to invade Canada from Detroit and Michigan, and the armies from these places were to be joined on the way, by the force stationed at Plattsburgh, and all to proceed to Montreal. The army destined for Detroit was placed under the command of Gen. Hull, the governor of Michigan territory.

What was the plan of this campaign?

3. On the 12th of July, with 2,000 regulars and volunteers, Gen. Hull crossed the river at Detroit, and encamped at Sandwich, with the object of

What was done by Gen. Hull?

**1812** marching on the British post at Malden, and from thence proceeding to Montreal. On the same day, he addressed a proclamation to the Canadians, assuring them, in a lofty tone, that his force was sufficient to break down all opposition, and offered to them the blessings of civil and religious liberty. But Hull was more fond of words than of action, and instead of pressing on, and striking a powerful blow, which would have insured him success, he wasted nearly a month, in ruinous delay.

What proclamation was issued?

What is said of Hull?

What information was brought to Hull?

What movement did Hull make?

4. In the mean time, Malden had been reinforced, and, at this critical moment, information was received, that Mackinaw, an American post above Detroit, had surrendered to the British and Indians, who were rushing down the river in numbers sufficient to crush the American forces. Gen. Hull, panic-struck, in spite of the entreaties of his officers, and the indignation of his troops, hastened back to Detroit.

Who pursued him?

What summons did Brock send to Hull?

5. Gen. Brock, the commander at Malden, pursued him, with a large force, composed of militia and Indians, and stationed himself opposite Detroit. On the 15th of August, he sent a summons to Hull to surrender, threatening him, that if he did not, he would let loose the Indians upon Detroit. On the following morning Brock crossed to Spring Wells, and moved toward Detroit.

What shameful event occurred at Detroit?

6. While the American troops, drawn up in order of battle, in numbers superior to the combined force of the British and Indians, were anxiously waiting to commence the fight, they were suddenly ordered within the fort, and a white flag hung from the walls, in token of submission. This shameful

surrender, in which an important post and a vast amount of ammunition passed into the hands of the English, excited the rage and mortification not only of the officers and troops, but of the whole nation. Hull was afterward tried before a court martial, convicted of cowardice, and sentenced to death. On account of his age, he was pardoned by the President, but his name was stricken from the rolls of the army.

1812

To whom was this surrender displeasing?

What was the result of Hull's trial?

7. On the 13th of October, Gen. Van Rensselaer, at the head of a part of the forces stationed at Lewiston, composed principally of New-York militia, crossed the river and made an attack upon Queens-town. During the battle, Van Rensselaer was wounded, and Gen. Brock killed. The English receiving a reinforcement of one thousand men, while a portion of the militia on the American shore refused to cross, the republican army was obliged to surrender. While our army was suffering from these many successive disasters, on the ocean, the American flag, after many a well-contested fight waved in triumph over the red flag of England.

What was done by Gen. Van Rensselaer on the 15th of October?

Who were the victors?

What is said of the success of the Americans on the ocean?

8. On the 19th of August, three days after the shameful surrender of Detroit, a series of splendid naval victories was commenced by Capt. Isaac Hull, of the United States frigate Constitution, who, after an obstinate fight, captured the British frigate Guerriere, commanded by Capt. Dacres. The loss of the Constitution was seven killed, and seven wounded; that of the Guerriere was fifteen killed and sixty-three wounded; among the latter was Capt. Dacres. On the 13th of August, the United

What is said of Hull's victory?

**1812** States frigate Essex, Capt. Porter, captured the British sloop of war Alert, after an action of only eight minutes.

Of Porter's victory?

Of Jones' victory over the Frolic?

9. On the 18th of October, the sloop of war, Wasp, Capt. Jones, after one of the most bloody conflicts recorded in naval history, captured the brig Frolic, of twenty-two guns. The contest lasted forty-three minutes. The loss on board the Frolic was thirty killed, and fifty wounded; on board the Wasp five were killed, and five slightly wounded. On the same day, they were both captured by a British frigate. This splendid victory was followed on the 25th of October, by one no less glorious and decisive. Com. Decatur, of the frigate United States, of forty-four guns, captured the Macedonian, mounting forty-nine guns, and manned with three hundred men. The action continued an hour and a half. The Macedonian lost thirty-six killed, and sixty-eight wounded; on board the United States, seven were killed and five wounded.

Of Decatur's victory over the Macedonian?

What victory did Bainbridge gain?

10. December 29th, the fortunate Constitution, then commanded by Com. Bainbridge, captured the Java, a British frigate, carrying forty-nine guns, and four hundred men. The action was fought off St. Salvador, and lasted three hours. The Java lost 60 killed, and 120 wounded; the Constitution 9 killed, and 25 wounded.

What is said of the American privateers?

11. Beside, this series of victories achieved by our navy, the American privateers had taken, during the year, 250 British vessels, and 3,000 prisoners. England had found an enemy which had ably contested its supremacy as mistress "of the sea," and in that contest come off victorious.

1813

## CHAPTER VI.

## CAMPAIGN OF 1813.

1. The operations of this campaign extended along the whole northern frontier of the United States. The army of the West was stationed at the head of Lake Erie, and commanded by Gen. Harrison; that of the centre under Gen. Dearborn, between the lakes Ontario and Erie; and that of the North under Gen. Hampton, on the shores of Lake Champlain. Colonels Proctor and Vincent commanded the British forces in Upper Canada, and Gen. Sheafie those in the Lower Provinces.

What is said of the operations of this campaign?

Where was the army of the west stationed?

Of the centre and north?

2. The head-quarters of Gen. Harrison, at the commencement of the winter, were at Franklinton, in Ohio. His plan was to concentrate a considerable force at the Rapids, whence he designed to make an attack upon Detroit, which was still in possession of the British. Gen. Winchester, with 800 men, was detached to proceed in advance of the main army. On the 10th of January, he arrived at the Rapids, when he received intelligence that a body of British and Indians was about to concentrate at Frenchtown, on the river Raisin, a number of miles in advance, at the urgent solicitation of the inhabitants, dispatched Cols. Lewis and Allen, with a force of between six and seven hundred men to their assistance. On their arrival, they attacked the enemy, and defeated them, and were joined the next day by Gen. Winchester.

What was the plan of Harrison?

Who did he dispatch in advance?

What intelligence did he receive at the Rapids, and what did he do?

What occurred on their arrival?

1813

What occurred on the morning of the 22d?

What request did Winchester send to Madison?

What did Madison say?

What did Proctor say?

What was the reply of Madison?

On what condition was the surrender made?

Were these conditions regarded?

What is said of Proctor's promotion?

What occurred at Fort Meigs?

3. On the morning of the 22d, he was surprised by the forces of the British and Indians under Col. Proctor. Gen. Winchester and some of his troops were taken prisoners, and conveyed to the English camp, when, being terrified with threats of an Indian massacre, he sent to Madison, requesting him to surrender.

4. Proctor accompanied the flag and made the demand, but Madison replied that he would not surrender unless the safety of his men were guaranteed. Proctor demanded, "Do you mean to dictate to me?" "No," was the reply, "I intend to dictate for myself; and we prefer selling our lives as dearly as possible, rather than be massacred in cold blood." The surrender was made on condition that officers should retain their side-arms, private property be respected, and the prisoners be protected by a guard.

5. These stipulations Proctor disregarded, and handed the prisoners over to the Indians who butchered them in cold blood. Some of their bodies were thrown into the flames, and others, shockingly mangled, left exposed in the streets. These awful deeds were continued a number of days. Proctor, the prime mover in this scene of butchery, which would have done honor to the fiends, instead of being hung by order of his government, received the rank of major-general in the army.

6. Gen. Harrison, on receiving the news of this melancholy defeat, was on his way to Frenchtown, but fearing an attack from Proctor, he halted at the rapids of the Maumee, and erected Fort Meigs. Here he was besieged by Proctor, with a force of

more than 2,000 British and Indians. But Gen. 1813  
 Clay coming to his assistance, with 1,200 Kentuck-  
 ians, Proctor was defeated, and obliged to raise the  
 siege. Col. Dudley and his party, however, fell  
 into an ambuscade, and were slaughtered by the  
 Indians under Tecumseh. The Indians had been  
 deceived by Tecumseh and his brother, the Prophet,  
 and after this defeat, deserted their allies. The  
 fort was left under the command of Gen. Clay.

What  
was the  
fate of  
Col. Dud-  
ley and  
his par-  
ty?

7. Proctor, shortly after, reappeared before the  
 fort, with 4,000 men, but finding it strongly garri-  
 soned, he drew off his troops, and proceeded against  
 Fort Stephenson, on the Sandusky river. Major  
 Crogan, a youth of twenty-one, defended the fort  
 with 150. Proctor was defeated, with the loss of  
 150 killed and wounded. About the middle of April,  
 Gen. Pike, by order of General Dearborn, embarked  
 at Sackett's Harbor with 1,700, and were conveyed  
 across the lake on board a flotilla, commanded by  
 Com. Chauncey, to the attack of York, the capital  
 of Upper Canada.

Why did  
Proctor  
with-  
draw his  
troops  
from the  
fort?

Whither  
did he  
proceed?

What oc-  
curred at  
Fort Ste-  
phenson?

What  
move-  
ment  
was  
made by  
Gen.  
Pike?

8. On the 27th of April, he landed, and having  
 formed his men, pressed on toward the enemy's  
 fortification, driving back a superior force. He had  
 already carried the first battery by assault, and was  
 pressing on toward the main works, when an ex-  
 plosion of the enemy's magazine took place, which  
 killed more than 100 Americans, among whom was  
 the lamented Pike. On the fall of their leader, the  
 troops halted for a moment, but soon pressed on,  
 and carried the place by storm. As the shout of  
 victory arose on the air, and was wafted to the dy-  
 ing Pike, a smile of triumph played around his lips,

What is  
said of  
the at-  
tack?

What in-  
telli-  
gence  
was  
brought  
to the  
dying  
Pike?

**1813** and as the flag which had waved over the fort, was carried to him, and placed under his head, he expired.

What  
move-  
ment  
was  
made by  
both ar-  
mies?

9. The troops now returned to Sackett's Harbor, from whence they proceeded to Fort George, at the head of the lake, which they took, after a warm engagement. The enemy proceeded to the heights, near Burlington Bay, where they were joined by detachments from Chippewa and Fort Erie.

June 6.

10. Generals Winder and Chandler were dispatched in pursuit. They encamped on the 5th of June in the vicinity of the enemy. Here they were attacked by the English, in the middle of the night, with great fury. Having succeeded in taking prisoners Generals Chandler and Winder, with a large number of the troops, they made a precipitate retreat.

How  
large a  
force was  
stationed  
at Sack-  
ett's Har-  
bor?

11. On the 29th of May, 1,000 British troops landed from the squadron, and proceeded to attack Sackett's Harbor. The force in this place amounted to about 1,000 men, and was commanded by Gen. Brown, of the New York militia. As the enemy approached the breastworks, the militia, seized with a sudden panic, broke their ranks and fled. Col. Mills, in attempting to rally them, received a mortal wound. The regulars slowly retired, and, taking possession of the different houses, poured from their doors and windows so deadly a fire upon the enemy that they paused. At this moment, Gen. Brown, who had succeeded in rallying the militia, marched rapidly down toward the landing. The English commander, believing it was his intention to cut off his retreat, embarked his troops so hastily as to leave the wounded upon the field.

What oc-  
curred  
here?



12. While these events were transpiring on our northern and north-western frontiers, a terrible warfare was being carried on upon the ocean. There, as well as on land, England, by her cold-blooded cruelty, stamped her character with an eternal blot of infamy. A squadron from the English navy, stationed in Delaware Bay, captured and burned every merchant vessel which came within its reach, and bombarded the village of Lewiston.

1813

In the mean time what was transpiring on the ocean?

13. Another squadron, commanded by Admiral Cockburn, was stationed in Chesapeake Bay. The troops made frequent excursions into the country, slaughtering the cattle, and insulting the inhabitants. Frenchtown, Havre de Grace, Fredericktown, and Georgetown, were sacked and burned. A strict blockade was kept up at New York. The American frigates United States and Macedonian escaped from port, but were chased into New London Harbor, where they were blockaded for a number of months.

What other events took place?

14. In the mean time many severe and bloody conflicts had been fought upon the ocean. On the 4th of February, the Hornet, commanded by Capt. Lawrence, met the British brig Peacock, of about equal force. The conflict lasted fifteen minutes, when the Peacock struck her colors, and displayed a flag of distress. On his return to the United States, Capt. Lawrence, for his bravery and success, was promoted to the command of the frigate Chesapeake, then lying at Boston.

What is said of the battle between the Hornet and Peacock?

15. On being informed that the British frigate Shannon had been cruising for a number of weeks off the harbor, inviting an attack, stimulated by

What information did Capt. Lawrence receive on his return?

1813

Describe  
the bat-  
tle be-  
tween  
the  
Chesa-  
peake  
and  
Shan-  
non.

former success, he determined to meet it. With a crew enlisted for the occasion, he sailed out of the harbor. At half past five on the same evening, they met, and engaged with great fury.

Describe  
Capt.  
Law-  
rence's  
last mo-  
ments.

16. By the first broadside, the sailing-master of the Chesapeake was killed, and Capt. Lawrence and three lieutenants severely wounded. The second and third broadsides so cut up her rigging, that her quarter fell on the Shannon's anchor. The enemy now sprung on the deck in great numbers. Captain Lawrence, in the act of summoning the boarders, received his mortal wound. When carried below, he was asked if the colors should be struck. He replied, "No, they shall wave while I live." With the most intense eagerness, he listened to the combat, which was carried on upon the deck of his ship, and hoped for victory. When he knew that the American flag had been lowered, and that he was conquered, reason fled its throne. Whenever able to speak, he would exclaim in the most beseeching tones, "Don't give up the ship." He only survived his defeat about four days.

How did  
the na-  
tion re-  
ceive the  
news of  
his  
death?

What  
was the  
loss on  
both  
sides?

How was  
this vic-  
tory  
viewed  
by the  
English?

17. Lawrence, by his bravery, his previous victory, and magnanimous conduct, had become the idol of the nation, and his death was lamented with sorrow and with tears. The Shannon lost, during the engagement, 24 killed, and 56 wounded; the Chesapeake 48 killed, and nearly 100 wounded. The honors which were heaped on the commander of the Shannon for his victory, by the British government, showed the pride with which they viewed a victory over a frigate, in a navy which had so often humbled their power.

18. The next encounter at sea was between the American brig Argus, of 18 guns, and the British brig Pelican, of 20 guns, in which the latter was victorious. On the 5th of September following, the British brig Boxer surrendered to the Enterprise, commanded by Lieut. Burrows. The fact that both ships were of equal force, was a strong fact in favor of the superiority of American seamen. Both of the commanders were killed, and interred beside each other at Portland.

1813

What was the next encounter at sea?

What encounter on the 5th of Sept.?

What fact is noticed in these battles?

19. While the navy was winning glorious laurels on the ocean, through the exertions of Com. Perry, a squadron had been fitted out on Lake Erie. It consisted of nine vessels, carrying fifty-four guns. The English squadron, which had been built and equipped, under direction of Commodore Barclay, consisted of six ships, carrying sixty-three guns.

What is said of the squadron fitted out on Lake Erie?

20. On the 10th of September, Com. Perry, forming the line of battle, hoisted his fighting flag, on which were inscribed the dying words of the gallant Lawrence, "Don't give up the ship." At 12, the enemy's flag-ship, Queen Charlotte, opened a heavy fire on the Lawrence, the flag-ship of Perry. The wind was so light that none of the other ships could come to the assistance of the Lawrence, and for two and a half hours she sustained the fire of the Detroit, Queen Charlotte, and Hunter.

When did the contest begin?

Describe the commencement of it.

21. Perry was as cool as if on ordinary duty, working with his own hands at the guns. But by this time, the brig had become unmanageable, and the crew, with the exception of four or five, lay around the bloody deck, either dead or dying.

What is said of Perry?

**1813**

Describe his leaving the ship.

While thus surrounded, with death and destruction pouring in upon him, Perry, taking his fighting flag under his arm, and waving his sword, left his now disabled ship, and proceeded in an open boat to the Niagara. The combat now raged with redoubled fury. Broadside after broadside was poured into the English ships, with unerring aim. Soon one of the enemy's vessels surrendered; and still Perry followed up his victory, until his flag waved in triumph over all. At 4 o'clock, the victorious and fortunate Perry sent to General Harrison, at Fort Meigs, this modest and laconic epistle, "We have met the enemy, and they are ours."

Describe the close of the contest.

What epistle did Perry send to Harrison?

What is said of this victory?

22. The news of this brilliant victory was received with great joy by the nation. It had been gained over a superior force, and opened a passage to the recovery of all that had been lost by the surrender of Hull. Not only Perry, but all under his command, gained laurels of which they might well be proud.

Where did Gen. Harrison proceed?

What did he find on his arrival, and what did he do?

23. Gen. Harrison, who had been joined by Gov. Selby, of Kentucky, with 4,000 men, as soon as he had received intelligence of the victory, hastened to the lake, and embarked for Malden; but, to his surprise, he found that fortress and the public storehouses burned. The enemy were pursued by Gen. Harrison, who, on the 29th, took possession of Detroit, and then pressed on after the retreating foe.

Where did he come up with the enemy?

Describe the contest.

24. On the 5th of October, he came up with them, about 80 miles from Detroit, at a Moravian village, on the river Thames. His force being greatly superior, victory was speedily gained. The mounted men charged impetuously through the

enemy's ranks, then formed, and charged in their rear. The British threw down their arms and fled. The Indians behaved better, and fought with the fiercest desperation. Tecumseh pressed eagerly into the midst of the contest, urging on his men, and throwing his tomahawk with the greatest fury. Suddenly the voice of command was silenced, for the haughty chief had fallen. The Indians now fled, leaving 33 dead on the field. Nearly 600, being almost the whole of Proctor's forces, were taken prisoners.

1813

What is said of the death of Tecumseh?

What was the result of the battle?

25. Leaving Gen. Cass in command of Detroit, Harrison, with a part of his forces, proceeded, according to instructions, to Buffalo, to join the American army, on the Niagara frontier. But there having been a sufficient number of general officers assigned to that army he returned to his home.

What is said of the future movements of Harrison?

26. The fall of Tecumseh was deeply felt by the Indian tribes. Possessed of a powerful mind, and the soul of a hero, had his lot been cast in a different state of society, he would have shone, not only as a warrior, but one of the most distinguished orators and statesmen. The result of the operations of the north-west, and victory on Lake Erie, prepared the way to attempt a more effectual invasion of Canada.

What is said of Tecumseh?

What did these operations prepare the way for?

27. Gen. Dearborn having been compelled to withdraw from active service, on account of sickness, the command of the army of the centre, consisting of 7,000 men, had been given to General Wilkinson. It was his plan to descend the St. Lawrence, and attack Montreal. Owing to the difficulty of concentrating his troops, it was in the

Why did Wilkinson command the army of the centre?

What was his plan?

**1813** early part of November, before he commenced operations. He then proceeded to St. Regis, when, finding the reinforcements which he expected from General Hampton, who commanded the troops at Plattsburgh, had failed him, he abandoned the project of attacking Montreal, and encamped for the winter at French Mills. Gen. Hampton soon after resigned his commission in the army, and the command of the post at Plattsburgh was given to Gen. Izard.

Describe his operations.

Who took command of Plattsburgh?

What is said of the Creeks and Seminoles?

Their manner of warfare?

Describe the slaughter at Fort Minims.

**28. CREEK WAR.** The Creek and Seminole Indians, looking upon the whites as the robbers of their nation, and feeling toward them the most bitter hatred, made use of every means in their power to torment and annoy them. Without declaring war, they ravaged the country, causing the inhabitants to flee to their forts for safety. About 300 men, women, and children had fled to Fort Minims for protection. About noon, on the 30th of August, the place was surrounded by 600 Indians, who, with their axes, cut their way into the fort, burned the houses, and butchered men, women, and children. Only 17 escaped to carry the horrid tidings to their homes.

Who was dispatched against them, and what did they do?

**29.** The whites, indignant at these cruelties, resolved on vengeance. Gen. Jackson, with 2,500 men, and Gen. Floyd, with 1,000, proceeded against them, and laid waste their country; burned many of their villages, and defeated them in bloody battles at Talladega, Autassee, and at Emucfau. Yet the Creeks, still unsubdued, and confident of victory, made a final stand, with 1,000 warriors, at the bend of the Tallapoosa. Three thousand men,

commanded by Gen. Jackson, marched to attack them. The conflict was long and bloody. Six hundred warriors soon lay dead on the field, and the remainder, believing that the Great Spirit had indeed forsaken them, fled.

1813

Describe the final battle of the Creeks.

30. The principal chiefs, fearing an extinction of the nation, entered into a treaty of peace with Gen. Jackson. One of them, in asking for peace, said, "I have done the white people all the harm I could, but now even hope is ended. Once I could animate my warriors, but I cannot animate the dead. They can no longer hear my voice; their bones are at Tallushatches, Talladega, and Tohopeka. While there was a hope of success, I never supplicated peace, but my people are gone, and I now ask for my nation and myself." In spite of their atrocities, we cannot help admiring some traits in their character, and dropping a tear over the graves of their fallen dead, and their now almost buried nation.

Why did the chiefs now enter into a treaty of peace?

What did one of the chiefs say?

31. In the winter of 1813-14 Congress held an extra session, when the President was authorized to borrow twenty-five millions of dollars, and issue treasury notes to the amount of five millions. A communication was received from the British government, declining the mediation of Russia, and proposing a negotiation for peace at London or Göttingen. The proposition was accepted by the American government, and Henry Clay and Jonathan Russell appointed commissioners. The convention was held at Ghent.

What were the transactions of the next Congress?

1814

## CHAPTER VII.

## CAMPAIGN OF 1814.

What is said of the commencement of this campaign, and the condition of Europe at this time?

1. For three months the armies of both nations remained idle. In the mean time, the troubler of Europe, Napoleon, the emperor of France, had been checked in his victorious career, and banished to the island of Elba. Europe was once more restored to peace; and England, with no other hostile foe in the world, was enabled to direct against the United States the whole of her immense force.

How many English soldiers embarked for Canada?

What movement was made by Gen. Brown?

2. Fourteen thousand soldiers, who had fought under the Duke of Wellington, embarked for Canada, and a strong naval force sailed along the American coast, and blockaded many of our ports. Early in the spring, Gen. Brown marched from Sackett's Harbor toward Niagara. On the 3d of July Gens. Scott and Ripley, with three thousand men, crossed the river, and with but slight opposition took possession of Fort Erie. On the next day Gen. Brown, with the main body of the army, marched to Chippeway, where the British troops were intrenched, commanded by Gen. Riall. On the morning of the 5th, both armies met in open field. After an obstinate and bloody contest, the enemy withdrew to their intrenchments with the loss of five hundred men.

What is said of the battle of Chippeway?

3. Gen. Riall, after his retreat, retired to Burlington Heights. Here he was reinforced by Gen. Drummond, who, assuming the command, led back



the army toward the American camp. About sunset on the 25th the battle of Lundy's Lane commenced, and continued until midnight.

1814

What battle commenced on the evening of the 25th?

4. Two armies meeting within a few miles of the cataract of Niagara, the roar of which was silenced by the thunder of cannon, with no light save the flashes from instruments of death, and glimpses of the moon, presented a scene of great sublimity. General Scott, leading on the advance, first attacked the enemy, and maintained the fight for more than an hour, against a force seven times his number. The main army, under General Brown, coming up, the contest was renewed with great fury. A British battery, stationed on a commanding eminence, sorely annoyed the Americans during the first part of the engagement. It must be silenced, or the victory is lost.

What scene was presented on the Niagara battle ground?

Describe the attack.

5. "Can you storm that battery?" said General Ripley to Col. Miller. "I'll try, sir," was the laconic answer; and placing himself at the head of the 21st regiment, marched, in the face of a terrific fire, to the mouth of the blazing cannon, sprung over the guns, as the match was being applied, drove the artillery men back at the point of the bayonet, and seized the pieces. The whole war does not furnish an instance of a more daring act of bravery than this.

What did Gen. Ripley demand of Col. Miller?

What did Col. Miller do?

6. This eminence was the key to the British position, and every exertion was made by the English commander to regain it. Thrice he charged with the bayonet, but was repulsed and at last driven from the hill, and the Americans left in quiet possession of the field. The thunder of battle was, at length,

What efforts were made to regain the eminence?

1814

What  
was the  
result of  
the bat-  
tle?

hushed, and no sound was borne on the midnight air, save the roar of the cataract and the groans of the dying, who strewed the field. On that bloody field lay, ghastly in death, 878 English soldiers, and 858 American.

Why did  
the com-  
mand de-  
volve on  
Gen.  
Ripley?

What  
was done  
by Gen.  
Drum-  
mond?

With  
what loss  
were the  
besiegers  
repulsed?

7. Gens. Brown and Scott having been wounded, the command devolved on Gen. Ripley, who, after having remained for a few hours on the hill, and collected the wounded, retired to Fort Erie, and there intrenched himself. Gen. Drummond, with 5,000 men, on the 4th of August, besieged him. On the night, between the 14th and 15th, the besiegers made an assault on the fort, but were repulsed, with the loss of more than nine hundred men.

What  
was done  
on the  
17th of  
Sept.?

What  
troops  
came  
with  
Gen.  
Izard?

8. On the 17th of September, Gen. Brown, who had taken command of the garrison, ordered a sortie from the fort, and destroyed the advance works of the enemy. Shortly after, Gen. Izard arrived from Plattsburgh with a reinforcement of 5,000 men, when the enemy retired to their intrenchments, behind Chippeway. General Izard followed, but finding it impossible to dislodge them, evacuated Canada, and placed his troops in winter-quarters at Buffalo, Black Rock, and Batavia.

What did  
Sir  
George  
Prevost  
do in  
Sept.

Where is  
Platts-  
burgh?

9. Early in September, Sir George Prevost, availing himself of the absence of General Izard, with a large portion of the garrison, advanced toward Plattsburgh, with 14,000 chosen troops, most of whom had served with Wellington, in the peninsular campaign. On the 6th, the enemy arrived at Plattsburgh, which is situated near Lake Champlain, on the banks of a small river. On their ap-

proach, the American troops formed a breast-work of the planks, which they tore from the bridge.

1814

How was the enemy received?

10. On the 11th of September, the British squadron was seen bearing down upon the American squadron, which was anchored off Plattsburgh, and commanded by Com. McDonough. The former carried 95 guns, and was manned with 1,050 men; the latter carried 86 guns, and was manned with 820 men.

How large were the squadrons?

11. The battle commenced at 9 o'clock, and continued for a number of hours. Seldom had the ocean witnessed a more bloody or terrible contest than that which took place on the still waters of Lake Champlain. Two hostile fleets, borne on the bosom of that placid lake, awakening the deep echoes of those giant hills by the roar of their artillery, as they poured their broadsides into each other, in quick succession, and the immense army of Sir George Prevost, drawn up in order of battle, waiting for the striking of the American flag, to open their fire on land, presented a sublime scene.

Describe the action.

What is said of the scene presented?

12. Thousands on the shore watched the contest on the lake with intense interest. The firing, at length, ceased; a light breeze swept away the sulphurous cloud which overhung the combatants; when lo, the stars wave in triumph, and the red cross of England lies on the bloody deck. Now, Sir George Prevost, look at your humbled flag, and then for your contest with the cowardly Yankees. Boldly he led on his forces to the river's edge, but they marched to death. The American fire thinned his ranks, and the dead bodies of his troops floated down the river, which was crimsoned with blood.

Which flag waves in triumph?

How did Prevost lead on the attack?

1814

How  
long did  
the con-  
test con-  
tinue?

What  
was the  
Ameri-  
can loss?

What  
the Brit-  
ish loss?

What  
victories  
were  
gained  
on the  
ocean?

What ef-  
forts  
were  
made to  
fortify  
the At-  
lantic  
coast?

With  
what in-  
struc-  
tions did  
a British  
fleet en-  
ter the  
Chesa-  
peake?

What  
was done  
by Gen.  
Ross?

13. The contest continued until night-fall, when the enemy fled. On the lake, the American loss was 110, the British 194. On land the American loss was 119, that of the British 2,500. With these victories the campaign closed on the northern frontier.

14. On the ocean many battles were fought, in which the Americans were victorious, or only yielded to superior forces. The Essex, commanded by Capt. Porter, after a bloody combat, struck to a British frigate and sloop of war, whose united force was vastly superior. The American sloop Wasp, commanded by Capt. Blakely, captured the Reindeer, and afterward sunk the Avon. The sloop Peacock captured the Epervier, of equal force.

15. On the Atlantic coast, the citizens anticipating an augmentation of the enemy's force, took every precaution to fortify and garrison their forts. For the protection of Washington, 1,000 regular troops were raised, and placed under General Win-der. A British fleet, under Admiral Cochrane, shortly afterward entered the Chesapeake with a large land force, commanded by Gen. Ross, who was instructed by his government to destroy and lay waste such towns on the coast as might be as-sailable.

16. On the 19th of August, Gen. Ross landed at Benedict with 5,000 men, and advanced through the country to Washington. A stand was made at Bladensburg, but the militia fled, although a body of seamen and marines, under Com. Barney, main-tained their ground until they were overpowered by numbers. The enemy then proceeded to Washing-

ton, which had been deserted by the militia, burned the Capitol, President's house, and all the public buildings, and then retired to their shipping. 1814  
Aug. 24.

17. This shameful and cowardly act, by which a vast amount of treasure, works of art and science, were destroyed, excited the indignation of the whole people, and made the war popular with almost all parties. The loss of the enemy, during the incursion, was eight hundred men.

18. In the mean time, a portion of the fleet ascended the Potomac to Alexandria. The inhabitants, to purchase their safety, delivered up their shipping, all the merchandise in the city, and the naval and ordnance stores, public and private. Where did the fleet proceed, and what did the inhabitants do?

19. General Ross, elated with his success at Washington, determined to attack Baltimore. With this intent, he sailed up the Chesapeake, landed with five thousand men at North Point, and commenced his march toward the city. General Stricker advanced with two thousand men to retard his progress. A skirmish ensued, in which Gen. Ross was killed. The Americans gave way and retired to the heights, where Gen. Smith was stationed with the main body of the army. Col. Brooke, on whom the command devolved on the death of Gen. Ross, finding it impossible to draw Gen. Smith from his intrenchment, removed his army in the night, and re-embarked at North Point. The fleet shortly after left the Chesapeake, and proceeded south. What did Ross determine to do?  
Sept. 12.  
Where did he land his men?  
What is said of the march, and the skirmish which ensued?  
How did this expedition terminate?

20. The coast of New England suffered much from the attacks of the English navy. The ports of New York, New London, and Boston were blockaded, and Stonington was bombarded by Commo- What is said of the ravages of the English navy on the N. England coast?

**1811** dore Hardy. In several attempts which he made to land, he was repulsed by the militia, and finally compelled to draw off his forces.

To what post was Jackson appointed?

21. In the spring of 1814, Andrew Jackson was appointed major-general in the service of the United States, and directed to protect the coast near the

What did he learn on his arrival at Mobile?

mouths of the Mississippi. On his arrival at Mobile, he learned that three British ships of war had entered the harbor of Pensacola, and landed three hundred soldiers with a large amount of arms and ammunition, to be distributed among the Spanish and Indians.

What steps did Jackson take?

22. General Jackson, after having remonstrated in vain with the governor of Pensacola, for affording protection to the enemies of the United States, marched against the place, forcibly took possession of the city, and compelled the English to evacuate Florida. Having given the haughty foe a foretaste of that which was to come, he returned to his head-quarters at Mobile. Here he received information, that a powerful expedition was on its way to attack New Orleans, and without delay, marched with his troops to that city, where he arrived on the 1st of December.

What information did he receive on his return, and what did he do?

In what condition did he find the city on his arrival?

23. On his arrival he found the city in a state of confusion and alarm. The militia were composed of men of all nations, imperfectly organized. No fortifications existed on the various routes by which the place could be approached. Gen. Jackson, undismayed by the difficulties which surrounded him, proceeded to fortify the place. To direct the energies of the motley mass under his direction, he took the daring responsibility of pro-

What measures did he take?

claiming martial law. This measure, although a violation of the constitution, was thought to be justified by necessity. 1814

24. The enemy passed into Lake Borgne, and mastered a flotilla which guarded the passes into Lake Pontchartrain. On the 22d of December, about 2,400 of the enemy reached the Mississippi nine miles below New Orleans. On the following night they were attacked by Gen. Jackson, but they stood their ground. Jackson now withdrew his troops to his intrenchments, four miles below the city. On the 28th of December and 1st of January, vigorous but unsuccessful attacks were made on his fortifications by the enemy.

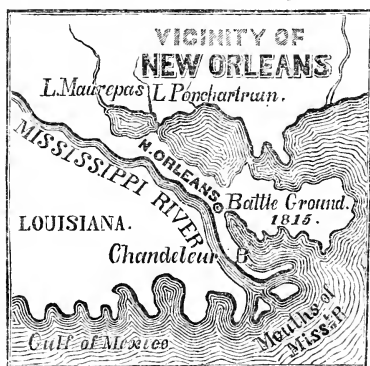
Describe the movement of the enemy.

The attack of Jackson and the result.

25. On the 8th of January, Gen. Packenham brought up his forces, amounting to 12,000 men. While approaching, fearless and undaunted, in solid columns over an even plain, showers of grape-shot thinned their ranks. When they came within musket shot, a vivid stream of fire burst from the American lines, and poured on them an unceas-

How large was Packenham's force?

Jackson's fortifications were of a novel character. Bags of cotton, which no balls could penetrate, were made use of for breast-works. His front was a straight line of one thousand yards, defended by upward of 3,000 infantry and artillerymen. The ditch contained five feet of water, and his front was rendered slippery and muddy by frequent rains. Eight distinct batteries were judiciously disposed, mounting in all twelve guns. On the opposite side of the river was a strong battery of fifteen guns.



**1814** ing tide of death. Hundreds fell at every discharge, and whole columns were swept away. Closing their broken ranks, they pressed on over the dead bodies of their comrades, but to fall before that iron tempest, which poured in incessant volleys upon them.

How were they received by the Americans?

What officers were mortally wounded?

What was the result of the battle?

What joyful intelligence arrived about this time?

What naval victories were gained?

Why was war declared against Algiers?

26. General Pakenham was killed, Gen. Gibbs wounded mortally, and General Keene severely. Without officers to direct them, the troops at first halted, and then fled to their camp. On the night of the 18th, with great secrecy, they embarked on board their shipping. Two thousand of the enemy lay on the field of battle, while the Americans lost but seven killed, and six wounded. This was one of the most brilliant victories in the war.

27. In the midst of the rejoicings of the nation, news arrived of a treaty of peace, which had been concluded at Ghent, on the 24th of December. The motives for the impressment of seamen had ceased with the war in Europe, and the treaty provided merely for the restoration of peace, and the boundaries remaining as they were.

28. After the declaration of peace, two additional victories were gained upon the ocean, which imparted a brighter lustre to the American flag. In February, the Constitution, Capt. Stewart, captured the Cyane and Levant, and in March, the sloop Hornet captured the brig Penguin, stronger in guns and men than herself. All parties gladly welcomed the return of peace, and a general rejoicing prevailed throughout the country.

29. **WAR WITH ALGIERS.** The Algerines having violated the treaty of 1795, and committed nu-



merous depredations upon the American commerce, the United States declared war against them. An American squadron, under Com. Decatur, sailed into the Mediterranean, captured an Algerine brig and forty-four gun frigate, and, at length, appeared before Algiers. The dey, intimidated, signed a treaty of peace advantageous to the United States, on the 30th of June, 1815.

1815

Who was sent against them?

With what success?

30. During the session of Congress in 1815-16, a second "Bank of the United States" was chartered, with a capital of \$35,000,000. In December, 1816, Indiana was received into the Union as an independent State. At the presidential election held in the autumn of this year, James Monroe, of Virginia, was chosen president, and Daniel D. Tompkins, of New York, vice president.

When was the second United States Bank chartered?

What State was admitted to the Union?

Who was elected the next president?

31. At the age of 66 years, Madison retired from public life, to his estate in Virginia. Here he remained a greater portion of his time, until his death. On the 28th of June, 1836, at the age of 85, he died—as serene, philosophical, and calm, in the last moments of his existence, as he had been in all the trying occasions of his life. Of that band of benefactors of the human race, the founders of the Constitution, James Madison was the last who went to his reward.

What is said of Mr. Madison's death?

1817

## CHAPTER VIII.

## MONROE'S ADMINISTRATION,

FROM MARCH 4TH, 1817, TO MARCH 4TH, 1825.

When  
was Mr.  
Monroe  
born?

1. James Monroe was born in Westmoreland county, Virginia, on the 28th of April, 1758. In 1776, he graduated at William and Mary College. On leaving college, he commenced the study of law, but very soon relinquished it for the army, in which he received an appointment as lieutenant. He was wounded at Trenton, and for his bravery gradually rose to the rank of major. Failing in raising a regiment in Virginia, Major Monroe left the army, and entered on the study of law in the office of Mr. Jefferson.

When  
and  
where  
did Mr.  
Monroe  
graduate?What  
rank did  
he hold  
in the  
army?What of-  
fices did  
he fill un-  
til 1803?

2. In 1780, at the age of twenty-three, he was elected to the Virginia legislature, and in the following year to the Continental Congress. From 1790 to 1794, he was a member of the Senate of the United States, and was taken from that body to be minister plenipotentiary from this country to the court of France. On his return, he was appointed governor of Virginia. In 1803, he was again appointed minister to France, and was afterward sent both to England and Spain.

What  
other of-  
fices did  
he fill?

3. In 1810, he was again elected governor of Virginia, the duties of which office he continued to perform until he was appointed secretary of state under Mr. Madison. In 1817, when the war had ended, and the nation had once more settled down

into a state of quiet and peace, he was elected president. 1817

4. The country at this time, perhaps, had brighter prospects before it than for a long time previous. Peace reigned within its borders, and continued prosperity soon relieved it from embarrassments, which were the necessary consequences of the war. On the 11th of December, Mississippi became an independent State, and was admitted into the Union.

What was the prospect of the country at this time?

When was Mississippi admitted to the Union?

5. In 1818, Illinois adopted a State Constitution, and became a member of the Union. During this year, a war was carried on between the Seminole Indians and the United States. Many outrages were perpetrated by the Indians upon the border inhabitants, and Gen. Gaines was instructed to proceed against them, and reduce them to submission; but his force being insufficient, Gen. Jackson was ordered to take command, and raise from the surrounding States such forces as he might deem necessary. At the head of 1,000 Tennesseans, he marched into Florida, took possession of St. Marks, a feeble Spanish garrison, where he found Arbuthnot and Ambrester. These men were accused of exciting the Indians to hostilities, tried by a court-martial, and executed.

When was Illinois admitted to the Union?

What was carried on this year?

Who was sent against them, and with how large a force?

6. On learning that the governor of Pensacola favored the Indians, Jackson marched against, and took possession of that place, meeting with but slight resistance, the governor having fled to Baracas, a fort six miles distant. To this place Jackson followed, and having commenced a furious cannonade upon the place, the governor was glad to sur-

Why did Jackson meet with little resistance?

What took place at Baracas?

**1818** render. Agreeable to the terms of capitulation, the governor and officers were sent to Havana. Jackson now announced that the war had closed, and returned to Nashville.

What was the opinion of many regarding Jackson's conduct?

1819.

What treaty was concluded this year?

What other new States were admitted?

7. The conduct of Jackson in the war was censured by very many, but approved of by the President. A resolution of censure was rejected in Congress by a large majority. On the 22d of February, 1819, a treaty was concluded at Washington, by which East and West Florida were ceded by Spain to the United States. On the 22d of March, the government of Arkansas Territory was organized. On the 14th of December, Alabama was admitted into the Union, and the year following the province of Maine, which had been connected with Massachusetts, was separated from it, and became an independent State.

What question arose on the application of Missouri for admittance?

8. In 1821, Missouri applied for admission. The question arose, should she be admitted as a slave State? After a strong debate, it was decided that slavery should be tolerated in Missouri, but prohibited in all the territory of the United States north and west of Arkansas.

Who was sent against the pirates of the Gulf of Mexico?

What generous and distinguished person visited America this year?

9. Mr. Monroe's term of office having expired, he was re-elected president, and Mr. Tompkins vice president. The Gulf of Mexico having been for some time infested with a gang of pirates, Commodore Porter was sent out to chastise these miscreants, that regard no law and that feel no mercy. He succeeded in a short time in completely breaking up their organization.

10. During the summer of 1824, the Marquis de Lafayette paid a visit to the land whose cause he

had adopted in its darkest hours, and whose liberties he had assisted so much in establishing. His head was now frosted with the snows of seventy winters, and nearly fifty years had rolled away since he had battled side by side with Washington, in the sacred cause of liberty. He traveled through every State in the Union, and was every where received with the strongest demonstrations of love and affection.

1824

What is here said of him?

11. He had not only received no remuneration for his services during the war, but had expended nearly all his private fortune. Congress now presented him \$200,000 and a township of land. The frigate Brandywine was prepared to convey him to his country, and he was attended to the place of embarkation by the President and most of the public officers in Washington.

12. At the next presidential election the most intense political excitement prevailed throughout the country. The candidates were Messrs. Adams, Crawford, Jackson, and Clay. Neither of these candidates having received a majority, the House of Representatives decided in favor of Mr. Adams. Mr. Calhoun of South Carolina was elected vice president.

What is said of the next presidential election?

13. After having been for fifty years in public life, Mr. Monroe found the quiet of his home in Virginia peculiarly acceptable. Here he remained for a number of years, when he came to reside with his daughter in New York. On the 4th of July, 1831, just five years after his illustrious predecessors, Adams and Jefferson, had quitted the scenes of their labors, he expired. He had passed the or-

What is said in conclusion of Mr. Monroe?

1825 dinary boundary of human life, being over seventy-three years old.

What is said of Mr. Monroe's mental attainments?

14. Mr. Monroe possessed many of those traits necessary to form an able diplomatist. In making up his mind on any subject, he was never dazzled by the brilliant colorings of his own imagination, nor led astray by any tormenting passion. Some may be greater, many as great, but ages may pass before one more fortunate will be found in the presidential chair of the Republic.

## CHAPTER IX.

### J. Q. ADAMS' ADMINISTRATION.

FROM MARCH 4TH, 1825, TO MARCH 4TH, 1829.

When and where was J. Q. Adams born?

1. John Quincy Adams was born at Quincy, in Massachusetts, in 1769. His father, John Adams, early identified himself with the liberties of his country; and from the time that the colonies first began to writhe beneath the oppression of England, until the close of his presidential career, was ever by their side, cheering them on by words of hope and encouragement. Nursed in such a school, and rocked by that patriot father in the cradle of liberty, high hopes were formed of his future success, nor were these hopes disappointed.

What is said of his father?

On what journeys did he go early in life?

2. In early life he accompanied his father on his mission to France, and subsequently to England, where he was sent to negotiate peace. At the age

of eighteen he accompanied Mr. Dana, the minister to Russia, as his private secretary. On his return, wishing to complete his education, he entered Harvard College at Cambridge, and graduated there in 1787. He then commenced the study of law in the office of Theophilus Parsons, chief-justice of the State, and in due time was admitted to the bar.

1825

When did he graduate?

3. In 1794 he was appointed resident minister to Netherlands, where he remained for a considerable length of time. Near the close of Washington's administration he was appointed minister to Portugal, but was afterward transferred to Berlin. In 1802 he was elected to the State Senate, and in 1806 to the Senate of the United States. Here he distinguished himself, not only as a sound diplomatist, but as a fluent and eloquent speaker.

What honorable offices did he hold, and what is said of him?

4. But his country demanded his services abroad, and in 1809 he was appointed minister to Russia. Here he enjoyed the confidence and affection of the Emperor Alexander, and established on a firm basis those friendly relations which have ever since been maintained with that nation. In 1817 he was appointed minister to the court of St. James, where he was received with the respect due not only to the office, but to his distinguished talents. On the election of Mr. Monroe to the presidency, he made choice of Mr. Adams as secretary of state, in which position he proved himself as able in council as he had been in the Senate. In 1825 he was elected President of the United States.

What is farther said of him?

5. During the administration of Mr. Adams, the country enjoyed continued peace and unexampled prosperity; manufactories increased, the arts and

What of the country during his administration?

1829 sciences flourished, and a general spirit of content and happiness prevailed throughout the country. The 50th anniversary of American independence, rendered memorable by the event which it celebrated, was made still more so in the annals of American history by the death of the two venerable ex-presidents, Adams and Jefferson. But few other events of historical interest occurred during this administration. The next presidential election was more closely contested than any preceding one. General Jackson was elected president, and John C. Calhoun vice president.

What occurred on the 50th anniversary of our independence?

1826.  
What is said of the next presidential election?

What is further said of Mr. Adams?

6. Mr. Adams, at the close of his term of office, retired to his farm; but anxious to serve his country, he shortly after was elected representative in Congress, which office he has retained since that time. Mr. Adams' history has been one of great interest. From early boyhood he has been in public life, and now with his head frosted with age, and trembling on the brink of the grave, he still devotes the energies of his yet unclouded mind to the service of his country. Long may he be spared to the councils of his nation—long enough to witness the passing away of party prejudice, and to enjoy the fruition of that fame which has been purchased by the devotion of a life to his country.



1829

## CHAPTER X.

## JACKSON'S ADMINISTRATION,

FROM MARCH 4TH, 1829, TO MARCH 4TH, 1837.

1. Andrew Jackson was born on the 15th of March, 1767, in Waxsaw, South Carolina, a settlement whither his family had emigrated from Ireland, two years previous. Shortly after his birth, his father died, leaving three sons to be provided for by their mother. She determined to educate Andrew for the clerical profession; but scarcely had he entered on the study of the ancient languages, when the revolutionary struggle commenced, and at the age of fourteen he abandoned school for the colonial camp. The body of troops to which he was attached, was surprised by a large number of the enemy, and compelled to surrender. Jackson and his brother were kept in strict confinement until they were exchanged, after the battle of Camden. His elder brother had previously perished in the service of the colony, and his younger brother shortly after died from a wound which he had received during his imprisonment.

When  
and  
where  
was  
Jackson  
born?

What is  
said of  
his early  
life?

What is  
said of  
his  
brothers?

2. In 1786 he commenced the practice of law, and removed to Nashville in 1788, where professional success immediately attended him. In 1796, he was elected to the lower house of Congress, and delegated to the national senate in the following year, but resigned near the close of the session,

What of-  
fices did  
he fill?

1829 alleging his distaste for the intrigues of politics. Within that period, he was chosen major-general of the Tennessee militia, and held the office until called to the same rank in the United States' service.

What offices did he fill in 1823 and 1829?

3. As mention has already been made of his military career, it would be useless to recapitulate here. In 1823 he was elected to the Senate of the United States, but resigned his seat in the second session. In 1829 he was elected to the presidency of the United States.

What was the condition of the U. States at this time?

4. The condition of the United States at this time was one of unexampled prosperity. The country was at peace with all nations; the national debt was in the course of rapid diminution, and the treasury had within its vaults more than five millions of dollars. Agriculture, commerce, and manufactures were in a highly flourishing state.

1832.

What is said of the bill for re-chartering the U. States Bank?

5. In 1832, a bill for re-chartering the United States' Bank passed both houses of Congress, but was returned by the President, with his objections; not being repassed by a majority of two-thirds, the bank ceased to be a national institution on the expiration of its charter, in 1836. During the spring of this year, hostilities were commenced by the Sac and Fox Indians, on the western frontiers of the United States, under the celebrated chief, Black Hawk. Generals Scott and Atkinson were sent against them, and after a harassing warfare, they defeated the Indians, drove them beyond the Mississippi, and took Black Hawk prisoner.

What hostilities broke out in this year?

6. The most intense excitement prevailed for a

time in South Carolina, respecting a tariff bill, imposing additional duties on foreign goods, which had passed Congress in the summer of 1832. The Carolinians declared and boldly maintained, not only in their own State, but through the person of their illustrious senator, John C. Calhoun, in the halls of Congress, that the act was unconstitutional, and that the duties should never be paid by South Carolina, and that if government persisted in the attempt to enforce the payment, they would withdraw from the United States; and establish an independent government.

7. This doctrine of declaring an act of Congress null and void, was little relished by the majority of the nation, and the proclamation issued by the President was generally popular with all parties. He declared that the laws must be executed, and that any opposition to their execution must be repelled, by force, if necessary.

8. South Carolina still retained her hostile feelings, and determined on resistance. It would be impossible to tell what the sad result of this controversy might have been, had not Mr. Clay, of Kentucky, introduced a compromise bill, which passed both houses of Congress, providing for the gradual reduction of duties until 1843, when they were to sink to the general level of 20 per cent. In 1833, Jackson was re-elected president, and Martin Van Buren was chosen vice president.

9. In 1833, the President removed from the Bank of the United States the government funds deposited there, and transferred them to certain State banks. This measure was strongly censured

1832

What is said of the tariff bill?

How was this doctrine liked by the nation?

What said the proclamation issued by the President?

What is said of the compromise bill?

Who was elected president in 1833?

What public act was done by Jackson in 1833?

**1833** by the opponents of the administration, who attributed the pecuniary distresses of 1836 and 1837 to the war of the President upon the United States Bank. The President declared, that the bank had become the scourge of the people, and that the distresses of the country were owing to its mismanagement.

Who opposed this act?

What did Jackson declare?

10. In 1830, Congress passed a law authorizing the President to remove the remaining Indian tribes, inhabiting our southern states, to a territory which should be appropriated to their use, beyond the Mississippi. With the Chickasaws and Choctaws treaties were made, by which they exchanged their lands, and quietly removed to the country fixed upon, west of the Arkansas. But the Cherokees were loth to leave their cultivated fields and pleasant homes, which they had surrounded with the luxuries of civilized life. Too many interesting associations clustered around those running brooks, those hills and vales, where they had played in childhood, and where slept the ashes of their fathers. The spirits of the silent dead seemed looking down upon them, and urging them not to desert their graves, and they boldly refused to go.

What law did Congress pass in 1830?

What treaties were formed?

Why were the Cherokees unwilling to leave their homes?

11. It was the policy of Georgia to make their position as unpleasant as possible. They accordingly extended over their territory the laws of their State, and, among other things, declared that no Indian, or descendant of an Indian, residing within the Creek or Cherokee nations of Indians, should be deemed a competent witness, or party to any suit, in any court where a white man was defendant. The Cherokees had been civilized, and possessed a

How did the Georgians treat the Indians?

Dec 20, 1829.

What is said of the civilization of the Cherokees?

national government, and written laws, and now they asked, what right have the people of Georgia to exercise jurisdiction over us? The Supreme Court of the United States had declared these acts to be unconstitutional; yet the decision was disregarded, and when they appealed to the President for protection, he stated that he had no power to interfere with the acts of a sovereign State.

1835

What did the Supreme Court declare?

What did Jackson state on this subject?

12. In 1835, a few of their chiefs signed a treaty for the sale of their lands, and a removal west of the Mississippi. Most of the Cherokees were opposed to the treaty, but finding resistance would be in vain, they removed without bloodshed. The Seminole Indians, however, refused to leave their country, declaring that the treaty executed in 1832, at Payne's landing, by which they agreed to remove, was unfair and treacherous. Gen. Wiley Thompson was sent to Florida, to prepare for the emigration; but Osceola, their most noted chief, said, "They wished to rest in the land of their fathers, and their children to sleep by their side," and strongly remonstrated against the proceedings of government. His proud bearing and haughty tones displeased Gen. Thompson, and he ordered the chieftain to be put in irons, and confined in prison. Osceola, in a day or two, affected penitence, signed the treaty to remove, and was released—but not to fulfil the treaty, for he had determined on a deep and cruel revenge.

What treaty was signed in 1835?

What is said of the Seminoles?

What of Osceola?

13. At this time Gen. Clinch was at Fort Drone Being in want of supplies, and in great danger from the Indians, who surrounded him, Major Dade was directed to march, with 117 men, from Fort

What was the situation of Gen. Clinch?

Of Major Dade?

**1835** Brook, at Tampa Bay, to his assistance. He had proceeded about eighty miles on his way, when on the morning of the 28th of December, he was surrounded by a band of Indians, and he, with all but four of his men, killed and horribly mangled.

What occurred at Fort King?

14. On the same day, Gen. Thompson, who was dining with a convivial party at Fort King, within sight of the garrison, was surprised by a discharge of musketry, which killed himself and five of the party. Osceola, at the head of the Indians, rushed in, and himself scalped the man who had dared place fetters on his free limbs, and then retreated, unmolested by the garrison. Shortly after, Gen. Clinch was attacked by the Indians, on the bank of the Withlacooche, and met considerable loss. The Seminoles now commenced ravaging the country, burning the houses, and murdering whole families. Gen. Scott was now invested with the chief command, but was soon after ordered to the country of the Creeks, and his place filled by Gen. Jessup.

Where was Gen. Clinch attacked?

What is said of the Seminoles?

Who succeeded Gen. Scott?

**1836.**  
Who attacked the Indians at Kissam river?

What is said of the Creek hostilities?

What took place in June, 1836?

15. In May, the Creeks commenced hostilities, setting fire to houses, and murdering families, destroying towns, burning steamboats, and ravaging the whole country. The governor of Georgia raised troops, took the field in person, and was joined by Gen. Scott on the 30th May. By their combined efforts, peace was restored early in the summer. On the 16th of June, 1836, Arkansas and Michigan were admitted into the Union, on equal footing with the original States. At the next presidential election, Martin Van Buren, of New York, was chosen president, and Richard M. Johnson, of Kentucky, vice president.

16. On the expiration of his term of office, Gen. Jackson retired to his farm in Nashville, where he resided until his death, which occurred June 8th, 1845, in the 78th year of his age. On the morning of the day on which he died, he swooned, and, for a time, was supposed to be dead ; but he soon after revived, and lived until evening. A short time before his death, he took an affectionate leave of his friends and domestics, retaining to the last his senses and intellect unclouded. He expired with the utmost calmness, expressing the highest confidence in a happy immortality through the Redeemer.

1836  
What is  
said of  
the clos-  
ing  
events of  
Jack-  
son's life?

17. Perhaps no statesman has ever had warmer friends or more bitter enemies. All admit, however, that he was an able general, and possessed strong determination of mind. Future generations, when the rancor of party feeling has subsided, will be enabled to form a more accurate estimate of his merits and demerits, than those who live when the waves of that sea of party strife on which he rode, are still dashing at their feet.

What  
are the  
closing  
remarks?

## CHAPTER XI.

### VAN BUREN'S ADMINISTRATION,

FROM MARCH 4TH, 1837, TO MARCH 4TH, 1841.

1. Martin Van Buren was born at Kinderhook, in New York, Dec. 5th, 1782. His parents were of Dutch descent, and in humble circumstances.

When  
and  
where  
was Van  
Buren  
born?

**1837**

What is  
stated  
respect-  
ing his  
educa-  
tion?

Martin received his education at the academy of his native village, which he attended until the age of fourteen, when he commenced the study of law in the office of Francis Sylvester, Esq., in Kinderhook. Here he remained until the last year of his professional study, which he spent in the office of William P. Van Ness, in the city of New York.

What is  
stated of  
his life  
while in  
Hudson?

2. In 1803 he commenced the practice of law in his native village, and was shortly after appointed surrogate of Columbia county. In 1809, on account of the increase of his business, he removed to the city of Hudson. He was elected State Senator in 1812, and in 1815 appointed Attorney-general of the State. Here he had ample opportunity to display the acuteness of his mind, and soon enjoyed the reputation of being one of the first lawyers in the State.

What  
other  
honor-  
able of-  
fices did  
he fill?

3. In 1816, on account of his professional business, he removed to the city of Albany. In 1821 he was elected to the Senate of the United States, where he distinguished himself as an eloquent speaker, and a skilful statesman. In 1828 he was elected Governor of New York, but resigned the office in the following year to fill the post of Secretary of State, to which he had been appointed by Jackson. In 1831 he was sent as Minister Plenipotentiary to England. In 1833 he was elected vice president; and in 1837, president of the United States.

What  
caused  
the spirit  
of specu-  
lation  
about  
this time,  
and what  
were the  
conse-  
quences

4. After the public moneys had been removed from the United States Bank to the State banks, the facilities for borrowing on credit were greatly



increased. The old roads of honest industry were abandoned, and fortunes were made in an hour by speculation. Cities were planned in the wilderness, on the rocks, and the sea-coast below high water mark; and building lots sold at immense prices. This unnatural state of things had its crisis in 1837. Many having contracted large debts were obliged to fail, and in failing drew others into the vortex with them, until a large portion of the heaviest establishments in the country were completely prostrated. The banks now stopped specie payment, and apprehension pervaded the whole mercantile community. 1837

5. During the months of March and April, the failures in the city of New York alone amounted to more than one hundred millions of dollars. Men who had been living in affluence, and supposed themselves worth an independent fortune, retired in comparative ease and comfort at night, and awoke bankrupt and without a home in the morning. The banks where the public moneys were deposited shared the common fate, and the question now arose, how was the government to meet its expenses, and what should be done with the public purse? What is said of the failures in New York?

6. To decide these and other questions, an extra session of Congress was convened. The President recommended a mode for keeping the public funds, called the "sub-treasury scheme," which was rejected by Congress. Treasury notes were ordered to be issued, and other measures taken to supply the wants of government. The pressure in the money market was gradually removed, and on the 13th of August the banks resumed specie payment; What mode did the President recommend for keeping the public funds? How did it succeed?

**1840** but it was a long time before the country came back to its former prosperous condition.

What is  
said of  
the Sem-  
inole  
war ?

7. The war with the Seminole Indians, in Florida, which was supposed to have been brought to an end, again broke out with renewed fury. The Indians, hid in their swamps and everglades, hunted down our troops and the inhabitants like wild beasts. In October, Osceola and several principal chiefs, with about seventy warriors, came to the American camp under a flag of truce, and were taken prisoners by order of Gen. Jessup. Osceola pined away, and shortly afterward died. The seizure of an enemy under a flag of truce, which was contrary not only to the usages of civilized, but of savage nations, was severely censured by many ; by others it was justified, from the fact that Osceola was treacherous, and that no treaties could bind him. The war continued, with varied success on the part of our troops, until 1840, when it was brought to a close.

What of  
Osceola ?

What is  
said of  
the seiz-  
ure of  
Osceola ?

What  
bill  
passed  
Congress  
in 1840 ?

8. The Sub-treasury bill, which was rejected by Congress in 1837, was again introduced in 1840, and passed both houses. The census of 1840 showed the population of the United States to be 17,068,666. Gen. William Henry Harrison, the hero of Tippecanoe and the Thames, was elected president, and John Tyler, of Virginia, vice president. Mr. Van Buren, on leaving the presidential chair, retired to his property at Kinderhook, where he now resides.

What  
was the  
census of  
1840 ?

What is  
farther  
said of  
Van Bu-  
ren ?

## CHAPTER XII.

### HARRISON'S ADMINISTRATION,

FROM MARCH 4TH, 1841, TO APRIL 4TH, 1841.

1. William Henry Harrison was born at Berkeley, on James river, twenty-five miles from Richmond, Virginia, in the year 1773. He was the youngest of three sons of Benjamin Harrison, a descendant of the celebrated leader of the same name in the wars of Cromwell. His father was chairman of the committee of the whole house, when the Declaration of Independence was adopted, and was one of the illustrious signers of that act.

What is said of the birth and parentage of Harrison?

2. At the age of seventeen, William Henry left Hampden Sydney College, and commenced the study of Medicine. The death of his distinguished parent, immediately after his arrival in Philadelphia, in 1791, to prosecute those studies, checked his professional aspirations; and the note of preparation, which was sounding through the country for a campaign against the Indians of the west, decided his destiny. In opposition to the wishes of his guardian, he determined to enter the army, and received an ensign's commission from General Washington. In the following year he was selected by General Wayne as one of his aids. After the treaty of Grenville, Harrison was left in command of Fort Washington, now Cincinnati.

What profession did he at first adopt, and why did he leave it?

What offices did he fill in the army?

3. Weary with a garrison life, he resigned his commission, and at the age of twenty-four was ap-

**1841** pointed Secretary of the North-western Territory. In 1799 he was elected the first delegate in Congress from that extensive region now comprising the States of Ohio, Indiana, Illinois, and the Territory of Michigan.

What offices did he fill after leaving the army?

What induced him again to enter the army?

What is farther said of him till his election as President?

4. In 1801 Harrison was appointed governor of Indiana Territory, a post of great responsibility. A never-slumbering watchfulness was the means he used in keeping down Indian invasions. During the year 1811, the intrigues of the British agents stirred up the passions of the Indians, and rendered hostilities unavoidable. The events of this campaign have already been recorded. The judgment displayed in its prosecution, and the battles of Tippecanoe and the Thames, have given Harrison a high rank among heroes. In 1817 he resigned his commission, and retired to his farm at North Bend, from which he was repeatedly called to represent the people in Congress.

What is said of his administration?

5. In 1824-5 he was elected to the Senate of the United States, and in 1828 appointed minister to Colombia. On his return to his country, he retired to the pursuit of agriculture at North Bend, where he remained until called by the voice of his country, in 1841, to the presidential chair. But his administration was of short duration, for in one month from the time when the shouts of thousands went up at his inauguration, he was lying cold in death in the presidential mansion.

Describe the cause of his sickness, its progress, and his death.

6. On Thursday, the 25th of March, he caught a slight cold from undue exposure, and on the day following was overtaken in a shower, which increased the symptoms. Continuing unwell on Satur-

day, he was prevailed on to send for a physician, 1841 who prescribed some medicine. On Sunday, his fever increased, accompanied with general symptoms of pneumonia. The disease now assumed an alarming character, and seemed, until his death, to bid defiance to the skill of his physicians.

7. On Saturday morning he felt somewhat better, and requested the 103d Psalm to be read; when it was concluded, in the presence of several of his family, he thanked the Lord for his goodness, and seemed overpowered with deep emotion. At 6 o'clock on the same day, the physicians pronounced him beyond their skill. He gradually sunk into a state of stupor, from which he partially revived about 9 o'clock. Seeing his cabinet and his nearest friends around his bed—even in that last hour of his earthly existence, the welfare of his country lay near his heart, and he faintly uttered, "I wish you to understand the true principles of government. I wish them carried out. I ask nothing more." His breathings now became more difficult, and about half an hour after midnight on Sunday morning, April 4th, without a struggle, his spirit passed away from earth.

8. He professed to be a Christian, and his friends who were acquainted with his life, and knew his respect and affection for the cause of religion, and his intention in a few days of uniting with the church, entertained no doubt of his sincerity. The nation felt, as they received the news of the death of their President, that God was chastising them for their sins; and as they bent beneath the rod, they learned the important lesson, that "God only

What is said of Harrison in conclusion?

1841 is great." Party spirit was forgotten, and the whole nation mourned together.

Repeat  
the  
verses on  
Harri-  
son's  
death.

"Death! Death in the White House! Ah, never before,  
Trode his skeleton foot on the President's floor!  
He is looked for in hovel, and dreaded in hall—  
The king in his closet keeps hatchment and pall—  
The youth in his birth-place, the old man at home,  
Make clean from the door-stone the path to the tomb;  
But the lord of this mansion was cradled not here—  
In a church-yard far off stands his beckoning bier!  
He is here as the wave-crest heaves flashing on high—  
As the arrow is stopped by its prize in the sky—  
The arrow to earth, and the foam to the shore—  
Death finds them, when swiftness and sparkles are o'er."

## CHAPTER XIII.

### TYLER'S ADMINISTRATION,

FROM APRIL 4TH, 1841, TO MARCH 4TH, 1845.

What is  
said of  
the birth  
and pa-  
rents of  
Tyler?

1. John Tyler was born in Charles city, Virginia, in 1789. His father, John Tyler, was a distinguished man, and from 1808 to 1811 held the high office of governor of Virginia. Tyler was educated at William and Mary College; on leaving which, he commenced the study of law in the office of his father. At the age of twenty-one, he was elected to the State legislature, and from 1816 to 1821 held a seat as representative in Congress. Here he distinguished himself not only as a working man, but as a bold and fluent debater. In 1825 he was elected governor of Virginia, and in 1827 to

What of  
his early  
life?

the United States Senate. In 1841 he was elected vice president of the United States, but on the death of the lamented Harrison, by the Constitution, the duties of the presidential office devolved on him.

2. Gen. Harrison had called an extra session of Congress, to consider matters which he believed to be of vital importance to the nation. During its session, the sub-treasury bill was repealed, a bankrupt law passed, and two bills chartering a bank of the United States were vetoed by the President. As this was one of the favorite measures of the whig party, the conduct of the executive caused him to be denounced by them in no measured terms. His entire cabinet were indignant at what they considered his treachery toward his party, and with but one exception, resigned. In 1842 a dispute with England, respecting the north-eastern boundary line, was negotiated between Mr. Webster and Lord Ashburton.

What were some of the acts passed at the extra session of Congress?

What bill was vetoed?

How was this conduct of Tyler regarded?

1842.

What occurred in 1842?

3. In this year, domestic difficulties commenced in Rhode Island. An attempt was made to set aside the ancient charter, which had hitherto been in force. One party adopted a constitution, and, unauthorized by the laws of the State, elected a legislature, and chose Thomas W. Dorr governor. The law and order party also met, and chose Samuel W. King governor. Both parties met in 1843 and organized their government. The legally organized party now attempted to put down what they considered a rebellion. The insurgents under Dorr appeared in arms, but were dispersed with but little resistance. The whole State was placed under martial law. Dorr fled, but shortly after return-

What is said of the difficulties which occurred in Rhode Island?

1843.

May 3, 4.

**1843** ing, was tried for treason, and sentenced to be imprisoned during life. In a short time, he was pardoned. In the mean time, a constitution for the State was adopted.

What is  
said of  
Texas?

4. Texas was formerly a province of Mexico, and settled principally by emigrants from the U. States. In 1834, her citizens becoming displeased with what they considered the unjust and tyrannical policy of the Mexican government, declared themselves independent. A long and bloody war followed, which finally ended in the defeat of the Mexicans, and the establishment of a republican form of government in Texas. It had long been the wish of the Texans to be admitted into the Union as a State, when, in 1845, the President submitted to Congress a treaty for the annexation of that country to the United States.

What  
treaty  
was sub-  
mitted to  
Congress  
in 1845?

What is  
said of  
the dis-  
cussion  
which it  
occa-  
sioned?

5. The discussion of this question awakened the most intense excitement, throughout the nation. The whig party strongly opposed it as a measure intended, to increase the limits of the slave territory, and to perpetuate in the country what they considered a foul blot on our national escutcheon. They contended, that we had territory enough without Texas, and independent of this, that we had no right to admit her into the Union. The democratic party contended, on the contrary, that we not only had the right, but were in duty bound, under the then existing state of affairs, to form with her a treaty of annexation. They insisted that Texas, as an independent and sovereign State, had full power to enter into any treaty with a foreign government. After a long and boisterous discussion in







Congress, the bill was defeated by a large majority. 1845

6. At the next presidential election, James K. Polk, of Tennessee, was elected president, and George M. Dallas, of Pennsylvania, vice president. Mr. Tyler, at the close of his term of office, retired to his estate in Virginia, where he now resides.

What was the fate of the treaty?

Who was elected the next president?

## CHAPTER XIV.

### POLK'S ADMINISTRATION.

FROM MARCH 4TH, 1845, TO MARCH 4TH, 1849.

1. James K. Polk was the eldest of ten children, and was born in Muhlenberg county, North Carolina, on the 2d of November, 1795. His ancestral name, which was Pollock, was gradually abbreviated to Polk. His father was an unpretending farmer, who, by industry, energy, and perseverance, had arisen from poverty to comparative wealth. In 1806 he removed to Tennessee. James being of delicate constitution, his father determined on educating him for commercial pursuits, and went so far as to place him in a counting-house. But this employment was exceedingly distasteful to him, and he pleaded so hard with his father that he would permit him to alter his course, that he at length consented.

What is said of the birth and parents of Polk?

What of his life to the time of his election to the presidency?

2. On leaving the counting-house, he entered upon a course of studies preparatory to college, and in 1818 graduated at the University of North Caro-

**1845**

lina, with the highest honors of the institution. In the following year, he commenced the study of law in the office of Senator Grundy, and in the latter part of 1820, was admitted to the bar. Here he met with great success, and soon became extensively known as an eloquent pleader, and a close and logical reasoner. In 1823 he was elected to the State Legislature, and in 1825 he took his seat as representative in Congress. In 1835 he was elected Speaker of the House of Representatives, and re-elected to the same post in the following year. In 1838 he was elected by a large majority, governor of Tennessee, and in 1844 president of the United States.

What important bill was passed during the session of Congress in 1845?

3. During the session of Congress in 1845, a bill passed both houses, instructing the president to enter into a treaty of annexation with Texas. The treaty was concluded the same year, and Texas admitted into the Union as an independent State.

What outrages had the Mexicans frequently committed on the Americans?

4. **WAR WITH MEXICO\***—CAUSES, &c.—Almost from the commencement of the Mexican republic, outrages on the persons and property of American

---

\* Mexico was discovered by Grizalvia, a Spanish navigator, in 1518. On the 21st of April, 1519, Hernando Cortez, sent out by the Governor of Cuba, landed his force of 617 men where now stands the city of Vera Cruz. Mexico was inhabited by numerous warlike nations, who understood many of the arts of civilized life. In 1521, with his small force, Cortez had conquered the whole country, and overturned the throne of Montezuma. From this time, Mexico was governed by viceroys from Spain, until 1822, when Iturbide was proclaimed emperor. From 1810 till 1820 insurrections against the home government prevailed throughout the country. In 1823 Iturbide was banished from the country; and in 1824 a constitution was formed similar to that of the United States.

citizens have been committed by Mexico, and redress, although frequently demanded, has been either refused, or the subject evaded. On the 5th of April, 1831, a treaty of amity and navigation was concluded between the republics, yet scarcely had two months passed away, before fresh outrages were perpetrated.

1845

What was concluded between the two countries in 1831?

5. In 1837, during the administration of Jackson, a messenger was dispatched to Mexico, to make a final demand for redress. This demand was made on the 20th of July. The Mexican government expressed a wish for the continuation of friendly feelings, and also promised that the difficulties should be settled. These solemn assurances were never fulfilled.

What demand was made by Jackson in 1837, and what was the reply of Mexico?

6. On the 11th of August, 1840, a joint commission was organized, the powers of which were to terminate in February, 1842. The claims that were allowed by this board, before the commission expired, amounted to two million, twenty-six thousand, one hundred and thirty-nine dollars, and sixty-eight cents. The amount of unsettled claims at that time was nine hundred and twenty-eight thousand, six hundred and twenty-seven dollars, and eight cents.

What is said of the commission of August, 1840?

7. On the 30th of January, 1843, a second convention was concluded between the two governments, which declared that the interest due on the awards made in favor of the claimants in the convention of 1840, should be paid to them on the 30th of April, 1843, and the principal, with the interest accruing thereon, in five years, in equal instalments every three months. Notwithstanding the payment

What is said of the second convention?

Have the stipulations been fulfilled?

**1845** of these sums was secured by treaty, yet the claimants have only received the interest due on the 30th of April, 1843, and three out of the twenty instalments. Mexico has thus shown a want of good faith, in the repeated violation of solemn treaties. These outrages were, without doubt, one of the reasons for war ; yet we are to look to another quarter for the principal cause.

What is said of the Mexican outrages?

What was the original boundary line between Texas and Mexico?

When was it claimed by Texas and how?

What did Mexico still claim?

What feelings had Mexico manifested toward Texas?

8. On the 29th of December, 1845, Texas was admitted into the Union. The original boundary line between Texas and Mexico was the Nueces, but on the 19th of December, 1836, a few months after the establishment of the Texan independence, her Congress passed an act in which they declared the Rio Grande, from its mouth to its source, to be its boundary. The Nueces was held to be the boundary line by the Mexicans, and the territory between the two rivers claimed by that government. Mexico had long manifested hostile feelings toward Texas, and had frequently threatened to send troops to reduce to submission what she considered a revolted province.

What was Taylor directed to do?

Where did he encamp, and how long did he remain?

What information had our government received, and what was Taylor directed to do?

9. On the admission of Texas into the Union, Gen. Taylor was directed to proceed with a small force to some position west of the Nueces, that he might be in readiness to repel any attempt at invasion by Mexico. In August, 1845, he encamped at Corpus Christi, on the west side of the Nueces, where he remained six months in perfect quiet, there being no attempts at invasion by the Mexicans. During this time our government had been informed, that it was the intention of Paredes to assemble a large army on the Rio Grande, for the invasion of Texas,

they therefore directed Taylor to advance, and occupy the east bank of the Rio Grande, opposite Matamoras. 1846.

10. Taylor commenced his march on the 8th of March, 1846. On the 20th he reached the Colorado, where he was met by Gen. Mejia with a small force, who informed him that if he crossed the river it would be considered a declaration of war, and would be immediately followed by actual hostilities. Taylor crossed the river without resistance, and marched to Point Isabel. The inhabitants protested against the occupation of any portion of their territory by the Americans, set fire to the public buildings, and abandoned the place. Taylor fixed on this point as a depôt for provisions; and having made preparations for the erection of Fort Polk, moved forward, and reached the Rio Grande opposite Matamoras on the 28th of March.

When did he commence his march?

Describe his march to the Rio Grande.

11. In the mean time, Mr. Slidell, an agent of the United States, was in Mexico, insisting on being received as a plenipotentiary, while Mexico would only recognize him as a commissioner. Mr. Slidell was finally compelled to withdraw from the country. General Taylor, on arriving before Matamoras, placed his cannon in a position so as to command the streets of the city, and shortly after erected Fort Brown.

What is said of Mr. Slidell?

What did Taylor do on arriving at the Rio Grande?

12. These measures, adopted by the president, by which our troops crossed the boundary claimed by Mexico, were considered by a large portion of the people of the United States as impolitic, if not unjust; and the occupation of a territory by our troops, which at least was a subject of dispute, was

What is said of the measures adopted by the President?

1846

What did  
Ampu-  
dia and  
Arista  
do?

deemed by many a belligerent act. Gen. Ampudia so considered it, and notified the American general to retire beyond the Nueces, within twenty-four hours. On the 24th of April, Gen. Arista superseded Ampudia in command, and communicated to Taylor, that he considered hostilities commenced.

What is  
said of  
Thornton?

13. On the 23d of April, Gen. Taylor received intimation that a large body of Mexicans had crossed the Rio Grande, and on the following day dispatched Capt. Thornton with a small force to intercept them; but in charging the Mexicans, he was captured, and his men either killed or taken prisoners. On the 29th, information reached Gen. Taylor that Point Isabel was surrounded by the enemy and in danger. Taylor immediately made preparations to go to its relief, and open a communication between the two posts. On the 1st of May, he departed with the main body of the army, leaving orders to defend the fort to the last, and if surrounded, to fire signal guns.

What or-  
ders did  
he leave?

What  
took  
place on  
the 3d?

14. On the 3d, the enemy, taking advantage of the absence of Taylor, opened their guns on the fort, and the holy quiet of that Sabbath day was broken by the thunder of cannon. From this time till Saturday, shells and shot were constantly flying over the heads of that devoted band, shut up within the intrenchments, with but four hundred rounds of ammunition. At the end of three days, Arista sent a summons to the fort to surrender, declaring that if it was not obeyed in one hour, he would put the garrison to the sword. A council of war was called, and the question put to the youngest

What  
sum-  
mons did  
Arista  
send to  
the fort,  
and what  
was the  
reply?



first. His short reply, "*Defend the fort to the death!*" was echoed from lip to lip, and in thirty minutes the guns of the enemy were raining balls on the intrenchments, and that brave garrison coolly prepared for the death-grapple with their foe. 1846

15. Previous to this, signal guns had been fired ; as the heavy reports broke in dull and distant echoes over Point Isabel, and Taylor stood and listened, he remembered the smallness of the garrison he had left behind and the number of the enemy, and on the 7th commenced his march, saying, "If I meet the enemy, I will fight them." On the 8th, he came in sight of the enemy at Palo Alto,\* drawn up in order of battle, stretching a mile and a half across the plain, along the edge of a chaparral ; a little in advance, on the left, were the lancers, a thousand strong, while throughout the rest of the line were masses of infantry and batteries, placed alternately.

16. Our army was immediately formed in order of battle. Gen. Twiggs commanded the right, composed of the 3d, 4th, and 5th infantry and Ringgold's artillery. Lieut. Churchill commanded the two 18 pounders in the centre, while Col. Belknap was placed over the left, composed of Duncan's artillery and 8th infantry. The battle commenced. Ringgold opened his battery on the right with terrible effect, the deadly precision of his guns sweeping down platoons at every discharge. On the left, Duncan poured in his destructive volleys in fierce and rapid succession, while in the centre the two 18 pounders shook the field with their

How did Taylor hear of this contest?

What did he say when he left Point Isabel?

May 8. Where did he come up with the enemy, and how were they situated?

How was our army arranged for battle?

What is said of Ringgold's battery?

Of Duncan's and of the centre?

\* Pronounced Pah-lo-álto.

1846 steady fire, as, slowly advancing, they sent death through the Mexican ranks.



GEN. ZACHARY TAYLOR.

17. The shot of the enemy told on our ranks severely ; but the soldiers, cool as veterans, kept their position without a murmur. Ringgold, while seated on his horse, received a shot, which passed through his horse, cutting in two the pistols in his holsters, and tearing away the flesh from both his legs, from his knees upward. As he fell,

What is  
said of  
our sol-  
diers ?

What is  
said of  
Ring-  
gold ?

some officers gathered around, but he waved them away, saying, "Leave me alone, you are needed forward." The sun went down on the field of blood; and as his departing rays struggled for a moment to pierce the cloud that curtained in the two armies, the firing ceased, and the battle of Palo Alto was over. Our little army encamped on the field amid their dead and dying companions. With 2,300 men, Taylor had beat 6,000, and killed and wounded nearly 400, with a loss of only 9 killed and 42 wounded.

1846

What is said of the closing of the battle, and the loss on either side?

18. The weary night wore away. Ringgold lay dying—Page, speechless and faint—and many of our brave men stretched on the field of their fame, wounded or dying, while hundreds of the enemy made the night hideous with their cries and groans. That was an anxious night for the brave Taylor. He was within a short distance of the fort, but far from reinforcements; while the enemy within reach of help from Matamoras, were resolved to dispute his entrance. In this position he called a council of war. Only a few were in favor of advancing, while the remainder advised to intrench where they were, or retreat to Point Isabel. When all had spoken, the brave veteran said, "I will be at Fort Brown before night, if I live."

What is said of the situation of Taylor, and what did he do?

What was the decision of the council?

19. There spoke out the spirit of the true hero, the same that on the heights of Bennington exclaimed, as the sword pointed to the enemy moving to battle, "*Those red coats, men, before night they are ours, or Mary Stark's a widow!*"—the same that uttered, in the very blaze of the hotly worked battery at Lundy's Lane, "*I'll try sir!*"—the same,

What spirit was manifested in Taylor's answer?

**1846** that, on the rending decks of the Chesapeake, faintly murmured, "*Don't give up the ship!*" It was a noble resolution to save the garrison, or leave his body at the foot of the walls, and right nobly was it carried out.

How was the position defended?

May 9.

What battle soon commenced?

Describe the battle

What is said of Ridgely's battery?

What is said of our army?

20. The next day, Taylor recommenced his march, and soon came up with the enemy, occupying a strong position on the farther side of a ravine. Eight pieces of artillery, divided into three portions, defended this position—one on the left side of the road, one on the right, and another in the centre. Scarcely were our troops in order of battle, when the artillery of the enemy opened and rained a shower of balls on our ranks, and the battle of Resaca de la Palma\* commenced.

21. The road was swept at every discharge with grape-shot and balls. On the right, our men, advancing through the chapparel, had outflanked the enemy, and were pouring in their well-directed volleys; while on the left, the incessant flash of musketry, drowned now and then by the roar of cannon and shouts of the men, told how fierce was the conflict. The battery of Ridgely kept steadily advancing, like a moving volcano, sweeping down the enemy at every discharge like grass before the scythe.

22. The whole army fought with unparalleled bravery, led on by officers as brave as ever trod a battle field. From the outset, our army steadily advanced on every side, except along the road where the central battery was playing. At length, goaded to madness by the galling fire kept up

\* Pronounced Ray-sah-cah-day-lay-Pal-mah.

from those few pieces, and seeing that the whole battle rested there, Gen. Taylor ordered Capt. May to charge the battery with his dragoons. His words were, "*You must take it!*" May wheeled on his steed, and said to his followers, "*Men, we must take that battery!*"

1846

What order was given to Capt. May?

23. In a moment those eighty-two stern riders were moving in a dark mass along the road, headed by their fearless commander. The next moment the bugle sounded to the charge, and the black and driving mass swept like a thunder-cloud to the shock. A whirlwind of dust marked their career. The attention of the army was directed to this desperate charge. The muffled tramp could be heard as they broke into a gallop, and rushed forward to the muzzles of the guns. In advance was seen the commanding form of May, as, mounted on his powerful charger, he rode fiercely on, with his hair streaming in the wind, while behind flashed the sabres of his followers.

Describe the charge?

24. One discharge tore through them, stretching nearly a third of his company and half of his horses on the ground; but when the smoke lifted, there was still seen the war-horse of May leaping the ditch, breastwork and all, his remaining followers pressing on, riding down the artillery-men at their pieces, and bursting through the Mexican lines. A wild hurrah went up from the entire army when they saw those fierce dragoons clear the breastwork. The infantry now rushed forward with furious shouts, driving the enemy before them. The battle then became a rout, and the affrighted Mexicans rolled furiously toward the river, to escape to Matamoras.

What is said of May after the first discharge?

What of the Mexicans?

1846

What of  
the garri-  
son at  
Fort  
Brown?

What  
was the  
loss on  
both  
sides?

What  
message  
did Gen.  
Taylor  
send to  
the Mex-  
ican  
general?

What  
was the  
reply?

Why  
could not  
Taylor  
follow up  
his suc-  
cess?

25. The garrison at Fort Brown had stood and listened to the sound of the heavy cannonading of the two days' fight. When the cavalry, plunging wildly over the plain, emerged into view, they mounted the rampart, and under the folds of their flag, that still floated proudly in the breeze, sent up the shout of victory. Three thousand five hundred shots had been fired into that single fort, and yet but two men had been killed. The Mexicans lost their whole artillery, 2,000 stand of arm, 600 mules, together with Gen. Arista's private papers, and Gen. Vega himself, whom May had made prisoner in his charge, and about 250 killed and 600 wounded. The American loss was 39 killed and 82 wounded. Both these battles were fought against a vastly superior force.

26. On the morning of the 17th, Gen. Taylor having made preparations to obtain possession of Matamoras,\* sent to the Mexican general, demanding its surrender, together with all the public property in the city, and giving him until three o'clock to decide. In the mean time, a communication was sent to the prefect, who replied, Taylor could enter whenever he chose. On the 18th he took possession of the city, and found it deserted by Arista, and a large number of cannon thrown into wells. Gen. Taylor, though in possession of Matamoras, found it impossible to follow up his success from the want of troops and supplies, and was com-

---

\* Matamoras is situated 28 miles from Point Isabel, six from Palo Alto, and three from Resaca de la Palma. It contains a population of 10,000. [See Map.]

pelled to remain inactive at this post the greater part of the summer. In the mean time, a large force had been concentrated at Monterey, the capital of New Leon, under the command of Gen. Ampudia.

1846

Who commanded the Mexican forces at Monterey?

27. On the 7th of September, Gen. Taylor having received reinforcements, marched from Matamoras; and on the 19th, with 6,600 troops, encamped at Walnut Spring, under the walls of Monterey,\* then strongly fortified by nature and art, and garrisoned by an army of 10,000 men. The narrow streets of the city were barricaded with huge piles of masonry; while the houses, most of which had but one story, with flat roofs and battlements breast high, were fortifications, from which, as well as from their windows, a deadly fire could be poured on an advancing foe. The city was fortified with thick stone walls, and strengthened by ditches and bastions.

What movement did Gen. Taylor next make?

Describe the fortifications.

28. To the west, on a steep eminence crowned with stones, stood the Bishop's Palace, a fort strongly fortified; on the north, a strong and massive citadel, and on the east three forts, while the river San Juan flowed along the east and south. These defenses were mounted with forty pieces of artillery, and manned by more than 10,000 men. Notwithstanding the strength of the position and the difference in their forces, Taylor determined to take the city, and nobly did he succeed. The order of attack was formed in three divisions; the first under Gen. Twiggs, the second

How was the city fortified?

What was the order of battle?

---

\* Monterey is a mountain city, about 170 miles from Matamoras. It is the capital of New Leon, and contains 15 000 inhabitants.

1846 under Gen. Worth, and the third under Gen. Butler. General Worth was to attack the heights, while Gen. Taylor, with the other two divisions, was to favor this movement by a division on the east and north.

Describe  
the battle.

29. On the evening of the 21st of September the battle commenced, and raged with great fury for three days. The Bishop's Palace was stormed, and the guns turned upon the Mexicans, and all the strong points in and about the city successively carried. As our army advanced into the city, the fight became terrific. From every door, window, and house-top, a deadly fire was poured upon our troops; yet still they advanced, fighting hand to hand, until by night on the 23d the troops of Quitman and Worth had nearly met each other at the main plaza.

Sept. 24.

30. On the following morning Gen. Ampudia surrendered the city. The Mexicans were allowed to retire with their arms. An armistice was concluded on to continue eight weeks, or until instructions from government should be received. The American loss was 126 killed and 350 wounded. The Mexican loss was estimated at about 1,000 killed and wounded. This contest, in which a large force strongly fortified was overcome by a smaller, forms a brilliant chapter in the pages of history.

What  
were the  
terms of  
surrender?

What  
was the  
loss on  
both  
sides?

What in-  
struc-  
tions did  
Gen.  
Taylor  
receive  
from gov-  
ernment?  
What is  
said of  
Santa  
Anna?

31. On the 2d of November, Gen. Taylor received instructions from government to terminate the armistice. He accordingly notified Ampudia that it would end on the 13th of November. Santa Anna, formerly President of Mexico, who was a short time before banished from the country, had been recalled,



placed at the head of affairs, and Paredes deposed. 1847  
 Before December, he had succeeded in raising an army of 20,000 men, and concentrating them at San Luis Potosi, which he strongly fortified.

32. In the mean time, Gen. Winfield Scott\* had been appointed Commander-in-chief of all the land forces in Mexico, and directed to withdraw from Gen. Taylor nearly all the regulars under his command, and proceed south to obtain possession of Vera Cruz. Taylor was deeply chagrined at this intelligence. The idea of parting with the veteran warriors of Monterey was painful in the extreme. Not only were most of the regular troops withdrawn from him, but Gen. Worth ordered to march at the head of them, from his post at Saltillo, toward Vera Cruz; while Taylor was directed to fall back on Monterey, and await the arrival of recruits.

Who was the commander of the American land forces in Mexico?

How did Taylor receive the intelligence that he must part with his troops?

Dec.

33. In February, Taylor had received reinforcements. Learning that an attempt was about to be made by Santa Anna to possess himself of the line of posts between himself and Matamoras, he determined to meet the Mexican President. On the 20th of February he was encamped at Agua Nueva, about eighteen miles south of Saltillo, with a force of 5,000 men. Here he learned that Santa Anna, at the head of 20,000 men, was twenty miles dis-

What reinforcements did Taylor receive?

What did he determine to do?

What movements did he make?

---

\* Gen. Scott was born on the 13th of June, 1786, near Petersburg, in Virginia. In May, 1808, he received a captain's commission in the army of the United States. From this office he has gradually risen, by his bravery and talents, to his present distinguished post of Commander-in-chief of the United States army.

**1847** tant. Taylor immediately fell back to Buena Vista, seven miles from Saltillo.

How  
does Tay-  
lor de-  
scribe his  
position?

34. On the morning of the 22d, the American troops were drawn up in order of battle, in a position of great strength. Taylor thus describes it: "The road at this point becomes a narrow defile, the valley on the right being full of impassable gullies, while on the left rugged ridges extended far back to the mountains. The ground was such as nearly to paralyze the artillery and cavalry of the enemy. Capt. Washington's battery was posted to command the road; another force under Cols. Hardin and Bissel occupied the crests of the ridges on the left and in the rear, and a small force under Cols. Yell and Marshall occupied the left near the base of the mountain, while another body was held in reserve."

What  
news did  
Taylor  
receive  
from  
Santa  
Anna?

35. At eleven o'clock, Taylor received a communication from Santa Anna, telling him that he was surrounded by 20,000 men, and that if he would surrender, he should be treated with consideration. Taylor declined acceding to this very courteous request,\* and on the following morning

Did he  
accept  
the offer?

---

\* On the 21st considerable firing occurred on the part of the Mexicans, which was not answered by our forces. An officer was dispatched to Taylor from the Mexican lines. He found him sitting on his white horse, with one leg over the pommel of the saddle, quietly watching the movements of the enemy. The officer stated, that "he had been sent by Santa Anna to inquire what he was waiting for." Taylor replied, "he was only waiting for Santa Anna to surrender." The officer returned, and shortly after the battery seemed to open on Taylor's position, but there he sat, indifferent to the perils of his situation, coolly peering at the enemy through a spy-glass. His officers

the battle of Buena Vista commenced. The sun that day looked on a battle as bravely fought as any in American history. Five thousand troops, most of whom a few months before were pursuing the quiet walks of civil life, now stood face to face with 20,000 soldiers, the flower of the Mexican army; yet that little army never quailed, but with the coolness and firmness of the veterans of a hundred fields, poured their volleys with terrible precision into the midst of the advancing foe,\* or like a thunderbolt swept them away in the deadly charge.

Describe the battle.

Feb. 23.

36. Washington's, Sherman's, and Bragg's batteries poured forth an incessant sheet of flame, while the infantry sent showers of leaden hail into the opposing columns. At length darkness closed the contest. The loss on the American side was 267 killed, 456 wounded, and 23 missing. The Mexican loss in killed and wounded was estimated at 2,000.

What was the loss in killed and wounded?

The next day, the Mexican army retired to San Louis Potosi, leaving behind them hundreds of dead and dying. Among the brave officers who fell on that day, none were more lamented than Capt.

What brave officers fell?

---

suggested that old "Whity" was too conspicuous a charger for the commander, but he replied, "that the old fellow had missed the fun at Monterey, and that he should have his share this time."

\* A body of Mexican infantry had been detached from the main army, and were being cut down with great slaughter. Mr. Crittenden was sent to them to ask them to surrender. He was carried before Santa Anna, who told him if Taylor would surrender he would be protected. Mr. Crittenden replied—"Gen. Taylor never surrenders."

**1846** Lincoln, Cols. McKee, Harden, Fell, Davis, and Clay. After this victory, Gen. Taylor remained in garrison at Saltillo and Monterey.

In the mean time what had been done by government?

37. In following the career of our brave army under Gen. Taylor in Mexico, little mention has been made of the transactions of government at home, that the events of both might be presented in a connected chain. Shortly after Taylor had received instructions to move on to a position near the Rio Grande, Congress authorized the President to accept the services of 50,000 volunteers; at the same time it adopted measures to increase the regular army several thousands.

What proclamation was issued by Mr. Polk?

38. On the 13th of May, 1846, Mr. Polk issued a proclamation, stating that Congress, by virtue of the constitutional authority vested in it, has declared, "that by the act of the Republic of Mexico, a state of war exists between the two governments;" and calling on the people of the United States to support such measures as might be adopted for obtaining a speedy, just, and honorable peace. About this time, the news of the splendid victories of Palo Alto and Resaca de la Palma was received at Washington, and spread like wildfire through the country. Congress passed a vote of thanks to Gen. Taylor and the officers and men under his command. Taylor\* was breveted major-general, and Twiggs brigadier-general.

What news arrived about this time?

What was done by Congress?

---

\* Gen. Zachary Taylor was born in Orange county, Va., in the year 1790. Soon after his birth, his father removed to Kentucky, and settled near Louisville. In 1808 Gen. Taylor entered the army as a lieutenant. During the last war with England he bore a conspicuous part, and for his splendid defense of Fort

39. On the 16th of June, 1846, a dispute, which **1846** had long existed between Great Britain and America, respecting the boundary line of Oregon, was settled on the limits of forty-nine degrees and the straits of Juan de Fuca. On the 23d of November, 1846, Gen. Scott received orders from the Secretary of War to repair to Mexico, and take command of the forces there assembled. Vera Cruz being considered the key to the city of Mexico, his operations were to be directed against that place. He reached the Rio Grande on the 1st of January, 1847, when he found it necessary, to obtain a sufficient force to attack Vera Cruz, to withdraw nearly all the regular troops from the army under Gen. Taylor. The rendezvous of the troops was at the island of Lobos, about 125 miles north of the city of Vera Cruz. From this place they embarked to the number of 12,000, on board Commodore Connor's fleet, and on the 9th of March, anchored between Sacrificios and the shore.

40. The landing was effected with the greatest regularity in sixty-five surf boats; and before ten at night, the whole army had reached the shore without resistance. A northerly wind now set in, which prevented the landing of the heavy ordnance for a number of days. On the 22d, every thing being in readiness to commence the siege, Gen. Scott sent a summons to the Mexican commander to surrender the city. In this summons he allowed

When was the dispute on the boundary question settled?

On what limits?

What orders did Gen. Scott receive on the 23d of Nov. 1846?

What did he do?

What was Gen. Scott obliged to do?

Where did the troops land?

Describe the landing.

What summons was sent to the Mexican commander?

---

Harrison was promoted to the rank of major. In the Indian war in Florida he was distinguished for his bravery and judgment. Promoted to the rank of general, in 1840 he was appointed to the command of the southern department of the army.

**1847** ample time for non-combatants, who wished to leave the city, to retire, and take what property they pleased. The summons to surrender was rejected, and shortly after, the batteries opened on the city. From this time until the morning of the 26th, the cannonading was continued with but slight intermission.

How  
was it  
received?

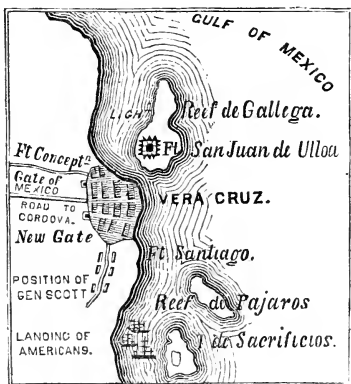
Describe  
the at-  
tack,

What is  
said of  
San Juan  
de Ulloa?

What  
was done  
by the  
Mexican  
com-  
mander?

41. The scene was one of awful sublimity. The darkness of night was illuminated by blazing shells circling through the air, while the roar of artillery, and the crash of falling houses, mingled with the shrieks of the wounded and terror-stricken. The sea was reddened by the glare of burning buildings and the broadsides of the ships. The castle of San Juan de Ulloa was girded with sheets of flame, as her cannon thundered forth their bold defiance. The accumulated science of ages, applied to the military art, before Vera Cruz, displayed the fullness of its destructive power.

42. On the 26th, the Mexican governor made



Vera Cruz is the principal sea-port of Mexico, and contains about 10,000 inhabitants. It was founded by Cortez in 1519. Directly opposite the city is the island of San Juan de Ulloa, on which stands an immense fortress, in a position to command the whole harbor. This fortress is one of the strongest in the world, and was supposed to be impregnable. The city is surrounded by sand-hills, which are constantly shifting under the heavy winds. This greatly impeded our troops in their attack on the city.

overtures of surrender; and on the 27th, the articles of capitulation were signed. The city, and the castle of San Juan de Ulloa, one of the strongest fortresses in the world, together with upward of four thousand prisoners, between six and seven hundred cannon, and about ten thousand stand of small arms, fell into the hands of the Americans. This victory, obtained with the loss of few men, on our side, considering it in a military point of view, was one of the most glorious in the records of modern warfare.

1847

What was the event of the battle?

43. NAVAL EVENTS.—The squadron in the Pacific, under Commodores Sloat and Stockton, during the summer of 1846, was principally employed in subjugating California; and on the 22d of August the flag of the United States was waving over almost every commanding position within that territory. On the 14th of October, Commodore Connor, commanding the squadron in the Gulf of Mexico, appeared off Tampico. The town capitulated without resistance. This was one of the most important posts to Mexico, on the gulf. On the 23d, Commodore Perry, with the steamer Mississippi, and several smaller vessels, appeared off the mouth of the river Tabasco, and sailing up the river, captured Frontiera, and all the vessels in port, without firing a single gun. He then sailed seventy-four miles farther up the river, to Tabasco, and on the 25th silenced the fort, which commands the city. After leaving two steamers to blockade the mouth, he returned to the flag of Com. Connor.

What is said of our squadron in the Pacific in 1846?

What is said of our squadron in the Gulf of Mexico?

What was done by Com. Perry?

44. The next day after the seizure of Vera Cruz, in which the navy bore a conspicuous part, an ex-

What after the siege of Vera Cruz?

**1847** petition set out for the capture of Alvarado, under the command of Com. Perry, who dispatched Lieut. Hunter in advance with a small steamer, to blockade the port. Arriving off the bar, on the afternoon of the same day, he opened a fire on the fort, which surrendered the next morning. Hunter then proceeded up the river, captured four schooners, and the next day anchored off Fla-co-al-pam, a city of 7,000 inhabitants, which immediately surrendered. On the 2d of April, Com. Perry arrived, when he found these important posts in the hands of the Americans.

What did  
Lieut.  
Hunter  
do?

What did  
Com.  
Perry do?

In whose  
possession  
now were  
nearly all  
the im-  
portant  
ports?

45. On the 18th of April, Com. Perry, after a short engagement, captured the town and port of Tuspan, about twenty miles north of Vera Cruz. Thus, at this period of affairs, nearly all the important ports on the gulf of Mexico were in the hands of the Americans.

What is  
said of  
Scott and  
Twiggs?

46. We now return to follow the victorious march of Scott and his gallant army to the capital of Mexico. On the 8th of April, ten days after the surrender of Vera Cruz, Gen. Twiggs left the city, and took the road to Jalapa. On the 11th, his advanced dragoons, under Col. Harney, met and drove before them several thousand Mexican lancers. On the following day it was discovered that the enemy was in front, on the heights of a mountain, strongly fortified.

Where  
was the  
enemy?

Describe  
Scott's  
position.

47. On the 16th Gen. Scott arrived, and issued his orders for the attack. The road from the American camp ascended among lofty hills, whose commanding points were fortified and garrisoned by the enemy. His right, intrenched, rested on a pre-



precipice, overhanging an impassable ravine, that forms the bed of the stream, between which and the precipice runs the national road. The highest peak of this precipice was the height of Cerro Gordo, elevated more than a thousand feet, on which stood a fort whose batteries commanded every point in the road below. Several powerful batteries were placed along the front declivity. The whole of these formidable intrenchments were defended by 15,000 men, commanded by Santa Anna, who had crossed the country from Buena Vista, to be defeated again at Cerro Gordo.

1847

Describe the situation of Cerro Gordo and its fortifications.

How strong were both armies?

48. To drive this strong force from a position almost impregnable, Scott could only bring about 6,000 men into action. Instead of advancing along the national road, in the face of those heavy batteries, a road was constructed, which wound around the base of the mountain, to the right, directly in the rear of the height. This position they had gained unnoticed by the enemy, and on the 17th, secured the two hills in front of the main works. That evening, Scott issued his orders, detailing the plan of battle, all of which were realized as though they had been prophetic.

What route was taken?

How did they succeed?

What is said of Scott's orders?

49. During the night, heavy artillery was dragged up the hills, which had been taken the afternoon before, and when the morning dawned, they commenced raining showers of balls on the intrenchments of the enemy. Col. Harney and his troops charged up the heights, so steep that they were obliged to climb, stormed the citadel, and from the tower of Cerro Gordo unfurled the stars and stripes. The enemy, soon after, driven from

Describe the battle of Cerro Gordo.

**1847** the field, fled in confusion. Santa Anna escaped on one of his mules, leaving his carriage to the enemy. More than 3,000 prisoners were taken; 288 officers, among whom were five generals. General Scott also took 5,000 stands of arms, and forty-three cannon. The American loss was 63 killed and 368 wounded. The enemy's loss, in killed and wounded, was estimated at 1,200.

What is said of Santa Anna?

What was the loss on both sides?

What was done by Gen. Worth?

What were left behind by the enemy?

50. On the 19th of April, Gen. Worth entered Jalapa,\* and on the 22d took possession of the town and castle of Perote,† next to San Juan de Ulloa, the strongest fortress in Mexico. The garrison had withdrawn the day before, leaving behind sixty-four guns and mortars, 11,065 cannon balls, 14,300 bombs, and 500 muskets. On the 15th of May, Gen. Worth, with 4,000 troops, occupied the city of Puebla.‡ Here Gen. Scott remained most of the summer.

What movement did Gen. Scott make? Describe the scene.

51. On the 8th of August, Scott moved along the national road toward the city of Mexico. For many long miles, the troops marched over a hilly road, until, on the 10th, they came within sight of

---

\* Jalapa is situated on the national road to Mexico, between forty and fifty miles from Vera Cruz. It contains 13,000 inhabitants.

† Perote is situated about sixty miles from the coast. The fortress is to the north of the town. South-east is a high point of land, which serves, along with the volcano of Orisba, as a landmark to make the port of Vera Cruz.

‡ Puebla, the capital of the State of Puebla, is situated sixty-six miles from Mexico, and one hundred and eighty-six from Vera Cruz. It contains 80,000 inhabitants. It is one of the richest cities in Mexico. It was formerly celebrated for its manufactories of delf-ware and pots. Here are large manufactories of iron and steel, particularly swords, bayonets, &c.

the vast plain of Mexico. The scene was one which, once beheld, could never be forgotten. Mexico, with its lofty steeples, its swelling domes, its bright reality and its former fame, its modern splendor and its ancient magnificence, was before them; while around, on every side, its shining lakes seemed like silver stars on a velvet mantle.

1847

52. The next day they reached Ayotea, fifteen miles from Mexico. From this place, the road to the city is a causeway, traversing a marsh, and is commanded by a lofty hill, called El Pínel, which had been fortified with the greatest care. Batteries, mounting fifty guns, were placed along its sides. The army of Santa Anna numbered 25,000 men, while ours was only 9,000. To avoid these fortifications, a road was cut around Lake Chalco to San Augustine, which completely turned the strong works of the enemy. On the 17th, Worth's division reached the latter place, which was nine miles south of Mexico. Scott arrived the next morning, when Worth commenced his march for the city. San Antonio was three miles north of San Augustine; and three miles west of this place, at the hill of Contreras, Gen. Valencia was stationed with a large force, in a position to sweep the road with his batteries.

What is said of the road to the city?

What is said of Santa Anna's army?

What was Scott's number?

What is said of Worth and Gen. Valencia?

What took place during the 19th?

53. Skirmishes continued the whole of the 19th, but during the night the rain fell in torrents, and for a few hours, the thunder of battle was hushed. The troops remained on the field during the whole of that dreary night, with no shelter from the driving rain. Early in the morning, Gen. Smith gave the welcome word, "Move on." The soldiers

What during the night?

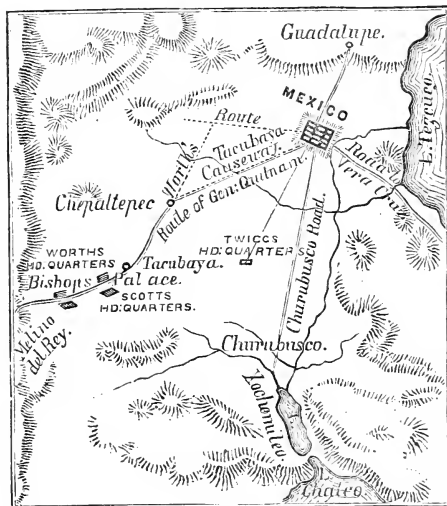
What the next day?

**1847** rushed forward, and just at the dawn of day, furiously charged the enemy's works. In an instant all was confusion. The enemy at first wavered, then broke and fled, leaving their strong position to the conquerors.

What is said in conclusion of this battle, and the loss?

What is said of Churubusco?

54. Thus ended the battle of Contreras, in which 4,000 men routed an army of 8,000, under Valencia, with 12,000 more hovering in view. The Mexicans lost 700 killed, and 813 taken prisoners, and immense quantities of ammunition. Our loss did not exceed sixty, in killed and wounded. Our forces now rapidly pressed on toward Churubusco, where the enemy was strongly intrenched. Here was a fortified convent, and a strong field-work,



Mexico, the capital of the Mexican Republic, is situated in the midst of the beautiful vale of Mexico, 252 miles from Vera Cruz. The valley of Mexico, or, as it was formerly called, the plain of Tenochtitlan, is 230 miles in circumference, and elevated 7,000 feet above the level of the ocean. The valley contains a number of lakes besides Texcoco, and is surrounded by small hills except on the south, where are seen two lofty volcanic mountains. The city of Mexico is one of the most beautiful in America. It contains about 200,000 inhabitants. Mexico stands on the same ground as that of the old city, which was conquered by Cortez. 326 years before the new was conquered by the United States. It received its name from the Aztec war god, Mexatili, and was formerly situated on the shore of Lake Texcoco; but that lake has now receded, so as to be nearly two miles from the city. Churubusco is situated four miles from the city.

A few miles west is Tacubaya, a small village, where Scott and Worth had their headquarters. The road leading to the city passed along by the side of a hill strongly fortified, called Chapultepec. On the top of this hill, which was two miles from the city, was the Military College, and a strong fortification which commanded the road from Tacubaya. The road from this hill is over the aqueduct which conveys water to the city. Here, fighting from arch to arch, the forces of Quitman and Smith marched into the city.

with regular bastions at the head of a bridge, over which the road passes from San Antonio to the capital. These intrenchments were defended by 27,000 men, determined to make a desperate stand, for if beaten here, their capital would be in the hands of the enemy.

1847

How many were intrenched there?

55. The attack commenced about 1 p. m., and continued for three hours. The firing was one continuous roar, while the combat lasted. At length the enemy fled, closely pressed by our victorious squadrons, who followed them within 500 yards of the gates of the city. Our loss in killed and wounded was 1053. The Mexican loss was 500 killed, 100 wounded, and 1100 taken prisoners. The battles of Contreras and Churubusco were the most furious and deadly in the war. After so many victories in one day, our army might have easily marched into the city; but Scott, hoping that the Mexicans would more readily treat for peace without this humiliating stroke to their pride, halted his victorious troops.

What is said of the attack?

What was the loss of both armies?

What is said of these two battles?

What might our army easily have done?

56. On the 21st, he occupied the Bishop's Palace at Tacubaya, and on the 22d proposed an armistice, that the Mexican government might consider the proposition of Mr. Trist, the commissioner of the American government, who had accompanied him on this mission. The armistice was accepted. By its terms, neither party was to undertake any operation, nor receive any reinforcements, within thirty leagues of the city of Mexico. The negotiations were unsuccessful, and on the 5th of September Scott discovered that the city was being fortified, in direct violation of the armistice.

What was done by Scott?

**1847** That, of course, was now at an end ; and preparations were made for an immediate attack on the city.

Describe  
the bat-  
tle of the  
King's  
Mill.

57. The enemy had strongly intrenched themselves at Molino del Rey, or the "King's Mill." Their works consisted of a regular field-work surrounding the mill, which was filled with men, and mounted ten pieces of artillery. The attack commenced on the morning of the 8th, and for two or three hours the slaughter was dreadful. At length, the enemy was driven from the field, with the loss on our side of about 1,000 in killed and wounded. Our force amounted to 3,700, while that of the enemy was 10,000.

Of Cha-  
pultepec.

58. After considerable skirmishing, an attack was made on the 13th on the fortress Chapultepec, which was considered the key of the Mexican lines. The scene which now presented itself, was one of terrible sublimity. Our shot went crashing through the buildings, and tearing up the intrenchments at the top of the hill. The Mexicans fought desperately, but they could not withstand the fierce charge of our troops, who soon gained possession of the fortress.

Describe  
the  
march  
into the  
city.

59. Smith's and Quitman's forces now dashed up the road leading to the city, in the face of a terrific fire from the enemy's batteries, stationed along the road, until they were silenced. At twenty minutes past one, on the 14th of September, our forces, fighting hand to hand, entered the city of Mexico. But the contest was not yet over, for a terrible fire was poured upon our troops from batteries stationed in streets, and from the windows and housetops, until night. In the mean time, Gen.

The con-  
test  
there.

Worth's division had filed round to the left, and entered the city by the gate of San Cosmo. During the night, Santa Anna evacuated the city, and retired to Guadalupe. 1847

60. The next morning, at daylight, our forces marched into the *plaza*, in front of the cathedral and palace; and at 7 o'clock, P. M., on the 15th of September, 1847, the "Stars and Stripes" floated in triumph over the capital of the Mexican Republic. Skirmishing continued for two or three days, when all became quiet. Of the 10,000 gallant spirits that had welcomed Scott at Puebla, scarcely 7,000 were left. The bloody fields of Contreras, Churubusco, San Antonio, Molino del Rey, and Chapultepec, had laid low 3,000 of our brave army, and filled with grief the hearts of all the rest. A great difficulty under which both Taylor and Scott labored, was the want of a sufficient number of troops to garrison effectually the different places they conquered.

What occurred on the next morning?

How many of our troops had fallen since leaving Puebla?

61. The most exciting subject, during the Congress which closed its session in March, 1847, was the appropriation of \$3,000,000, recommended by the President, to be employed by him as he pleased, in securing a peace with Mexico. To this resolution an amendment was offered, called the Wilmot Proviso, which excluded slavery from all territory which might be acquired by the United States in Mexico. After a warm debate, the resolution passed, shorn of the proviso.

What exciting topic occurred during the Congress of 1847?

## REFLECTIONS.

---

WE have now glanced at the leading events in the history of our country, from the period when the first bold adventurers beheld its shores to the present time. We have seen it in the richness of its primitive beauty, before the hand of civilization turned its forests into cities, or made its rivers and lakes the pathways of commerce. We have noticed the settlements made by the different colonists, on our Atlantic coast. We have seen them gradually increase, under the most disheartening difficulties. We have seen them repel Indian invasion, struggle with poverty, and oppressed by the tyranny of their mother land, until they indignantly repulsed the hand that was binding them with fetters, and trampled on the laws that would have made them slaves. We have followed our fathers through their long and bloody struggle for freedom, and have heard the shout that went up from an emancipated nation, and from the down-trodden in other lands, when that freedom was won. We have watched the progress of our free institutions, until we have seen the far west covered with cities and villages, gardens and cultivated fields, and the lakes and rivers swarming with ships and steamboats.

But little more than two centuries have passed away, since this whole land was a wilderness, and now, we behold it covered with a mighty nation, whose possessions stretch from the Atlantic to the Pacific, and whose influence is felt throughout the world. Our commerce extends to every country, and the sails of our merchant-ships may be found on every sea and in every port. Our canals, railroads, and the stupendous palaces which float on our vast rivers and lakes, seem almost like the work of magic, so quickly have they been created in our midst. Our population has increased to an extent unparalleled in the history of nations. Our manufactures rival those of Europe, and many of the most important applications of science have been made by our citizens. The steamboat, the steam-car, and the lightning telegraph, which bring the most remote parts of our country within speaking distance of each other, are among the triumphs of their skill. In literature, the arts and sciences, we are taking a proud rank with the



oldest nations of Europe. Colleges, academies and schools, are scattered over the land, and the blessings of education placed within the reach of all. Our government, free from a titled nobility and hereditary sovereignty, is founded on the principle that the sovereign can govern himself. As that sovereign is the people, the stability of our free institutions rests, not on the power of the rulers, but on the intelligence, virtue, and intellectual strength, of this *nation of kings*. If the time ever come when this mighty fabric shall totter—when the beacon, which now rises a pillar of fire, a sign and wonder to the world, shall wax dim—the cause will be found in the grasping avarice, the vice and ignorance of the people.

In looking at the history of our nation, we can plainly see in every step of its progress the guiding hand of an overruling Providence. Through the dark period of our colonial history, through the toil and suffering of the Revolutionary struggle, and our subsequent unparalleled prosperity, an Almighty power has watched over us and protected us from harm. Let us not forget in our prosperity that Being to whom we owe all our blessings, both as a nation and as individuals. In our enthusiasm for military glory, let us not lose sight of the principles for which our fathers fought, or the landmarks which they planted in toil and blood. Let us remember, that no nation can flourish, whose children are not taught to fear God, and practise virtue, and that inspiration hath said, "Righteousness exalteth a nation, but sin is a reproach to any people."

## LIST OF AUTHORITIES.

---

Bancroft's History of the United States; Thatcher's Military Journal; Robertson's History of America; Botta's War of the Independence; Holmes' Annals of America; Irving's Life of Columbus; Marshall's History of the American Colonies; Marshall's Life of Washington; Sparks' Writings of Washington; Pitkin's History of the States; Perkins' History of the Late War with Great Britain; Belknap's History of New Hampshire; Trumbull's Civil and Ecclesiastical History of Connecticut; Life of Capt. John Smith; Hutchinson's History of Massachusetts Bay; Smith's History of New York and New Jersey; Proud's History of Pennsylvania; Hewitt's Histories of Carolina and Georgia; Ramsay's Revolution of South Carolina; Dwight's Journal; Stewart's Travels; Willard's History of the United States; Hale's History of the United States; Goodrich's History of the United States; Stone's Life of Brant; Volney's View of America; Schoolcraft's Travels; Rafinesque; Mitchell; American Antiquarian Researches; Clavigero's History of Mexico; Humboldt; Morse's Universal Geography; Jefferson's Notes; Gazetteer of Missouri; Vater; Grimshaw's United States; Colden's History of the Five Nations; Encyclopedia; Brackenridge's History of the Last War; State Papers; Niles' Register; Priest's Antiquities of America; Lossing's 1776; Life of Jackson; Life of Harrison; Lives of the Signers of the Declaration of Independence; Lives of the Presidents; Headley's Washington and his Generals; Malte Brun's Geography; De Tocqueville's Democracy in America; Trumbull's Indian Wars; Prescott's Conquest of Mexico; Life of General Houston; Taylor and his Generals; Life of General Scott; Robinson's Mexico and her Military Chieftains; Longacre and Herring's National Gallery.

# TOWER'S SERIES OF SCHOOL BOOKS.

---

## Gradual Primer. First Book.

The merits of this book consist, —

1. In *coupling letters* by their *resemblances*.
2. In giving only a *few letters* of the alphabet, before *words* are given composed solely of *those few letters*.
3. In giving only *one vowel* in a lesson, with *words* which contain the *name-sound* of that vowel. This is a new and peculiar method of teaching the alphabet.
4. In considering the several powers of *each vowel* in a *separate* lesson, with easy words, and short, plain sentences, to illustrate *each individual power or sound*; thus *teaching only one thing at a time*.
5. The diphthongs, or combined vowels, are taught in the same manner.
6. Each consonant element is then considered by itself, in a separate lesson, with easy words and sentences, for exercise on its particular sound.
7. Particular and specific *directions* are, *for the first time*, given to teachers, for *uttering each elementary sound* in the language.
8. More *general directions* or *suggestions* are also given for teachers.

*Tables*, peculiar to this Series alone, are inserted for *daily practice* of classes *simultaneously* in all the simple elementary sounds.

These are the prominent features of this Primer, and are peculiar to it alone. The teacher, as well as the pupil, will, from its use, lay the foundation of a distinct articulation, and be saved from much expense of time and labor in *unlearning*. This is "the right step taken in the right place."

## Introduction to the Gradual Reader. Second Book.

The peculiarities of this book consist, —

1. In taking the pupil *gradually* through all the *easier consonant combinations*, by a regular progressive exercise on each combination.
2. Through all the *points*, or marks used by writers, illustrating each in a separate lesson.
3. Through the simple slides of the voice, in the same manner.
4. Progressive reading lessons, adapted to the progress of the pupil. The reading lessons are kept entirely distinct from the lessons in articulation, points, &c., that *only one thing* may be taught *at a time*, as in the Primer, which it is designed to follow.
5. *Tables* for daily simultaneous practice of the elementary sounds, and simple combinations. This book is the second progressive step in attaining a distinct utterance, and correct pronunciation.
6. *Suggestions* to teachers for avoiding *errors* in reading.

## Gradual Reader. Third Book.

This book contains, —

1. Such a selection of reading matter as will interest, as well as instruct, the learner, progressively suited to his capacity.
2. A complete and original system of *articulation*, consisting of exercises upon every vowel and consonant *element*, and upon every vowel and consonant *combination*, in the language, even the most difficult. This was the first ever published, and is the only complete system.
3. *Tables* for simultaneous practice, by a whole school, on all the ele-

## TOWER'S SCHOOL BOOKS.

mentary sounds and their combinations. Since the publication of *these Exercises*, in 1841, the subject of articulation has received much attention; and they are said to have done more, for both teacher and pupil, in making good readers, than any other book.

4. The *Gradual Reader* was prepared, as stated in the preface, on the plan of *teaching only one thing at a time*—a plan peculiar to this book, unless copied by others.

5. The *exercises* are kept *separate* from the *reading lessons*, that the whole school, *at once*, may be daily drilled in some portion of them previous to reading; then the pupil's attention will not be continually called from the sentiment and expression of a piece, by constant interruption, to correct his articulation.

6. The exercises in this book are full, to supply any deficiency in the elementary instruction of advanced pupils. (See printed notices of the book and system.)

These three books furnish complete and thorough instruction in articulation, the groundwork of all good reading.

### Practical Reader. Fourth Book.

1. This Reader contains an elaborate but comprehensive treatise on elocution, in which the leading principles of good reading are simplified, and rules deduced and illustrated by practical examples. These are so plain that the child can easily comprehend them.

2. References are made in each reading lesson to some of the principles already developed, that the pupil may exercise his mind by the practical application of the same.

3. Each lesson has its partial vocabulary, to exercise the pupil's judgment in discriminating and selecting the definition appropriate to explain the author's meaning.

4. Above a thousand of the most difficult words are thus *practically* learned; and the pupil's knowledge of language is understandingly enlarged.

5. Each lesson is preceded by practical exercises in enunciation, exhibiting the correct pronunciation of words, and the distinct utterance of simple elements and difficult combinations.

6. These exercises may be practised simultaneously previous to taking up the reading lesson.

7. The selections have been carefully made in reference to their practical utility and interest, and their adaptation to the capacity of the pupils for whom they were designed.

n'  
f'v

### The next Reader.

The last Reader of this Series will contain, besides the Reading Lessons, a practical treatise on the HIGHER AND MORE EXPRESSIVE ELEMENTS OF ELOCUTION.

### Exercises in Articulation.

These are published *without* the Reading Lessons, for the use of any classes in our schools and seminaries. They should be in the hands of *every teacher and pupil* in the United States. (See description of *Gradual Reader*, and notices.)

### Gradual Speller.

1. This book is the first attempt to arrange words, in separate classes, by the consonant combinations,—thus aiding the memory on the principle of association.

## TOWER'S SCHOOL BOOKS.

2. It is free from the *unmeaning cuts* which disfigure most books of the kind, and furnish a gratuitous supply of playthings to distract the attention.

3. It is not cumbered with reading lessons, useless, because out of place.

4. It contains an exercise on each consonant element as well as each vowel element.

5. It gives also an exercise on each consonant combination separately. No other spelling-book does.

6. It gives the sound of each vowel in every word; without which, any spelling-book would be worse than useless in a school.

7. The *sounds* of the *vowels* are indicated by a *new* method; so simple, that any child can readily master and use it.

8. The same notation answers for the diphthongs, which is an advantage over any other plan.

9. As each element and each combination is considered in a separate exercise, the book is a great collateral aid to *articulation*, while it gives the correct *pronunciation* in connection with teaching the *orthography* of the language.

### Intellectual Algebra.

This is on a new and original plan, and is the first attempt to simplify and illustrate this science, that it may be taught *orally*. As a discipline of the mind, in teaching the pupil to *think* and *reason*, algebra is preëminent; and this work places it in the power of younger classes to be benefited by such mental exercise. Where it has been used, it has more than answered the high expectations of teachers. It can be very profitably studied in connection with written arithmetic. This algebra has received the commendation of the most prominent educators of the day, and a few of their notices may be found within. Teachers say that the author has done the same for algebra that Colburn did for arithmetic when he published his "First Lessons."

1. The processes are so divided and subdivided as to present but *one thing at a time* to the learner, and that in its simplest form.

2. The operations are limited to small numbers, so as not to embarrass the reasoning powers.

3. The pupil is led gradually from the simplest to more complicated reasoning.

4. Though not designed for that purpose, it has been used successfully as a text-book for written algebra.

### A Complete Key to the Algebra.

This book contains explanations and solutions to all the questions in the Algebra, for the convenience of teachers, and for their use only.

### Gradual Lessons in Grammar.

1. It is based entirely on the *analysis* and *composition* of sentences; and its exercises are, consequently, from the very beginning, entirely of a practical character.

2. The *subject* and the *predicate* of each proposition are *foci* modified or limited by all other words therein.

3. The pupil must not only know the meaning of each word, but how it affects the meaning of the general proposition.

4. Besides the abstract power of words, the local value will also be gradually acquired from observing their modifying influences as they are variously used.

5. Language is, in this way, both regarded and studied as the medium of *thought*.

6. The two principal parts of a proposition must first be found; then how

## TOWER'S SCHOOL BOOKS.

each is modified by the several words that cluster around it; and thus how the meaning of the part or the whole is affected thereby. This is an invaluable exercise of the understanding.

7. Then the pupil is required to analyze compound sentences, till the connection or dependence of clauses is rightly understood, with their limiting or modifying power.

8. Sentences are thus analyzed and constructed, and the relations of words and clauses comprehended, with the limiting force of each, before the minor distinctions and the technicalities are introduced.

9. The plan is *new*, and pleases every enlightened teacher who examines it. The pupil is taught to *compose* as well as analyze.

Teachers say that this Grammar opens a *new path* for the pupil, enabling him, to pursue this sometimes dry study not only understandingly, but with interest and pleasure. It is predicted of the "Lessons," that they will produce as great a change in the method of teaching grammar, as Colburn's "First Lessons" did in arithmetic.

---

### Notices of the Gradual Reader.

GEORGE B. EMERSON, Esq., of Boston, says,—“I like the plan and execution of the work so well, that I shall use it immediately in my own school.”

B. D. EMERSON, Esq., formerly of Boston, says,—“Although unsolicited, I cannot refrain from expressing my unqualified approval of the work.” Speaking of “the excellence of the Exercises in Articulation,” he says,—“They are just what they should be, and cannot but prove valuable aids in conducting learners through such a course of training as is necessary, in order to give them the *power* and *habit* of clear and distinct enunciation; without which there can be no good reading; indeed, it may properly be styled the essence thereof.”

Professor E. C. WINES, of Burlington, N. J., says,—“The *rationale* of your system commended it to my judgment; and the conviction of its soundness and efficiency, thus wrought in my mind, was fully confirmed by the results of its application to a class in my own school.”

Professor C. D. CLEVELAND, of Philadelphia, says,—“I do not hesitate to say, that, to secure in the pupil distinct articulation, it comprises more within a small space than any work with which I am acquainted, and I intend to introduce it forthwith into my school.”

Reverend W. G. E. AGNEW, late Principal of the Zane Street Public School, Philadelphia, says,—“I have found your system, since I have begun to use it, a great help to myself as well as to my pupils.”

FRANKLIN FORBES, Esq., late Principal of the Lowell High School, says,—“I also like exceedingly the *judicious* selection of reading lessons; and, in short, I think it contains the *kind, quantity, and quality* of matter most suitable for its intended use.”

FROM THE BAY STATE DEMOCRAT. “The plan is original; and we concur fully in the opinion of the grammar masters of the Boston and the Charlestown schools, who have highly recommended this book. The grammar masters of Boston say it is ‘a work admirably adapted to the wants of our schools, and which will entitle the author to the gratitude of all who are interested in the cause of education.’ The grammar masters of Charlestown remark,—‘The book is just what we need, and what we have not hitherto been able to obtain!’”

FROM THE ROXBURY PATRIOT AND DEMOCRAT. “This is a work which has long been wanted, and we hail its appearance with pleasure.” \* \* \* “The Gradual Reader comes before the public with the strong approbation of all

## TOWER'S SCHOOL BOOKS.

the principals of the grammar schools in Boston—a most weighty recommendation.” \* \* \* \*

FROM THE BOSTON COURIER. “The ‘Gradual Reader,’ containing, &c., is precisely the thing that has been wanted, and it will fully answer the purposes for which it is intended; \* \* \* and I cannot but congratulate the public on its appearance.”

Highly recommended, also, in the AMERICAN TRAVELLER, MERCANTILE JOURNAL, MORNING POST, CHRISTIAN REGISTER, PHILADELPHIA SATURDAY COURIER, UNITED STATES GAZETTE, &c.

BOSTON TEACHERS say,—“These Exercises, so long needed, will be found invaluable to the teacher of the *Primary* or *High School*, and should be in the hands of every pupil!”

D. S. SHELDON, Esq., of the Northampton High School, writes, under date of August, 1845,—“I have no hesitation in giving it my unqualified approbation. Its general introduction into our schools would be an incalculable benefit.” (See notices in the work.)

Used in *Providence, Charlestown, Salem, Lowell, Newburyport, Lynn, Chelsea, Springfield, &c.*; also in the *Normal Schools*, and in many *Academies and Private Schools*.

SPRINGFIELD, MASS., Nov. 3, 1846.

DEAR SIR,—The School Committee of the town of Springfield have examined, with much interest, your Series of Reading Books, “Gradual Speller,” and “Intellectual Algebra,” and have unanimously voted to introduce them into the public schools under their superintendence. As a whole, we consider the series one of the very best within our knowledge; and it is our desire that the children of the town may be thoroughly taught according to the principles upon which you have proceeded.

We regard your “Intellectual Algebra” as a valuable work. It effectually teaches scholars *the art of thinking*, which, after all, is the most important thing to be learned.

For my own part, I can only add a hearty wish that your books may have the extensive circulation which they deserve.

Very respectfully,

HENRY W. LEE,

*Chairman School Committee.*

## Notices of Gradual Lessons in Grammar.

At a meeting of the TRUSTEES OF THE CHARLESTOWN FREE SCHOOLS, March 29, 1847, voted, That the new Grammar, called “Gradual Lessons in Grammar,” by D. B. Tower, be used as a text-book in our schools.

JONATHAN BROWN, Jr., *Secretary.*

At a meeting of the SCHOOL COMMITTEE OF SOUTH READING, April 7, 1847, voted to adopt Tower’s “Gradual Lessons in Grammar” into the public schools as a text-book.

LILLY EATON, *Chairman.*

Professor WINES, of the Oakland School, near Burlington, N. J., says,—“I feel no hesitation in expressing the opinion that it is THE BOOK for the thorough and philosophical study of the English language.” \* \* \* “I rejoice to see the principle [of analysis] developed in a clear and practical manner, in an elementary work on English grammar.”

Rev. J. J. OWEN, Principal of the Cornelius Institute, New York, says,—“I am exceedingly well pleased with your Grammar. I think it is just the thing.” \* \* \* “I am confident that your little book will obtain the approbation of all who examine it, and will fill a niche which, I believe, is not occupied by any other work.”

DANIEL FOSTER, Esq., Principal of Hopkinton High School, after using the book, says,—“I consider it superior to any elementary treatise in use

in our country. It occupies in grammar the place that Colburn's *First Lessons* does in arithmetic." \* \* \* "I predict that it will usher into our schools a new system of studying grammar, and will make this branch as interesting and improving as it has been hitherto dull and useless."

W. R. ELLIS, Esq., Principal of a High School in Kingston, writes,— "This is an admirable work. I am much pleased with it, and shall have every scholar in my school use it."

GEORGE EATON, Esq., Principal of the Young Ladies' School in Park Street, Boston, who uses the work, says,— "The plan you adopted in the execution of the work is rational and philosophical, and calculated to give the pupil a much better knowledge of the language than any other elementary work with which I am acquainted; and, indeed, the plan, as a whole, is so different from that of any other grammar in our language, that I do not see why it may not be profitably studied in connection with other grammars now in use, as the ground it covers has hitherto been almost wholly neglected, or, at least, not systematically improved."

### Notices of Intellectual Algebra.

This Algebra, recommended by twenty-eight masters of the Public Schools of *Boston*, has been introduced into the schools by the Committee. Also recommended by the masters of the *Charlestown* and *Salem* schools, &c., where it is used. It has been adopted in the Public Schools of *New York, Baltimore, Brooklyn, Charlestown, Cambridge, Bangor, Lynn, Springfield, &c. &c.*; also by many County Conventions of Superintendents and Teachers. It has been recommended by the County Conventions of Superintendents and Teachers in *Vermont*; and it is already in use in a large number of the best schools in the country. It needs but to be examined, to be put into almost every school in the land. The recommendations of this work are so numerous, that room can be found for only a few extracts.

Teachers say,— "We believe that the careful and minute analysis of questions in it, is calculated to train the mind of the pupil to correct habits of investigation." \* \* \* "Mr. Tower has the merit of originality in his conception of an *Intellectual Algebra*." \* \* \* "The work is systematic in its arrangement; it contains all that will be useful in Common Schools, and is just what is wanted to make a thinking pupil." "It bears the same relation to the algebraic text-books in common use, as that sustained by Colburn's '*First Lessons*' to previous treatises upon arithmetic."

R. PUTNAM, Esq., Principal of the High School in Salem, says,— "I suspect you have done for Algebra a service not very unlike what Colburn did for Arithmetic, when he published his '*First Lessons*.'"

E. G. STARKE, Esq., Superintendent for Cayuga County, N. Y., says,— "I regard it as the legitimate successor of '*Colburn's First Lessons*,' and it will, in my opinion, prove as valuable to the student of algebra, as that has been to the student of arithmetic."

Rev. JOHN T. SARGENT writes,— "It appears to me you have very happily applied the 'charms of logic' to that beautiful and much neglected study of algebra; and, if such a book could be freely introduced into our Common Schools, I doubt not it would do more than almost any thing else to invigorate and concentrate the intellectual powers of the young." (See notices in the work.)

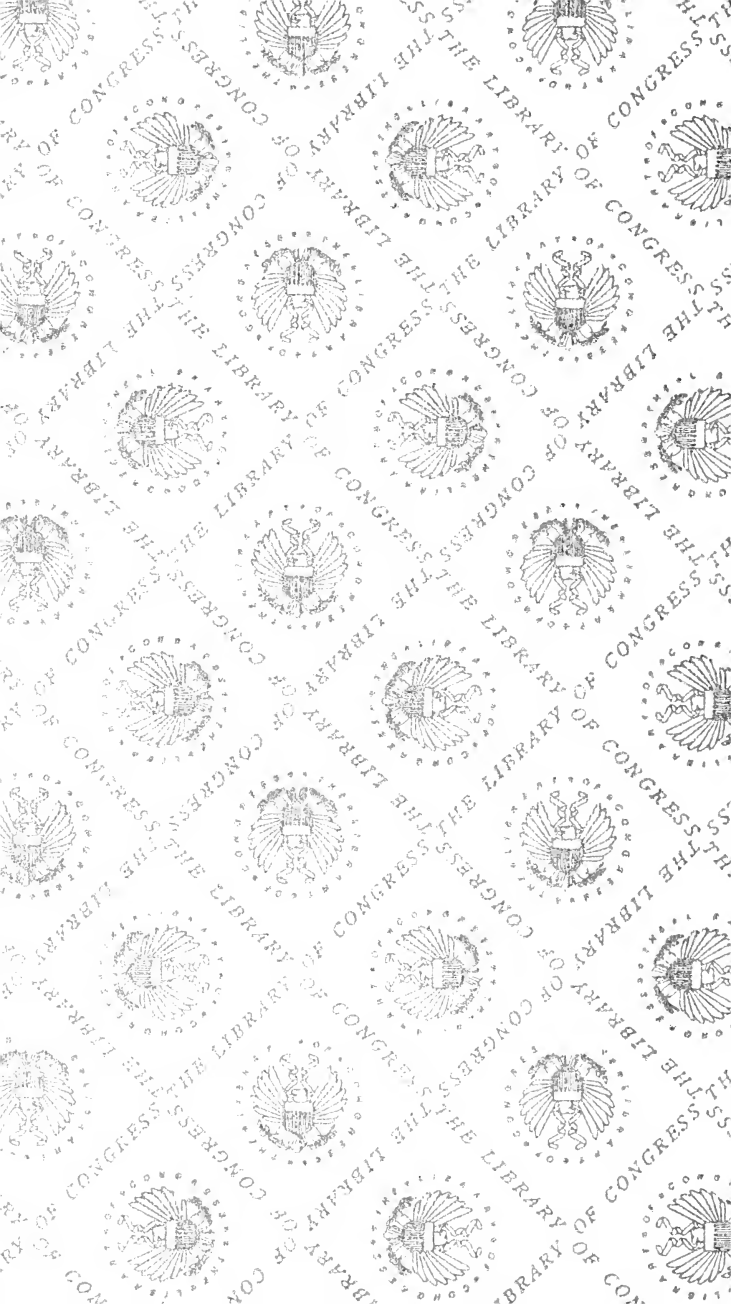
The Gradual Reader, Grammar, and Algebra, are used in the Model School connected with the State Normal School.



Cal. 28 - 1/2







WERT  
BOOKBINDING  
Grantsville Pa  
March - April 1988  
We're Quicker Bouncin'

